A grammar of Sheko
A grammar of Sheko

Proefschrift

ter verkrijging van
de graad van Doctor aan de Universiteit Leiden,
op gezag van de rector magnificus
prof. mr. P.F. van der Heijden,
volgens besluit van het College voor Promoties
te verdedigen op dinsdag 15 juni 2010
klokke 16.15 uur

door

Anneke Christine Hellenthal
geboren te Nijmegen
in 1980
promotor: Prof.dr. M.P.G.M. Mous
copromotor: Dr. Azeb Amha
other members: Prof.dr. G.J. Dimmendaal
Prof.dr. F.H.H. Kortlandt
Dr. Ch.J. Rapold

The research reported here was conducted in the context of the project “The morpho-syntax of two modal categories in Omotic” (256-70-550) of prof.dr. M.P.G.M. Mous and dr. Azeb Amha, funded by the Dutch Organisation for Scientific Research (NWO).
Table of Contents

List of structure morphemes 11
List of abbreviations 14
Maps 17
Acknowledgements 21

1 Introduction 25
  1.1 The people 25
      1.1.1 Notes on the Sheko culture 25
      1.1.2 Notes on the Sheko history 28
  1.2 The language 30
      1.2.1 Classification 30
      1.2.2 Socio-linguistic situation 34
      1.2.3 Dialects 35
      1.2.4 Profile of the Sheko language 37
  1.3 Research on Sheko 39
      1.3.1 Previous linguistic work 39
      1.3.2 Research for this book 40
      1.3.3 The present study 42
      1.3.4 Orthography and representation 42

2 Phonology 45
  2.1 Consonants 45
      2.1.1 Consonant phonemes overview 45
      2.1.2 Notes on the table 46
      2.1.3 Geminated consonants 47
      2.1.4 Series to substantiate phonemic status 47
  2.2 Vowels 56
      2.2.1 Vowel phonemes overview 56
      2.2.2 Vowel length 57
  2.3 Syllabic nasal 58
      2.3.1 Nasal assimilation 58
      2.3.2 Distribution 60
      2.3.3 The status of syllabic nasals 61
      2.3.4 A bilabial syllabic nasal? 64
  2.4 Phonotactics 67
      2.4.1 Occurrence restrictions in word-initial position 67
      2.4.2 Restrictions on combinations of consonants and vowels 68
      2.4.3 Restrictions occurring with the syllabic nasal 68
      2.4.4 Sequences of consonants 69
      2.4.5 Ambiguous sequences 70
  2.5 Word structure 78
      2.5.1 Syllable structure 78
3 Phonological and morphophonological processes 85
3.1 Phonological rules 85
3.2 Morpho-phonological rules 99
  3.2.1 Rules pertaining to definiteness marking 100
  3.2.2 Realisation of the accusative marker 102
  3.2.3 Rules pertaining to verb derivation 103
  3.2.4 Rules pertaining to specific paradigms 105
3.3 Reduplication 106
  3.3.1 Full reduplication 106
  3.3.2 Reduplication of the initial CV 108
4 Tone 111
  4.1 Overview 113
  4.2 Evidence for contrasts 114
  4.3 Phonetic realisations 117
  4.4 Tonological rules 120
  4.5 Morphotonomological rules 121
  4.6 Post-lexical H-spreading 125
  4.7 Distribution of tone 127
5 Noun morphology 135
  5.1 Gender, definiteness and number 135
  5.2 Definiteness 138
    5.2.1 Form of definiteness-gender marking 138
    5.2.2 Definiteness on nouns and anaphoric reference 144
    5.2.3 Definiteness-gender marking on adjectives and verbs 147
  5.3 Gender 150
    5.3.1 Default gender 150
    5.3.2 Gender semantics 153
    5.3.3 Terminal vowel, gender and lexical gender 154
    5.3.4 Gender in terms of address 159
    5.3.5 Gender in nouns and adjectives 161
    5.3.6 Gender in demonstratives 162
    5.3.7 Gender in relative clauses 162
    5.3.8 A gender mismatch in compounds 163
    5.3.9 Third person gender distinction 165
  5.4 Number 166
    5.4.1 Number and gender in nouns 167
    5.4.2 Associative plural 170
    5.4.3 Adjectives and plurality 172
    5.4.4 Number and person 173
  5.5 Noun derivation and compounding 173
5.5.1 Verbal nominal 173  
5.5.2 Cognate verbs and nouns 175  
5.5.3 Compound nouns 178  
5.5.4 Compounds with dādū ‘child’ 180  
5.5.5 Compounds with bābā ‘father’ and bé ‘mother’ 180  
5.5.6 Nominalizations with bābā ‘father’ and bé ‘mother’ 183  

6 Pronouns 187  
6.1 Personal pronouns 187  
6.1.1 Pronominal forms of Sheko 187  
6.1.2 Guraferda pronouns 190  
6.1.3 Enlivening quotative construction 191  
6.2 Possessive pronouns 192  
6.3 Reflexivity and ‘oneself’ 193  

7 Nominal and verbal modifiers 197  
7.1 Demonstratives 197  
7.1.1 Basic demonstratives 197  
7.1.2 Non-deictic use of basic demonstratives 199  
7.1.3 Locational demonstratives 203  
7.1.4 Manner deictic 208  
7.2 Adjectives 210  
7.2.1 Adjectives as a lexical category 212  
7.2.2 Semantic notes on adjectives 217  
7.3 Numerals 220  
7.3.1 Cardinal numbers 221  
7.3.2 ‘Ordinal’ numbers 222  
7.3.3 Uses of the numeral ‘one’ 224  
7.4 Quantifiers 227  
7.5 Adverbs 231  
7.5.1 Time adverbs 231  
7.5.2 Manner adverbs 234  

8 Ideophones and interjections 237  
8.1 Ideophones 237  
8.1.1 Prosodical and morphological markedness 237  
8.1.2 Intensifying ideophones 239  
8.1.3 Predicative ideophones 242  
8.2 Interjections 245  
8.2.1 List of interjections 245  
8.2.2 Greetings 248  

9 The noun phrase 251  
9.1 Noun phrase and word order 251  
9.2 Case 256  
9.2.1 Nominative 258  
9.2.2 Accusative 258  
9.2.3 ‘Genitive’ and dative 260
9.2.4 Dative 262
9.2.5 Inessive and locative 264
9.2.6 Instrument and coordination 271
9.2.7 Similative 276
9.2.8 Motive 276
9.3 Possessive constructions 279
9.3.1 Attributive possession 279
9.3.2 Predicate possession 281
9.3.3 The case-marked construction and inalienability 282

10 Simple clauses 289
10.1 Overview of main verb morphology 289
10.2 Stance 291
  10.2.1 Indirect stance 293
  10.2.2 Direct stance 294
10.3 Mood 296
  10.3.1 Overview of paradigms from a tonal point of view 298
  10.3.2 Imperative-Jussive 299
  10.3.3 Irrealis 301
  10.3.4 Optative 303
  10.3.5 Realis 304
  10.3.6 Obvious 305
  10.3.7 Viewpoint 306
  10.3.8 Implicative 307
  10.3.9 Imminence 308
10.4 Aspect 308
  10.4.1 Imperfective aspect 309
  10.4.2 Perfective aspect 310
  10.4.3 The suffix -a in Irrealis forms 312
10.5 Verb stem alternation 316
  10.5.1 Stem alternation in Sheko 316
  10.5.2 Velar alternation in other Omotic languages 321
10.6 Subject clitics 323
10.7 Copula 324
10.8 Existential 327
10.9 Verb phrase and word order 329

11 Complex clauses 331
11.1 Medial verbs 331
  11.1.1 Formal and syntactical properties 331
  11.1.2 Switch-reference markers 332
11.2 Serial verb constructions 334
  11.2.1 Aspectual serial verb constructions 336
  11.2.2 Other serial verb constructions 340
11.3 Overview of subordinated clauses 342
11.4 Relative clauses 342
11.4.1 Form of the relative verb 343
11.4.2 Position with regard to the head 345
11.4.3 Accessibility hierarchy and relativizing strategies 347
11.4.4 Gap strategy and anaphoric pronoun strategy 348
11.4.5 Relative clauses in verb complement position 353
11.4.6 Irrealsis relative clauses 354
11.5 Adverbial clauses 356
  11.5.1 Locational and temporal clauses 356
  11.5.2 Reason clauses 359
  11.5.3 Purpose clauses 360
  11.5.4 Conditional and temporal clauses 361
  11.5.5 Concessive clauses 363
  11.5.6 Verb complements 364
11.6 Conjunctions 366
  11.6.1 Coordinative 366
  11.6.2 Inclusive 367
  11.6.3 Alternative 368
  11.6.4 Resultative 369
  11.6.5 Amharic conjunctions 371
12 Verb derivation 373
  12.1 Causative 373
    12.1.1 Formal aspects of the causative 373
    12.1.2 Double causatives 378
  12.2 Passive 379
    12.2.1 Formal aspects of the passive 379
    12.2.2 Semantic aspects of the passive 382
  12.3 Middle 384
    12.3.1 Formal aspects of the middle 385
    12.3.2 Semantics of the middle 387
    12.3.3 Reciprocity 393
  12.4 Experiencer verbs 396
13 Interrogatives 401
  13.1 Absence of a modal marker 402
  13.2 Stance marking in interrogatives 404
  13.3 Intonational contour in interrogatives 406
  13.4 Interrogative pronouns 411
  13.5 ‘Embedded questions’ 414
14 Negation 417
  14.1 Negative verb of existence 417
  14.2 Event negation 417
    14.2.1 Simple negatives 417
    14.2.2 Complex negatives 419
  14.3 State negation 422
  14.4 Negative polarity and ‘nothing other than’ 425
15 Subject clitics and focus

15.1 Proclitics, enclitics and the absence of clitics
   15.1.1 Overview
   15.1.2 ‘Double’ occurrence

15.2 Subject clitics in main clauses
   15.2.1 Preceding the main verb
   15.2.2 Following stem in Realis forms
   15.2.3 Following non-subject wh-words and constituents
   15.2.4 Main clauses without subject clitic
   15.2.5 Restrictions regarding clitic placement
   15.2.6 Summary

15.3 Subject clitics in medial clauses
   15.3.1 Subject clitics in clause-initial position
   15.3.2 Subject clitics in medial position
   15.3.3 Medial clauses without subject clitics
   15.3.4 Background clauses

15.4 Flexible subject clitics in other languages

15.5 Other strategies indicating focus and contrast
   15.5.1 Clefting
   15.5.2 Geta-constructions
   15.5.3 Contrastive topic marker

Bibliography

Appendix A. Texts
   Text 1. The snake, the man and the fox.
   Text 2. Sheko history
   Proverbs

Appendix B. Alphabet

Appendix C. Wordlist

Samenvatting

Curriculum Vitae
## List of structure morphemes

The list contains all bound morphemes and their main allomorphs in alphabetical order. Forms with a syllabic nasal are only listed under ː... Tone is written ˩ ˥ ˧ and ˥˩ from lowest (1) to highest (4).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>form</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>allom.</th>
<th>indication of function/name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-a</td>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>-əra</td>
<td>accusative case (tone 2 or 3).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-a</td>
<td>IMPLC</td>
<td>-əra</td>
<td>Implicative (modal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-a</td>
<td>STD</td>
<td>-ya</td>
<td>stance marker, direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=a</td>
<td>2SG</td>
<td>ha=</td>
<td>2sg subject clitic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=á</td>
<td>3MS</td>
<td>há=</td>
<td>3ms subject clitic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-àb</td>
<td>PROX</td>
<td>háà</td>
<td>proximal demonstrative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-àb</td>
<td>REL</td>
<td>-əb</td>
<td>relative clause marker/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>complementizer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-òbe</td>
<td>REL.mother</td>
<td>-òbe</td>
<td>relative clause marker/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>complementizer feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ara</td>
<td>NEG</td>
<td>-ra, -r</td>
<td>negation (tone 3/4).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-b</td>
<td>REL</td>
<td>-b</td>
<td>relative clause marker/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>complementizer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bàb</td>
<td>father</td>
<td>-bàb</td>
<td>masculine nominalizer/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>complementizer, cf. bàb 'father'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-bàstà</td>
<td>WHILE</td>
<td>-bàstà</td>
<td>temporal clause marking,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>consists of -bà-à-s-tà REL-PROX-M-LOC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-be</td>
<td>mother</td>
<td>-bey</td>
<td>feminine nominalizer/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>complementizer, cf. bày 'mother'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ee</td>
<td>STI</td>
<td>-e</td>
<td>stance marker, indirect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-éj̥tā</td>
<td>MOTIVE</td>
<td>-éj̥tā</td>
<td>motive marker (~ (y)éj̥tā)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-é</td>
<td>STI</td>
<td>-ee</td>
<td>stance marker, indirect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-b</td>
<td>REL</td>
<td>-áb, -b</td>
<td>relative clause marker/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>complementizer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-òbe</td>
<td>REL.mother</td>
<td>-òbe, -be</td>
<td>relative clause marker/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>complementizer feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ara</td>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>-ra, -a</td>
<td>accusative case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-əra</td>
<td>INCL</td>
<td>k'ərə</td>
<td>inclusive conjunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ha-</td>
<td>2SG.POSS</td>
<td>=a</td>
<td>2sg possessor prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>há-</td>
<td>3MS.POSS</td>
<td>=á</td>
<td>3ms possessor prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Symbol</td>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hàà-</td>
<td>PROX</td>
<td>proximal demonstrative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-l</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>feminine gender</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-l</td>
<td>DIST</td>
<td>distal demonstrative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=l</td>
<td>3FS</td>
<td>3fs subject clitic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;l&gt;</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>feminine gender</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ln</td>
<td>F.DEF</td>
<td>feminine gender-definiteness marker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f(f)</td>
<td>3PL.POSS</td>
<td>3pl possessor prefix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f(f)=</td>
<td>3PL</td>
<td>3pl subject clitic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ihtà</td>
<td>MOTIVE</td>
<td>motive marker (~ (y)ihtà)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ññ</td>
<td>2PL.POSS</td>
<td>2pl possessor prefix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ññ=</td>
<td>2PL</td>
<td>2pl subject clitic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ñt</td>
<td>PL.ADDR</td>
<td>plural addressee marker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-k</td>
<td>REAL</td>
<td>Realis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ka</td>
<td>COOR</td>
<td>coordinating conjunction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ka</td>
<td>WITH</td>
<td>instrumental case</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-kh</td>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>dative case</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-k’a</td>
<td>IN</td>
<td>inessive case</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-k’àra</td>
<td>INCL</td>
<td>inclusive conjunction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-m</td>
<td>IRR</td>
<td>Irrealis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-n</td>
<td>DS</td>
<td>different subject switch-reference</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ñ</td>
<td>DEF</td>
<td>definiteness marker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ññ</td>
<td>MIDD</td>
<td>middle derivation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ññ</td>
<td>NEG2</td>
<td>state negation (tone 3 or 4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ññ</td>
<td>PURP</td>
<td>purpose clause (tone 3 or 4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ññ-</td>
<td>1SG.POSS</td>
<td>1sg possessor prefix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ññ=</td>
<td>1PL.POSS</td>
<td>1pl possessor prefix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ññ=</td>
<td>1SG</td>
<td>1sg subject clitic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ññ=</td>
<td>1PL</td>
<td>1pl subject clitic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ná or</td>
<td>-ná</td>
<td>alternative conjunction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ñtà</td>
<td>COND</td>
<td>conditional clause marker/</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>complementizer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ññ</td>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>dative case</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-on(ka)</td>
<td>ASS</td>
<td>associative plural</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ññ</td>
<td>STI.ADDR</td>
<td>stance marker, indirect,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>in vocatives and interrogatives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ra</td>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>accusative case</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ra</td>
<td>NEG</td>
<td>negation (tone 3 or 4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Component</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-s</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>masculine gender</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-s</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>masculine gender with plural referent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-s</td>
<td>CAUS</td>
<td>causative derivation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-s</td>
<td>OPT</td>
<td>Optative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-s</td>
<td>VIEWP</td>
<td>Viewpoint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-s</td>
<td>Optative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>COP</td>
<td>copula verb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>PASS</td>
<td>passive derivation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>same subject switch-reference</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>locative case</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tana</td>
<td>RESUL</td>
<td>resultative conjunction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>COP</td>
<td>copula verb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>same subject switch-reference</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>PASS</td>
<td>passive derivation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>masculine gender</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ya</td>
<td>STD</td>
<td>stance marker, direct</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yi-</td>
<td>DIST</td>
<td>distal demonstrative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yi-</td>
<td>3FS.POSS</td>
<td>3fs possessor prefix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yi=</td>
<td>3FS</td>
<td>3fs subject clitic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>z</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>masculine gender</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ý</td>
<td>ELAT</td>
<td>elative, extra high tone (~ tone 4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## List of abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>name</th>
<th>basic form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ACC</td>
<td>accusative case</td>
<td>-əra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.FOC</td>
<td>assertive focus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amh</td>
<td>Amharic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASS</td>
<td>associative plural</td>
<td>-onka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>consonant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAUS</td>
<td>causative derivation</td>
<td>-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COOR</td>
<td>coordinative conjunction</td>
<td>-ka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COP</td>
<td>copula verb</td>
<td>tə</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COND</td>
<td>conditional</td>
<td>-ňtà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNJ</td>
<td>conjunction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNV</td>
<td>converb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAT</td>
<td>dative case</td>
<td>-kà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DECL</td>
<td>declarative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEF</td>
<td>definite</td>
<td>-ň</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIST</td>
<td>distal demonstrative</td>
<td>yì</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DS</td>
<td>different subject</td>
<td>-ň</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ELAT</td>
<td>elative (tone 4 or extra high tone)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPEN</td>
<td>epenthetic vowel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EV</td>
<td>expletive vowel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>feminine</td>
<td>&lt;₁&gt;, ₁, -nil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FS</td>
<td>Factual stem (Benchnon data)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FOC</td>
<td>focus marker</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gf.</td>
<td>Guraferda variant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>verb class (tone 4 on the Basic stem)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDEO</td>
<td>ideophone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPLC</td>
<td>Implicative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN</td>
<td>inessive case</td>
<td>-k’ã</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INCL</td>
<td>inclusive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INF</td>
<td>infinitive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTJ</td>
<td>interjection</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPF</td>
<td>Imperfective</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRR</td>
<td>Irrealis</td>
<td>-m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KNOWN</td>
<td>Obvious</td>
<td>-kn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>verb class (tone 2 on the Basic stem)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>locative case</td>
<td>-tà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LCT</td>
<td>locative suffix</td>
<td>-kà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>-s, ž</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>masculine</td>
<td>-ù</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MIDD  middle derivation
MOTIVE motive case/ clause
MP  morphophonological rule
MT  morphophonological rule
N  syllabic nasal in CV-structure
NEG  negation (event negation)  -ara (tone 3/4)
NEG2  negation (state negation)  -n (tone 3/4)
NV  non-velar stem
NMLZ  nominalizer
NOM  nominative
NP  noun phrase
O  object
OPT  Optative
OQ  open question
PASS  passive derivation
PAST  past tense
PF  Perfective
PL  plural
PLUR  pluractional
PL.ADDR  plural addressee
POSS  possessor
PR  phonological rule
PROX  proximal demonstrative
PURP  purpose
Q  interrogative
RDP  reduplication
REAL  Realis
REC  reciprocal
REL  relative
RESUL  resultative conjunction
S  subject
S, SG  singular
SIMIL  simitative case
sp.  species (kind of)
SS  same subject
STI  stance marker, indirect
STI.ADDR  stance marker, indirect
STD  stance marker, direct
TEMP  temporal
THV  thematic vowel

-gā
-èjñtā

[reduplication]

[tonal change in noun]
V  vowel
V  verb
v  tone bearing unit
VIEWP Viewpoint
VOC vocative (term of address)  -s  [tonal change]
WHILE short for: REL.PROX.M.LOC -bàástà
WITH instrumental case -ka
< > orthographic representation
[ ] phonetic representation
// phonemic representation
| pause
° lexical tone not known
≠ ungrammatical
* form in the protolanguage
1 first person
2 second person
3 third person
The Omotic language family. Bender (2000).
Approximate location of Majoid languages and dialects in southwest Ethiopia (in grey).
Acknowledgements

In my computer sits a document entitled ‘Thanksgiving’. This document contains lists of people I met during my field trips as well as friends, family and colleagues, with shorter or longer notes of praise and thanks. Some persons reappear time and again in the lists, and I am afraid I haven’t expressed my thanks to them often enough during the last five years. Other people I met just once, like those who bought me a meal during bus trips - actually an amazing number. And of course I can’t possibly repeat the names of all those who taught me Amharic, Sheko, or another language; who happily discussed nothing but linguistics with me for hours and hours; who made a house more like a home (and I’ve stayed in not a few houses!); who wanted to encourage me although at times they must have wondered what it was that I did... I count myself blessed with all these encounters.

Here is a selection from the Thanksgiving document: first of all, my Sheko family: Ayna Bejih, Worqe Getachew, Adane, Zarin, Wogay, Daniel, Pexros and Dogama. They never got irritated by my quiet listening nor by my sometimes incomprehensible questions, but they urged me to speak and encouraged me to continue working. Participating in their daily life and having long conversations at dusk or in the moonlight shaped my understanding of the language and culture in an unique way. They constitute some of the most precious moments in the past years. I am amazed and thankful that I may know you. S’u’a tamuka qoyka askn hamsu (66) tiitsqiti. M-baab saaqabaab itikn atsásà!

Qes Pexros Kiatus and Defera Xhonu were and are very helpful and committed, as is Xaràta Alemu who joined in at a later stage (guys, remember the Anbessa Branch?). I learned a lot from the participants of the first Mizan workshop as well. Of my other Sheko friends, teachers, and storytellers, I would like to mention Meseret, Mimi, Shanta, Síqaay, Asxhennaqi, Komtu Shewa Tureta, Henok, Basìn, Marta, Endrias, Aberra, Solomon, Hanna, Daniel, Sion, Elias, Luqas, and Marqos. Thankyou to Alemitu Kwanta and other neighbors for both sini gyanu and haay gyanu.
The members of SIL Ethiopia supported me from my first visit to the country until today. It is a joy to work together! To Aster, Alja-Katriina Ahlberg, Tefera Endalew and Tersit, the Bryants, Neudorfs and the others: heartfelt thanks! My gratitude goes to the director and staff of the SIM language school in Addis Ababa for letting me join classes at whatever moment and for the warm atmosphere at the school. The staff at the Institute of Ethiopian Studies at the Addis Ababa University was quick in supplying the necessary research documents, and the members of the Ethiopian Language Research Center and the Department of Linguistics always said I should not stay away. Special thanks to Mulugeta Seyoum and his wife Aynalem who invited me to their home. I thank Birtukan and Nasibu for their hospitality while I was in Addis, and Tadiyos, Alemu, and Andinet for their friendship and sharing their dreams.

I’d like to express my sincere thanks to Ato Berhanu Gebre and his wife Misgana. Together with Alex and Asressu, they radiate hope for the future and confidence in the people under their care. Of the people in Mizan, I also cannot forget Tigist, Hailu, Mehret, and Ephraim’s family. In Sheko town, Amanuel H. Herano and his family provided a safe haven and I value their genuine friendship. Thanks also to Defera and Wegay, and Mengistu, and all those on the way up from Boyta to the office.

I am lucky to be in the African languages and cultures’s hotspot at Leiden University, with colleagues like Felix Ameka, Jean Chavula, Maud Devos, Oumou Diaby, Kofi Dorvlo, Maggie Konter, Maarten Kossman, Connie Kutsch Lojenga, Mercy Lamprey, Daniela Merolla, Khalid Mourigh, Victoria Nyst, Ongisha Orxaydo Oda, Stanley Oomen, Graziano Savá, Thilo Schadeberg, Heleen Smits, Sander Steeman, Sandra Barasa and Tolemariam Fuufa. I am more than lucky to have Ramada Elghamis, Christian Rapold, and Rebecca Voll as my roommates. I thank the secretaries of the Leiden University Centre for Linguistics, Margreet Verra and Gea Hakkers. Thanks to Geert Jan Veldman for checking the manuscript on spelling (remaining errors are mine). An exceptional big thankyou for Chris, Alice, Connie, Ginger, Mercy, Jenneke,
Angela, Jean, Sandra and Joseph. Hearing your prayers was and is a privilege.

I thank my friends Branka, Marleen, and Margreet for listening to all my stories about Sheko and for their encouragement. Ellen and Hery, Gerieke and Martijn, Jeanette en Yan, Marianne and David, I am so thankful to have you as my friends. The number of meals we shared is only a tiny indication of your invaluable friendship and trust. I wouldn’t be me without you.

I am glad that my aunt Toos van den Berg (Toysn) could visit me in Boyta. Like Sheko definiteness and gender markers, we attach to the same things. Reinout and Suzanne, Maurijn and Ariëke, thank you for your support. Finally, let me thank my parents in my mother tongue: ik bedank jullie uit de grond van mijn hart voor jullie liefde, verbazingwekkend lange e-mails, adviezen (die ik natuurlijk niet allemaal kan opvolgen), aanmoediging, en zorgzaamheid. Ik neem dat alles allemaal mee als ik op reis ga.
1 Introduction

This chapter introduces the Sheko people and the language they speak. Furthermore, it shortly describes previous work on Sheko and the research that forms the basis for this book.

1.1 The people

The Sheko (ʂòkù ɣaab ‘Sheko people’) number about 37,500 people¹ and most of them live in small neighborhoods scattered in the hills of southwest Ethiopia, Southern Nations, Nationalities, and Peoples’ Region, in the Sheko and Guraferda wärädas² (Bench-Maji Zone) as well as in Tepi and the surrounding villages (Yeki wäräda, Sheka Zone). They are bordered in the east by Bench, in the south by Me’en, in the west and north by Majang, Anuak, and Shekkacho people. The Sheko have their own names for other people groups. They call the Bench diüzë, the Me’en sūrû, the Majangir  grátisá, the Anyuk pér, and the Diizi màjì. Amhara and other northerners are called góórà. The Majangir in turn call the Sheko daan yir (’daan clan’); the Bench call them čak <s’ak>. Generally, they are referred to as Sheko or Shako (after the Amharic מין ‘shāko’), as in public administration and censuses. Sheko must not be confused with Shekkacho, a different Omotic group bordering Sheko on the north, whose language belongs to the Kefoid branch.

1.1.1 Notes on the Sheko culture

Straube (1963) is the first resource for anthropological information on the Sheko (in German). Conti Rossini (1937) and Cerulli (1956) also report on the Sheko. A major source of knowledge is Hildebrand (2003), which contains among others an excellent account of daily life and food production. The Sheko share a common origin with the Diizi (Haberland 1993) and Nayi. Furthermore, the Sheko culture has much in common with the Bench culture (Lange 1975).

¹ Preliminary results of the 2007 census by the Ethiopian Central Statistic Authority.
² wäräda: an administrative unit under the Zone, further divided into qebeles.
Land and agriculture
The Sheko areas of settlement lie roughly between 1100 and 1700 meter altitude. Hildebrand (2003) describes the ecological zones in detail. The land is verdant and rainfall abundant. Fifty years ago, the area was covered by a dense rain forest. In northeast Sheko, the landscape is now more open where people live closer together, in walking distance of roads; whereas remoter areas remain more sparsely populated. As the population density grows, the forest gives way to more and more plots of farmland, where different crops like jätí ‘maize’, dōnkä ‘sorghum’, and a variety of tubers are produced. Straube (1963) lists various indigenous types of maize and sorghum, but notes that most of them are replaced by types that the Amhara brought with them. The Sheko are known to be experts in the cultivation of tubers. baakä ‘taro’ is their daily staple. kätjí ‘yam’ is highly valued and served particularly as food for the nobility in the past. Sheko have specially prepared yam fields and also exploit yams from the forest. According to Hildebrand (2003:248), ‘the degree of sophistication of Sheko yam farming and their historical focus on this crop are unique’. However, the farming of yam is perceived as labor-intensive and in present-day farming, the focus is shifting to cash crops such as maize. Taro remains important, since it is available during most of the year. If nothing else is available, not only breakfast but also lunch and dinner may consist of baakä ‘taro’.

Coffee constitutes the main economic product in northeast Sheko. The coffee grows naturally in the forests that cover the hills, although nowadays large parts of the forest are manipulated to produce larger quantities of coffee. In Guraferda, coffee is gathering importance as markets become more accessible, but the region is better known for its quality honey from various parts of the forest.

Nowadays, the Sheko use the Amharic way of counting the months of the year. In the past, however, the year was measured by the practices surrounding dōnkä ‘(red) sorghum’ and divided into two. The rainy season or turä bēngi started with the preparation of the fields for sowing the sorghum, around May. It lasted until the seventh month, when the sorghum was ripe. The dry season or kāyn bēngi started in the
eighth month, December, when the sorghum was harvested. In the ninth month, people drank the beer made of the harvested grain. The long tenth month at the end of the year was the period in which no activities related to sorghum took place.

**Social organisation**

Historically, Sheko society was probably quite hierarchical in nature (cf. a.o. Haberland (1993) on Diizi). The chiefs, which had political and spiritual authority, lived in courts and were approached deferentially. There were special rules for behaving in the presence of a chief, and also the chief himself was bound by regulations which prescribed behaviour different from common people. At the lower end of the social stratification were the Bandu. They were hardly considered human, had to sit on the ground near the door, got food presented in leaves because plates touched by them could not be used by others, etc. One of the reasons they were looked down upon is their habit of eating bush meat (e.g. wild pigs and bushbuck), something which is taboo for other Sheko. Straube (1963:46) states that the Sheko did not eat meat at all, except for meat of wild buffalos. Though their social status has improved since, the Bandu still live in separate villages today. The main occupations of the Bandu are pottery making and tanning. They are sometimes asked to hunt wild pigs as these animals damage the crops.

The Sheko are divided into numerous clans, among which are the following (alphabetically listed):

(1) Aaka, Bandu, Baykes, Benti, Bersu, Duudu, Era, Fazha, Gomkes, Goota, Karti, Korzha, Maana, Qorma, Sim, Suumu, S’oykes, Tuud, Uri, Zooz

Descent is patrilineal and virilocal, i.e. a wife will normally move to her husband's village. Marriage is exogamous. Some clans can traditionally not intermarry. Of the clans, gootà, báykés and fáṣá are the highest in rank. The leaders of high clans were each specialized in dealing with certain problems, e.g. rain making in times of drought, or warding off evil in case of disease. The chief had always a member of an associated
lower clan at his side, called bûrjâ. This person tasted the food for the chief and performed rituals in his presence.

1.1.2 Notes on the Sheko history

Sheko oral history claims that the Sheko migrated from the Maji highlands to their present territory. Two well-known figures play an important role in the stories of the separation of the Sheko from the Diizi: Jeba Burzh, who sent the Sheko away, and Koynâb, his younger brother. Koynâb went from Egita to Badik’a in Guraferda and became a king whose sons spread out over the land and founded important lineages. As Hildebrand (2003:522-530) shows, accounts vary on several points (Koynâb was the son of Jeba Burzh, not his brother; the sequences of migration differ from each other). According to Straube (1963:37), the first king of the Sheko was Wurkenbe, whose elder brother was “Çâ Bûrğâ”. Having come from Egita, they lived for a while in the “Schuro” area (Me’en country?) until they didn’t feel safe anymore. The elder brother then went to Jeba and the younger brother to the present Sheko area. The Sheko today see the Diizi as their brothers, and some still pay tribute to the local chief of Jeba on important occasions.

The first written sources referring to “Gimira” people living to the southwest of the Kafa state are from the late seventeenth century. Lange (1975) cites these early references, which are vague and partly contradictory in nomenclature and location. Cecchi (1886) equated Gimira with the “Binenso” (Bench?) and reports that the “Ghimirrá” and “Sciancallà-Scirô” are ‘the main slave sources for the Kafa, yielding ca. 7000 slaves annually’ (Lange 1975:11). Oral traditions of the Shekkacho bring up the presence of ‘Gimira (specifically Čako) slaves’ at the court of a Shekkacho ruler in the seventeenth century, according to Lange (1975:2). Sheko oral tradition as received by Straube (1963) says that the Sheko would have had to pay a cow and an elephant tusk as a yearly tribute to the Kafa king. They would have become independent from Kafa two generations before the Amhara brought Gimira under their control, killing the Sheko king Kôins. (Straube arrived in Gimira in 1955, one year after his successor had died (Straube 1963:36).)
The Russian officer Bulatovich was one of the first writers to actually traverse the Gimira country with a military expedition in 1897. He lists as political units among others the “Scevo” [She], “Benescio” [Bench], “Sciara” and “Sciacco” [Sheko], which were ‘tributary to the Abyssinians’, and was impressed by the fertility and productivity of the country (Lange 1975:16). In the following decades, the Amhara launched several military campaigns to bring the land under their control, massacring hundreds of people, raiding slaves, and establishing military encampments (katamas) in Mizan Teferi and Maji. Around the military settlements, the people were forced into the gebbar-system of labor. The rest of the area was basically a hunting area for slaves and animals. Haberland (1993) points out that the Diizi, being sedentary, were prone to the destructive gebbar-system (Garretson 1986) and states that the Diizi population was decimated in the first quarter of the twentieth century. Next to violence from their Amharic overlords, raids from the Anuak and Majangir also formed a threat for the farmers. As the population declined, erstwhile fields were reclaimed by the forest.

The Europeans who traveled through the Gimira area, e.g. Montadon in 1910, Athill in 1919, and Hodson in 1924-1927, describe the land as devastated (Lange 1975:21ff). Although Ethiopia officially banned slavery in 1923 as part of the drive to enter the League of Nations, slavery continued for more than a decade. The government advisor De Halpert noted slavery, criminality and gebbar-work (serdom) as late as 1934 (Lange 1975:23, citing Perham 1948:328-331). Hildebrand (2003:106) reports of one elder in a remote Sheko village, who ‘was taken as a young man by slave traders to northern Ethiopia; after many years of captivity he escaped and somehow returned to his natal village.’

During the short Italian occupation (1937-1941), a few road construction projects were initiated to improve accessibility of the region. Some Sheko state that their people have fought the Italians by laying in ambush and killing them by spear. In the 1950’s, the first anthropological research devoted to the Sheko took place (Straube 1963, cf. Cerulli 1965). When the reign of Emperor Haile Selassie was ended by the coup of the Dergue in
1971, its leader Mengistu Hailemariam imposed a series of radical changes in the political landscape. The Dergue regime was infamous not only for warfare with Eritrea and disregard of food shortage and hunger in rebellious areas, but also for its involuntary resettlement schemes and dismantling of indigenous leadership. Villages were formed into gebeles, administrative units governed by Peasant's Associations. In Sheko, this was also a time during which a number of schools, health clinics and roads were built. In Aman, near Mizan Teferi, the former Catholic Mission grounds were converted into a hospital.

After the downfall of the Dergue in 1991, development of the Sheko area slowly continued. Settlements along the road connecting Mizan Teferi and Tepi grew and trade in coffee increased. In 1992, there were violent clashes between Sheko and other ethnic groups in the town of Tepi. Christianity spread during the last thirty years and reached the inaccessible Guraferda area in the second half of the 1990's. The increase of Christendom further weakened the authority of local chiefs. Another development, especially since the turn of the century, is the settling of a considerable number of farmers from other parts of Ethiopia in the Guraferda area.

1.2 The language
Sheko (ṣōkū noogū, cf. nöögū ‘word, language, matter’) is described in this section by pointing out its classification, socio-linguistic situation, division into dialects and by providing a short typological sketch.

1.2.1 Classification
Sheko forms the Majoid (Dizoid) branch of the Omotic language family together with Diizi (Dizi) and Nayi, also called Na'o. The branch is called Majoid because the oral history of all three groups name the area around Maji town as their place of origin (Aklilu 2003:59). In the literature, the name Dizoid is also used, because the Diizi people were the better-known of the three groups.
One of the first classifications of Sheko is given by Montadon (1912); he was a Swiss doctor who stayed in the “Gimira” area around 1910. He categorized the Gimira languages into four separate linguistic groups: 1) “Dizou” [probably stands for She, ACH] and “BennEcho” [Benchnon] 2) “Batchi” [?] and “Chako” [Sheko] 3) “Gourafarda” and 4) “KayeGou” [Kwegu?] according to Lange (1975:20). The ethnographic work from Conti Rossini (1937) describes the “Ghimira group”, including Sheko, but gives virtually no language data. Similarly, Cerulli (1956) gives mainly ethnographical and socio-linguistical information. Both authors list different groups as belonging to the “Gimira”. By and large a picture emerges in which Bench varieties on the one hand (sometimes with the addition of “Caba”) and Majoid varieties on the other hand are grouped together. However, a remark like Cerulli (1956: 89) that ‘the Gimira language of Gurafarda (Sakko) is called the language of Dizi, or Dorso (from the name of the southern plateau in its most northern area) by the Abyssinians although it is only a Shakko dialect’ is elucidating only to a degree. Tucker and Bryan (1956:128f) write that Gimira is the name that the Oromo use for some ‘tribes’ (they list “Shakko (Shako)”, “Bienesho”, “She or Dizu”, “Kaba”, and “Nao”) and they consider the languages that these groups speak as the Gimira dialect cluster, with the addition of “Maji” (i.e. Diizi).

In the 1970’s the first comparative wordlists were collected for all languages and Dizoid was set up as a separate group from Gimira, which was now limited to Benchnon varieties. Bender (1971) and Fleming (1976) classified Dizoid as a subbranch of North Omotic, placing it on a par with Gonga-Gimojan, i.e. they saw Dizoid as the first split-off from Proto-North-Omotic. In later classifications, its outlying position within North Omotic did not change, although the internal arrangements of other branches were refined and the little-known Mao languages were set apart as the first offshoot from Proto-Omotic.
In contrast, Bender (2000; 2003) classified Dizoid as South Omotic together with Dime and the Aroid languages. A main reason for this shift lies in the forms of the pronouns. Thus, Majoid is dissimilar from North Omotic, and at the same time its similarity to South Omotic languages is limited, so that Majoid was only recently associated with the South Omotic branch. Hayward (2009: 92) remarks on Majoid that ‘this group stands somewhere midway between Aroid and the TN languages’. It shares certain features with one group and certain features with the other.’

On the internal classification of Majoid, Aklulu (2003) proposes a split between Dizi on the one hand and Sheko-Nayi on the other, based on phonological correspondence-sets.

---

3 i.e. North Omotic languages characterized by t and n elements for 1sg and 2sg pronouns respectively.
Proto-Maji

/        \
Sheko-Nayi  Dizi

/  \
Sheko  Nayi

Subgrouping of Majoid languages, from Aklilu (2003).

Further linguistic research suggests that there is more or less a continuum from Maji to Jeba to Guraferda to Tepi and Sheko. The Diizi and Sheko communities live in the midlands and uplands, and the settlement areas are separated from each other by less inhabited lowlands. The Maji and Jeba massifs (Diizi) are separated by the Dima lowlands from the Guraferda massif (Sheko), which in turn is separated from the Sheko and Tepi area to the northeast by the lowlands through which the Akobo (Gilo) river runs. The dialect situation correlates with the geographic-ecological conditions. It is not clear how Nayi fits into the picture. The Nayi language, which is highly endangered since its speakers are switching to Kafa (Aklilu 2003:62), is spoken to the east of the Bench-She area. Sheko speakers generally are not familiar with the term Nayi or Na’o, although some know that there live people ‘who speak like Diizi’ near Shewa-Bench.
1.2.2 Socio-linguistic situation

Sheko is clearly a minority language. Especially in towns and in the area bordering Bench, there is a strong pressure from Benchnon and Amharic, which have both gained a positive attitude. Intermarriage with Bench is a widely accepted practice, and Sheko may refer to them as zyāmā ‘in-laws’. Benchnon is spoken in and around the regional centre Mizan Teferi. Amharic is valued highly due to the school system, use in church, and the job possibilities it offers, however limited in the Sheko area itself. In 2006, there were about seventeen schools in the Sheko wārāda (district), of which only one
provided classes till grade 10, four till grade 8. Sheko is not
used as language of instruction; there are almost no Sheko
teachers. Few Sheko continue their study on higher levels.
There is a high grade of bilingualism in the languages
mentioned: although only 30% or less of the children go to
school, almost all people, except elderly and some women,
speak Amharic to a fair degree. Especially in towns, the
children start learning Amharic when they are still young, if
not in school then from playmates. In areas bordering on Bench
there is also bi- and trilingualism. I met some people in Mizan
Teferi, the regional centre, who had given up Sheko, since they
lived in a non-Sheko area. Even in Sheko-town some people
raise their children in Amharic rather than Sheko. For the
Guraferda area there may be influence from other languages
next to Amharic, such as Me’enit.

At present, the use of Sheko in home-situations is still stable. It
is also used outside the house in most situations when only
Sheko are present. However, in dealing with outsiders people
mostly switch to Amharic or another language. Outsiders, like
teachers (even if they have lived for many years in the area)
usually do not learn Sheko. Some Bench women married to
Sheko men do learn Sheko. In church, Sheko is the second
language, even when no outsiders are present. Most of the
time, the service is interpreted from Amharic into Sheko. More
socio-linguistic information can be found in SIL (2002) (data
gathered in 1993). Recently, the zonal government has
expressed a wish to develop mothertongue education materials
for Sheko. In 2009, a trial orthography was accepted. This
development may strengthen the position of the Sheko
language in the future.

1.2.3 Dialects
Sheko is considered one language by all speakers. The main
dialects of the Sheko language are usually referred to with
place names. People commonly recognize three variants:
- Sheko (Sheko wäräda, spoken around Sheko town)
- Tepi (around Tepi town, in Yeki wäräda)
- Guraferda (Guraferda wäräda)
Formerly, dialects called Bulla and Dorsha or Daanyir were reported (Conti Rossini 1937; Straube 1963; SIL 2002), but according to my informants these do not exist, cf. Akilulu (1988:vi). ‘Daanyir’ is a Majangir clan with many people from Sheko origin, according to Unseth (1998). While Sheko and Tepi variants do not differ much from each other, the most divergent dialect appears to be the Guraferda variant. People in Sheko town can tell a few words which are different in the Guraferda and Tepi variant (the item ‘four’ is popular: kúmb in Sheko vs. kórkó in Tepi and Guraferda). Generally, the people in Sheko do not know in what other respects the Guraferda variant is different, but they do not readily understand the dialect since most Shekos have hardly any contact with people from Guraferda. However, they maintain that it is the same language and, according to some, “the original way of speaking Sheko.” People from Guraferda identify themselves and the language they speak as Sheko. They usually understand speakers from Sheko town better than vice versa.

Below, a few examples of lexical differences between the Sheko and Guraferda variants are given. These include kinship terms; basic verbs; quantifiers, and others. Tone in the Guraferda list is very tentative.

(2)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sheko</th>
<th>Guraferda</th>
<th>English gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yááb</td>
<td>yáìì</td>
<td>‘man, person’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>báádù</td>
<td>òììú</td>
<td>‘younger sibling’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bááyá</td>
<td>gáázl</td>
<td>‘lion’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>éd</td>
<td>jéébú</td>
<td>‘mouth’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?yáats’ní</td>
<td>jáátá</td>
<td>‘moon’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sòg</td>
<td>t’aay</td>
<td>‘see’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maak</td>
<td>gants</td>
<td>‘tell’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tʃíór</td>
<td>bóór</td>
<td>(Sh: ‘move away’) ‘finish’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k’yaas</td>
<td>oy</td>
<td>(Sh: ‘reject’) ‘leave’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kéta</td>
<td>ùfa</td>
<td>‘all’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ãngã</td>
<td>nòka</td>
<td>‘much’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

From data gathered during two short visits to Kuki and Samarta in Guraferda, it appears that there are considerable grammatical differences between the variant of Sheko spoken around Sheko-town and the variant spoken in Guraferda. This
goes from pronouns which resemble those in Diizi (section 6.1.2), to different verbal morphology and sentence type marking. Further research could uncover a wealth of insights on the relation between Sheko and Diizi, the possible historical developments of Sheko and the various pathways dialects can take when they develop more or less separately.

1.2.4 Profile of the Sheko language

Sheko is an agglutinating language which generally follows an SOV-typology. The language is strictly verb-final, dependent clauses precede main clauses, and most affixes are suffixes, although there is one series of possessive prefixes and a gender inflexion. However, in the noun phrase, the unmarked order appears to be head-initial rather than head-final. Modifiers occur on both sides of the head noun, and the head noun is marked tonally if preceded by a modifier.

In the phoneme inventory, most remarkable is the series of four retroflexes (plain and ejective stops, voiceless and voiced fricatives). Vowel length is phonemic and the language has a (much-used) syllabic nasal. Sheko has four level tones and borders Benchon which has five levels of height. Lexical tone of verbs is however restricted to two classes. Furthermore, tone on verb stems varies to reflect modal distinctions.

Nouns are marked for definiteness and gender, and indirectly for number, although nouns are basically transnumeral. Definiteness marking excludes plural marking and is always accompanied by a gender marker: -ð-s -DEF-M for masculine and <1>-ð <F>-DEF for feminine. In compound nominals with ñaab ‘father’ as second element, there is apparently a gender mismatch when the compound is made definite. Surprisingly, nominal morphology is used on verbs as well: definiteness-gender marking can attach directly to verb stems in adjective derivation; and -ñaab ‘father’ and -be ‘mother’, which are extensively used as nominalizers/ complementizers, can attach to Irrealis verb forms. In relative clauses, a resumptive pronoun may be present. The resumptive pronoun can occur before its antecedent, which is claimed to be rare cross-linguistically (Keenan 1985:148-149). In possessive
constructions, juxtaposed and case-marked noun phrases are employed to signal (in)alienability.

In the verb system, modal distinctions in main clauses include Imperative-Jussive (unmarked), Optative, Realis, Irrealis, Obvious and Implicative. Furthermore, negative and interrogative clauses have their own marking. Next to modal markers, there are stance markers, which indicate the attitude of the speaker towards his utterance: an indirect stance marker signals distance and is used e.g. for politeness and reported speech, whereas a direct stance marker makes an utterance more direct and less polite. Sheko distinguishes between final main verb forms, which have aspectual and modal markers, and medial verb forms, i.e. cosubordinate verbs which have no aspectual and modal markers (although the tone on the verb stem indicates modal distinction to a degree). Medial verb forms are marked for switch-reference and medial verb clauses often form long chains. The language has verb-verb sequences which can be analysed as serial verb constructions; they differ morphologically from medial clause chains in that the first verb form consists of a bare stem, and functionally in that they present actions as a single event.

Verb derivation includes causative, passive and middle. Interestingly, the reciprocal is built by causative-middle suffixes. Some experiencer verbs are causative, with the Experiencer as an object.

Interrogatives are marked in several ways. First of all, interrogatives do not have a modal marker, unlike their declarative counterparts. Dropping off a grammatical element which is obligatorily present in the declarative is one of the divergent ways in which Omotic languages mark interrogatives. Secondly, falling intonation marks clauses with a simple negative verb and negative copula as interrogative, and is optionally present in other clauses. Additionally, the form of the indirect stance marker indicates interrogativity if it is present.

Subject agreement clitics play an important role in the informational structure of a clause. When they procliticize to
the verb in main clauses or to the first constituent of medial clauses, they signal verbal predicate focus, which correlates to a topic-comment structure. When they encliticize to other hosts, they signal different informational structures. They enclitize to non-subject constituents in focus; their enclitization to certain verb stems indicates verb polarity focus; and finally, they are absent in subject focus constructions.

1.3 Research on Sheko
This section discusses previous linguistic work on Sheko and Majoid languages and describes the fieldwork situation and methods for the research that underlie this thesis.

1.3.1 Previous linguistic work
As for linguistic analysis of Sheko, there are only a few accessible data on the language. There are some unpublished fieldwork notes from the early ’70s (Bender, Fleming) and we find some notes in Fleming’s “Omotic overview” (Bender (1976)). The main work on Sheko is Aklilu (1988), which deals with the phonology, morphophonemics and basic syntax of the Sheko language; I started the preliminary research with his highly valuable grammar in mind. Aklilu presented some more (unpublished) materials at conferences; such as a paper on aspects of Sheko morphology (1989). The first published material on Sheko is found in a phonological comparison of Bench and two Majoid languages (1994b). Furthermore, Aklilu Yilma’s 1996 article “Sheko phonology and morphophonemics” was published in the Journal of Ethiopian Studies, 29(2): 23-46. Bender (2000; 2003) draws from the work by Aklilu.

The record of Majoid languages owes a lot to Aklilu as he also worked on Nayi and Diizi (see bibliography). Comparative work is limited to phonology and morphophonemics, in the pioneering work of Aklilu (2003). Furthermore, there are several articles on Diizi (Dizi), such as Allan (1976a,b); Claudi (1985); Claudi and Serzisko (1985), and two BA theses at Addis Ababa University. A major step forward in the linguistic knowledge on Diizi is the appearance of Beachy (2005).
1.3.2  Research for this book

My research on Sheko started with a short preliminary research in January 2005, partly financed by the Leiden University International Study Fund (LISF). In September 2005 I started my PhD studies at Leiden University in the project “The morpho-syntax of two modal categories in Omotic”.\(^4\) This project, led by prof.dr. M. Mous and dr. Azeb Amha, aimed at a comparative overview of the way Omotic languages distinguish between declaratives and interrogatives. The subproject on Sheko, as a representative language of the understudied Majoid languages, aimed at providing a detailed analysis of Sheko grammar, including an investigation of sentence types.

I went to Ethiopia for two fieldwork periods. During both stays, I took courses of a month in Amharic, which I used as a meta-language when necessary. I tried to speak Sheko when possible. The data for this thesis are mostly gathered in Boyta, a place where almost everybody is Sheko, apart from the school teachers. I lived at the house of Ato (Qes)\(^5\) Ayna Bejih and his family, who did everything they could to make me feel at home. I stayed with them in January 2005; two times seven weeks during my fieldwork period in the first half of 2006; 15 weeks in total in the first half of 2008 and a few days in February 2009.

Next to participant observation, for which Boyta was an ideal location, I worked with semi-structured elicitation and transcribed oral texts. The texts are an invaluably rich source of data on semantics (e.g. metaphorical use of words), structural analysis (e.g. use of certain constructions, clitic placement and word order) and discourse features (e.g. use of conjunctions and highlighting devices). As such, the texts complemented data collected through elicitation, while at the same time providing new input for elicitation. Lastly, apart from the linguistic value, the various types of texts form part of the cultural heritage of the Sheko and some will be used in alphabetisation as reading materials.

\(^4\) This project is part of the endangered languages programme of the Dutch Organisation for Scientific Research (NWO).
\(^5\) Ato (Amh) ‘mister’; Qes (Amh) ‘reverend’.
Ato Ayna was my main help during many hours of transcribing stories. He also took me to Ato Ziiti Bani and Komtu Shewa Tureta, whom we interviewed about Sheko history. Of the neighbors, Meseret Deesa took an interest in working with me, but he had left to study in Awassa when I returned to Boyta in 2008. Others who worked with me one or more times include Qes Wandimu Jarka, Ato Wondu Tadese, Adane Ayna, Mimi Deesa, Ato Ali Bejih, Marta Shibe, Siqaay Xhonu, Shanta Mashku, Mesqerem, and Asxhennaqi Beqele.

As Boyta is close to Sheko town, I used to walk every other day to town to recharge my computer. The bible translators’ office kindly let me use their generator when power was off, and the translators themselves also became important language consultants: Ato Defera Xhonu (from Boyta) and Qes Pexros Kiatus (from Qorxha near Tepi). In 2008, I also met a few times with Ato Xarata Alamu, a school teacher who grew up in Goota but has lived in Sheko town for many years. He obtained permission from the wārāda administration to join Qes Pexros, Defera and myself for a six-week tone workshop in Addis Abeba, organised by SIL in June-July 2008, during which we (finally) nailed down most of the tone system. We concentrated on the noun, noun phrase, verb paradigms and simple sentences. We also gained basic knowledge of tone in medial and subordinate clauses; tone in relative clauses is based more on extrapolation. I hope future research will refine the present tone analysis.

On trips to the Guraferda area with Qes Ayna, I learned to speak a few words of that local Sheko variety. In 2006, I shortly visited Kuki, and stayed in Samarta for ten days together with Josine van der Wal, a BA student from Leiden University. In 2008, I wanted to go as far as Dorita, but had to remain in Samarta for health reasons. I worked there for about five days with Aberra Toosu and others; the verb and clause morphology proved to be quite different from what I was used to and merits its own documentation. In this thesis, I have only included data from Guraferda (Samarta) where I thought it could further comprehension or evaluation of the Sheko data.
In February 2009, I returned to Mizan Teferi for a SIL workshop on orthography and learned new things from the enthusiastic participants Pextros Kiatus, Defera Xhonu, Ayna Bejih, Xorata Alamu, Gaata Zentu, Gutema Chukusa, Aberra Toosu, and Adisu Ayina. Unfortunately, there was no time to do much checking of earlier work.

1.3.3 The present study
The aim of this book is a descriptive grammar of Sheko, which includes phonology, morphology, and syntax of the language. In presenting the analysis, terminology is kept as basic as possible to ensure accessible reading for people from different theoretical backgrounds; terminology which is particular to a single theory is avoided. The presentation is data-intensive, and some texts are made available in the appendix. In this way, the reader is invited to check the analysis and come up with counter-analyses where necessary.

Although this work is first and foremost descriptive, I have added comparative notes wherever I thought it might be fruitful. The careful reader will discover a tendency to cite from works on Benchnon, Zargulla and Dime in particular. Benchnon is the geographical neighbor of Sheko and belongs to North Omotic, together with Zargulla. Dime is a South Omotic language. Since the classification of Majoid languages has switched from being North Omotic to being South Omotic, it makes sense to look for parallels in both branches of the family. Moreover, the research project of which my work forms a part is in many ways a continuation from earlier research on Dime and Zargulla. In addition, Sheko is compared in a few places with its sister languages Diizi and Nayi.

1.3.4 Orthography and representation
The Sheko data are represented using IPA symbols, following the recommendations of the International Phonetic Association except in a few cases (see section 2.1.2). The main exceptions are the Africanist use of \( y \) for \( j \) and the absence of a written glottal stop in word-initial position before a vocoid. Tone is written \( \dot{\acute{u}}, \acute{v}, \ddot{\acute{u}} \) and \( \dot{\acute{u}} \) from lowest (1) to highest (4). Contour tones other than \( \ddot{\acute{u}} \) or \( \acute{v} \) on a short vowel have been represented
with the end point symbol on the following consonant (e.g. bärkäy ‘monkey’).

The transcription of Sheko data generally follows a surface-phonemic principle, except when it occurs between phonetic brackets. Applying this principle means that an allophone of an underlying phoneme is written different from the default realisation if the allophone can be represented by (is very similar to) the default realisation of another phoneme. Thus, the syllabic nasal /ŋ/ which is underlying alveolar but assimilates to the preceding or following consonant is written m when it has the phonetic value of [m] adjacent to a labial. If the allophone does not correspond to an existing Sheko phoneme, it is represented by the default realisation, e.g. the phonetic value of the syllabic nasal adjacent to a post-alveolar or velar [n, ñ] is written n since n and ñ are not phonemic in Sheko. Exceptions are the dative case marker following first person pronouns, which is written -ñ (basic form -kñ); and verb forms of the verb noq ‘talk’ without adjacent velar (cf. nóógù ‘word, language’). The surface-phonemic principle is generally not followed in the rules that simplify or delete a stop preceding a syllabic nasal.

Verbs are cited in their Imperative form. Verbs and nouns whose lexical tone is not known are marked by the symbol ‘ in the gloss. In transcriptions between phonetic brackets and elsewhere, post-lexical H-spreading is not represented.

Translations have been kept quite literal. In some cases, an even more literal wording follows between brackets if it may help to understand the Sheko structure better. In a few cases, possible additional translations are added which may help to highlight the sense of the utterance. Usually, only one translation is given (often based on the context of the example) where several translations lie within the semantic scope (in or out of context). For instance, an Irrealis form can be rendered only with a deontic modal verb form (should), whereas other modal values (could, would) as well as habitual and generic also fall within the scope of the Irrealis. In the glosses, Sheko names are generally represented in the Sheko orthography, unless a well-known English equivalent exist. Thus, góló is
glossed S'oku. In the translation and running text I use <Sheko>, as that name is common in the literature. The Sheko alphabet is presented in Appendix B.
2 Phonology

This chapter discusses the phonological inventory of Sheko and the possible combinations of sounds.

Sheko has 28 consonant phonemes, 5 long and 6 short vowel phonemes and a syllabic nasal phoneme. Furthermore, it has four tonemes. The phonemes, their possible combinations and allomorphs are discussed, as well as word structure.

The phonology of Sheko has much in common with Benchnon, its geographical neighbor. Aklilu (1994b) draws attention to the phonological similarities in his article on phonological comparison of Benchnon and two Majoid languages, concluding that Benchnon has more in common with Majoid than with Ometo.

2.1 Consonants

2.1.1 Consonant phonemes overview
Sheko has the following consonant phonemes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>labial</th>
<th>alveolar</th>
<th>post-alveolar</th>
<th>retroflex</th>
<th>velar</th>
<th>glottal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ejective stops</td>
<td>p’</td>
<td>t’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>k’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiceless stops</td>
<td>t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>k</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiced stops</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>d</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>g</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ejective affricates</td>
<td>ts’</td>
<td>tʃ’</td>
<td>t Ş’</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiceless affricates</td>
<td>ts</td>
<td>tʃ</td>
<td>t Ş</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiceless fricatives</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>š</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>h</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiced fricatives</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>ʒ</td>
<td>z</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasal</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tap</td>
<td>r</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approximants</td>
<td></td>
<td>y</td>
<td>w</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1. Consonant inventory
The phonological representation follows the conventions of the International Phonetic Alphabet, except in the following cases: affricates are not marked by a tie bar (\textit{ts} = \textit{tʃ}); \textit{r} is used instead of \textit{t}; and \textit{y} is used for IPA \textit{j}, following Africanist tradition.

As a writing convention, word-initial glottal stop is not written before a vowel or syllabic nasal. (Tone is written \textit{ũ}, \textit{ũ}, \textit{u}, \textit{ũ} from high to low.)

The phoneme inventory given here is basically the same as Aklilu (1988).

\textbf{2.1.2 Notes on the table}

The sibilants in table 1 are put in a box, because of the sibilant harmony which applies to this group of phonemes. Sibilant harmony is discussed in section 2.5.4 and 3.1, \textit{PR 13}. In the context of Omotic languages, the series of retroflex sibilants is unique to the Majoid languages. It occurs in Sheko, Naiy and the western dialects of Diizi (Aklilu 2003:66). The equivalent segments in the neighboring Benchnon language are analysed as alveo-palatals (Rapold 2006:64).

The velar nasal \textit{n̥} is not considered phonemic. In all cases, \textit{n̥} is adjacent to a velar and can thus be analysed as an assimilated \textit{n}. Therefore \textit{n̥} is not represented in table 1. In two cases, a velar element is only found in related words. In the dative first person pronoun, the dative marker is \textit{n̥}; in other environments the dative is \textit{ön̥}. Secondly, verb forms of the verb \textit{noŋ 'talk, discuss'} contain an \textit{n̥}; the corresponding noun \textit{nṩ'gũ 'word, matter, language'} has a voiced velar stop. In Diizi, however, \textit{n̥} is phonemic. It is contrastive in word-final position following a vowel, according to Beachy (2005:29).

The labio-velar phoneme \textit{w} is grouped with the velar consonants, because it does not trigger labialisation of \textit{n} as the labial consonants do (see section 2.3.1 for examples). In initial position, \textit{w} occurs only preceding the back vowels \textit{o} and \textit{u}.

Sheko has no contrast between \textit{l} and \textit{r}, unlike the other Majoid languages and unlike Benchnon. \textit{l} has merged into \textit{r} in Sheko (Aklilu 1994b:1055, 1061). Furthermore, \textit{r} does not appear in
word-initial position. Loanwords starting with 1 or ድ in the source language are pronounced with an initial ዛ in Sheko.

(1) ስቅቅ ‘right, correct’ < እቅቅ (Amh)  
አማራ ‘be used to’ < እማራ (Amh)  
ኔዕ ‘radio’ < የድዕ (Amh/ Itāl/ Engl)  
(¬ ኦዕ, የድዕ, የድዕ)  
ኔብራ ‘airplane’ < መምላ (Amh)  
(ጻራፈራ ሲክት)  

2.1.3 Geminated consonants

Geminated consonants are rare, except in emphatic expressions such as ideophones (2) and elatives (3). Therefore, gemination has a clear functional load (i.e. it codes intensity), but hardly any lexical load.

(2) ዳዕድዕ ‘very red’  
ዕንች ‘look intently’  

(3) እን ‘all’  
ኔስስ ‘very firmly’  
(ፋት ‘all’)  
(ፋት ‘firmly’)

A few adverbs (4) have a geminated consonant. Two nouns vary in pronunciation between a single and geminated consonant (5).

(4) ወት ‘distant’  
ወታት ‘quietly’  

(5) ዕድ ‘three’  
ትዕ ‘dot, full stop’  
(ትዕ ‘stop’)

2.1.4 Series to substantiate phonemic status

This section presents data to indicate the phonemic status of the consonants given above. The data is ordered first according to place of articulation, while manner of articulation is kept constant, and secondly according to manner of articulation and airstream mechanism, while place of articulation is kept constant. Sibilants are presented in additional environments in order to show that vowel quality does not affect their
articulation. At the end, the phonemic status of the glottal consonants ? and h versus the approximants w and y is illustrated.

**contrasting place of articulation:**

\[ p' - t' - k' \]

word-initial

(6) \[ \text{p'\text{éép'}} \quad \text{‘pray’} \]
    \[ \text{t'\text{eer}} \quad \text{‘swell’} \]
    \[ \text{k'\text{eet'}} \quad \text{‘swallow’} \]

word-medial

(7) \[ \text{öp'\text{ä}} \quad \text{‘vine sp.’} \]
    \[ \text{k'\text{öt'\text{ä}}} \quad \text{‘comb’} \]
    \[ \text{ści\text{k'\text{ää}}} \quad \text{‘stiff porridge’} \]

word-final

(8) \[ \text{ś\text{á\text{ąp'}}} \quad \text{‘tear off’} \]
    \[ \text{k\text{á\text{ąt’}}} \quad \text{‘dig, hoe’} \]
    \[ \text{t\text{f\text{a\text{ak'}}}} \quad \text{‘have a headache’} \]

\[ t - k - ? \]

word-initial

(9) \[ \text{t\text{ā\text{ārā}}} \quad \text{‘wasp’} \]
    \[ \text{k\text{ā\text{ārā}}} \quad \text{‘leaf’} \]
    \[ \text{ā\text{ārā}} \quad \text{‘brains, thought’} \]

word-medial

(10) \[ \text{k\text{á\text{ādā\text{ā}}} \quad \text{‘grass sp.’} \]
    \[ \text{b\text{ā\text{ākā}}} \quad \text{‘tree sp.’} \]
    \[ \text{d\text{ā\text{ādā}}} \quad \text{‘battering, to batter’} \]

word-final

(11) \[ \text{ky\text{āt}} \quad \text{‘sting’} \]
    \[ \text{m\text{āk}} \quad \text{‘measure in cups’} \]
    \[ \text{dā\text{ā?}} \quad \text{‘batter, make dough’} \]
b - d - g  
word-initial

(12)  bärkä  ‘thigh’
dargà  ‘plant sp.’
gárgà  ‘termite’

word-medial

(13)  záábá  ‘line’ (also záábà)
gáádá  ‘wall’
náágá  ‘iron’

word-final

(14)  daab  ‘create’
máád  ‘deceive’
daag  ‘invite’

t’ - ts’ - tʃ’ - tʃ’  word-initial

(15)  t’árá  ‘injera’
ts’áámà  ‘eagle’
tʃ’ááru  ‘waterfall stone’
tʃ’áárt  ‘top ring of grass roof’

word-medial

(16)  jírt’u  ‘(clan name)’
hárt’su  ‘top of tree’ (also hárt’sú)
p’ért’u  ‘grass sp.’
k’árt’sú  ‘wrist/ ankle joint’

word-final

(17)  báát’  ‘turn away’
ts’ááts’  ‘shine (sun)’
báát’  ‘be angry’
k’aats’  ‘hit with stone’

preceding i
(18)  
tṣh
‘bird sp.’
ts’r
‘clay’
tʃʃrú
‘unripeness, being green’
gəətʃ’=f-k
‘she laughed’

following i

(19)  
mít’
‘pepper’
gts’
‘girdle, put on trousers/ skirt’
fltʃ’â
‘witchcraft, evil’
-

preceding u

(20)  
t’uus
‘know’
ts’úúts’
‘whistle’
tʃ’úbf
‘small knife’
tʃ’úurũ
‘knot of a tree’

following u

(21)  
nũũtũ
‘wild animal’
ts’úúts’
‘whistle’
mútʃ’â
‘bird of prey sp.’
búûtʃ’
‘pluck (chicken)’

(tʃ and ts do not appear in word-initial position)

t - ts - tʃ - tʃ word-medial

(22)  
kátá
‘grass sp.’
yatsâ
‘flat basket’
batʃâ
‘bed’
hããtʃ’ã
‘shoot at treerunk’

preceding i
(23)  títi  ‘back’  
útsì  ‘fly’  
kóóťji  ‘mother-in-law’  
keėts = f-k  ‘she spins, twists’

following i

(24)  tìft  ‘look, stare’  
iîts  ‘boil’  
dîtj  ‘sneeze’

preceding u

(25)  tíitù  ‘bird of prey sp.’  
bîtsù  ‘fern’  
gââťfù  ‘teff’  
kútšù  ‘hand, arm’

following u

(26)  üti  ‘love’  
útsì  ‘fly’  
kúťjì  ‘chicken’  
butšà  ‘nest’

f - s - š - h  word-initial

(27)  fāänà  ‘fork (in branch, in road)’  
sââyā  ‘fable’  
jāârâ  ‘song’  
šâânà  ‘baldness’  
hâârá  ‘knife’

word-medial

(28)  kafa  ‘bird’  
kasà  ‘mamba’  
bâkâjà  ‘three-legged stool’  
mâsà  ‘flat storage place under the dâmà rack’  
kyâhà  ‘stake (for stretching a hide)’
word-final

(29)  syaf  ‘be wet, rotten’
myās  ‘hew’
māj  ‘be patient’
as  ‘plant’
ts’āh  ‘dry, ripen’

preceding i

(30)  fūsī  ‘afterbirth (of humans)’
sītsū  ‘hair’
jītū  ‘lake’
sīgū  ‘plant sp. (parasitic)’

following i

(31)  jīf  ‘add’
sīl  ‘listen’
yīl  ‘pull out, dig up’
gīl  ‘1. pull 2. abduct for marriage’

preceding u

(32)  fūkū  ‘straw’
sūkū  ‘rope, vein’
jūfā  ‘smell’
gośkū  ‘handle’

following u

(33)  dūuf  ‘hit’
fus  ‘finish a period of time’
kuφ  ‘be sick’
wūg  ‘kill’
būh  ‘bark’

z - ʒ - ʐ  word-initial
(34) zārā ‘seed’
    zāzā ‘peace’
    zaak’h ‘afternoon’

    word-final

(35) gaz ‘snap, break’
    káãz ‘be happy’
    gaaz ‘prune’

    preceding ı

(36) zǐrkū ‘day’
    3frî ‘cotton’
    mûz=ɨ-k ‘she shredded’

    preceding u

(37) zûmâ ‘veins and ribs of plant’
    3ufî ‘bat’
    gôrzû ‘lizard’ (also gôrzûbe)

m - n word-initial

(38) maarû ‘mercy’
    nâãrû ‘wind’

    word-medial

(39) gôômâ ‘equal (born during the same period of time)’
    gôônâ ‘beehive half’

    word-final

(40) daam ‘plant (v.) sticks for yam’
    gaan ‘make consenting noises’

contrasting manner of articulation, voicing and airstream mechanism
p’ - f - b - m  word-initial

(41) p’urk’ ‘be uprooted’
    fuur  ‘trade’
    búr  ‘1. flow by; 2. ask payment of a debt’
    müğk‘n  ‘swim’

               word-final

(42) šálp’ ‘tear off’
    kaaf  ‘build’
    k’áb  ‘pour out’
    k’ám  ‘rear someone else’s child’

              t - t’ - d - n - r - y  word-initial

(43) tárá  ‘spur’
    t’ará  ‘injerra’
    dárú  ‘plant sp.’
    náánú  ‘elder brother’
    -
    yákú  ‘six’

               (r does not occur word-initially)

               word-final

(44) kyá  ‘sting’
    mať  ‘ferment’
    gad  ‘start’
    án  ‘put’
    ár  ‘think’
    áy  ‘dance’

             ts’ - ts - s - z  word-intial

(45) ts’ámà  ‘bird of prey sp.’
    -
    sam  ‘remain behind’
    zámà  ‘machete’
(ts does not occur word-initially)

word-final

(46)  
  ts’úúts’ ‘whistle’
  búúts  ‘cut with horizontal movement, mow’
  boos  ‘filter’
  booz  ‘stroll’

 tf’- tf - f - ʒ  word-medial

(47)  
  dāātfù ‘worm’
  gāātfù ‘teff’
  tāāfù ‘skirt of grass’
  gāāyù ‘sideboards, whiskers’

 ts’ - ts - ʃ - z  word-medial/-final

(48)  
  k’aatʃ̀ ‘hit with a stone’
  hāatʃā ‘shoot at treetrunk, bud (n.)’
  áāg  ‘stand’
  gaaz  ‘prune’

ʔ - h - k - k’- ɡ word-initial

(49)  
  árà ‘brains’
  háárá ‘knife’
  karà ‘leaf’
  k’árà ‘newly, raw, green’
  gárgá ‘termite’

word-final

(50)  
  gyáʔ ‘chew’
  ts’áh ‘dry, ripen’
  fák ‘weave’
  kák’ ‘suspend, hang’
  nyag ‘be spread out’

contrast the approximants and glottal consonants
56

? - h - w - y  word-initial

(51) ááb  ‘1. eye; 2. fruit’
hāāy  ‘water’
yááb  ‘man’

(w and y are in complementary distribution in word-initial position, see section 2.4.1)

word-medial

(52) dá?à  ‘battering, to batter’
kyáhà  ‘stake for stretching hides’
dayà  ‘bow’
kawà  ‘fat’

word-final

(53) ba?  ‘carry on back’
ts’áh  ‘dry, ripen’
k’áy  ‘rise’
ts’aw  ‘darken, become black’

2.2 Vowels

2.2.1 Vowel phonemes overview
Sheko has the following vowels:

(54) i ii  u uu
   e ee  a o oo
   a aa

Long vowels are written with double graphs instead of a colon.

The schwa (a) has no long counterpart like the other vowels. Its pronunciation varies; for some people, including my consultants from the Boyta area, the schwa somewhat
resembles [e], while for others it is almost pronounced as [a]. The schwa appears to be not very frequent in lexical items, but it also occurs in some frequently used grammatical morphemes, e.g. the indirect stance marker -a.

(55)  
gári  
‘shead’  
sáři  
‘legume sp.’  
gōp’ārā ~ gōp’ārā  
‘boulder’  
fāṣkāh  
‘snake sp.’  
férī  
‘maize’

According to one language consultant, the independent pronouns given in (56) also have a schwa. However, all other consultants disagreed.

(56)  
yeta ~ yeta  
‘you (sg)’  
nata ~ neta  
‘I’  
náta ~ náta  
‘we’

The status of schwa in Omotic is difficult. Bender (2003) mentions a sound correspondence a~e and suggests it might be a sixth vowel, but it is not straightforwardly reconstructable for proto-Omotic (see Bender 2003:133-4; 263; 311).

The vowels e, o and a do not occur as terminal vowel in nouns underlyingly. One word with final ay contracts to e, notably báy~bé ‘mother’.

### 2.2.2 Vowel length

All vowels except schwa occur short and long. To support the phonemic status of vowel length, the following pairs are given:

(57)  
dūk’n  
‘be mute, dumb’  
dłów  
‘heel’  
k’iš  
‘milk’  
k’ls  
‘drink’  
ěēd  
‘door’  
éd  
‘mouth’  
k’ēdā  
‘ring’  
k’ēdā  
‘oath’  
énā  
‘wealth’  
énà  
‘later today’  
k’eets’  
1. be sharp  
2. catch fire  
k’ets’  
‘roast cooked food on coals (caus.)’
dādū ‘lightning’   dādū ‘child’
zaārā ‘clan’   zarrā ‘fly sp.’
báár ‘take a mouthful’   bār ‘become blind’
gaar ‘bear fruit (non-tuber)’   gar ‘sing drunkenly’
maak ‘tell’   mág ‘measure in cups’
bōōtā ‘dust’   bōtā ‘big mortar’
gōōnā ‘beehive half’   gōnā ‘tree sp.’
oorā ‘snare’   órā ‘wet dung’
bōōr ‘move to far area’   bōr ‘curse (revocable)’
tos ‘bind on rope to haul up’   tos ‘storytell’
būūrā ‘waist-cloth’   burā ‘flood’
kūūjū ‘plant sp.’   kūj(u) ‘sickness’
ts’ūnts’ ‘whistle’   ts’unts’ ‘itch’
būùr ‘slaughter a pregnant animal’   būr ‘1. flow; 2. ask for payment of a debt’

In nouns, long vowels are restricted to the initial syllable. Verb stems mostly consist of only one syllable and the vowel can be long or short. Long vowels cannot co-occur with complex codas in the same syllable.

2.3 Syllabic nasal
In addition to the vowels, Sheko has syllabic nasals. A syllabic nasal forms the nucleus of a syllable and bears tone, just like vowels. On the other hand, a syllabic nasal differs from vowels in the way it is distributed.

2.3.1 Nasal assimilation
The syllabic nasal is analysed as alveolar underlyingly, since the place of articulation is alveolar preceding glottal consonants (58a,b) (and preceding alveolar consonants (58c,d)).

(58) a.  n = hàày-k   [ ?ηfiààyk ]
  1SG = spend.night-REAL
  ‘I spent the night’
b. $\eta = \text{?om-k}$  
   $1SG = \text{replete-REAL.}$  
   ‘I am replete (ate my fill)’

c. $\eta = \text{ddör-k}$  
   $1SG = \text{run-REAL.}$  
   ‘I ran’

d. $\eta = \text{ts'ësh-k}$  
   $1SG = \text{be.satified-REAL.}$  
   ‘I am satisfied’

The syllabic nasal assimilates in place to the adjacent consonant.

\begin{itemize}
\item[(59)] $\text{ts'āp'm}$  \quad $[\text{ts'āp'm}]$  \quad ‘root’
\item $\text{bāsā}$  \quad $[\text{bāsā}]$  \quad ‘doorstep’
\item $\text{tūt'ħ}$  \quad $[\text{tūt'ħ}]$  \quad ‘top of the head’
\item $\text{šūk'j}$  \quad $[\text{šūk'j}]$  \quad ‘eyebrow’
\end{itemize}

Orthographical note: Syllabic nasal is written as $\text{m}$ when it is adjacent to a labial, and $\text{n}$ in all other cases. Thus, assimilation to palatal or velar place of articulation is not indicated, except between phonetic brackets. See PR 9. Assimilation of alveolar nasals in section 3.1 for further description of nasal assimilation.

The phoneme $\text{w}$ triggers velarization of a nasal, rather than labialization. Therefore it is presented together with velar consonants rather than bilabial consonants in the consonant overview at the beginning of this chapter. The example below demonstrates that $\text{w}$ patterns with the velar consonants.

\begin{itemize}
\item[(60)] a. $\text{m} = \text{baaš-kl-k}$  
   $1SG = \text{want-exist-REAL.}$  
   ‘I want’
\item b. $\eta = \text{gēṭš'ū-kl-k}$  
   $1SG = \text{laugh-exist-REAL.}$  
   ‘I am laughing’
\end{itemize}
c. \( n = \text{wuš-kl-k} \quad [ \text{ʔuškîk} ] \)
\( 1SG = \text{kill-exist-REAL} \)
‘I am killing’

2.3.2 Distribution
The distribution of the syllabic nasal in nouns is restricted to the second syllable.

(61) \( jāp厣 \) ‘larvae of bees’  \( dīk厣 \) ‘heel’
\( kūb厣 \) ‘four’  \( kōōk厣 \) ‘road’
\( tš’ād厣 \) ‘war’  \( ts’iffk厣 \) ‘charcoal’
\( ūūt厣 \) ‘rat’  \( ʔyāts厣 \) ‘moon’
\( sag厣 \) ‘nine’  \( ūf厣 \) ‘flower’
\( kās厣 \) ‘whiskers’  \( gōōrz厣 \) ‘throat, gullet’
\( ʔyāz厣 \) ‘right’  \( jōn厣 \) ‘fear’

Like nouns, verb stems never have a syllabic nasal in the initial syllable. Syllabic nasals in verb stems may all be related to the middle derivation (62), see section 12.3.

(62) \( zīp厣 \) ‘chase away’
\( dēf厣 \) ‘be rotten (wood)’
\( gāts厣 \) ‘help’
\( āy但不限 \) ‘think much about’
\( t’ōsk厣 \) ‘leak’
\( ts’ūb厣 \) ‘be narrow’

N.B. The syllabic nasal can occur in the first syllable of a word. The first person possessor prefixes (63) and subject clitics (64) occur word-initially.

(63) \( n-kyānȗ \)
\( 1SG.Poss-dog \)
‘my dog’

(64) \( m = \text{baq-ə} \)
\( 1PL = \text{work-3TI} \)
‘let us work’
2.3.3 The status of syllabic nasals

This section discusses evidence concerning the independent phonemic status of syllabic nasals.

The syllabic alveolar nasal is in opposition with vowels. Although the distribution of syllabic nasal is limited compared to vowels, many examples showing contrast can be found, except word-initially. Word-medial pairs are presented below.

(65) a. \( ki=a-k-\dot{e} \)
exist = 2SG-REAL-STI
‘you were there’

b. \( ki=\eta-k-\dot{e} \)
exist = 1SG-REAL-STI
‘I was there’

(66) a. \( gy\ddot{a}d\ddot{u}-s \)
rope-PL.
‘ropes’

b. \( gy\ddot{a}d-\ddot{n}-s \)
rope-DEF-M
‘the rope’

(67) a. \( fi\ddot{u}=t\ddot{u}s\ddot{a}-s-k-\dot{e} \)
3PL = know-CAUS-REAL-STI
‘they made known’

b. \( fi\ddot{u}=t\ddot{u}s-\dot{n}-s-k-\dot{e} \)
3PL = know-MIDD-CAUS-REAL-STI
‘they introduced themselves (made themselves known)’

Some word-final pairs are given in (68) and (69).

(68) a. \( \dot{n}=s\ddot{i}s-\dot{\ddot{a}} \)
1PL = listen-put.Q
‘shall we listen?’

b. \( \dot{n}=s\ddot{i}s-\ddot{\ddot{a}} \)
1PL = listen-MIDD
‘let us listen (for our own benefit)’
Moreover, the tone on the syllabic nasals in (69) is not predictable: all six tonal patterns in nouns are found with final vowels as well as nasals (see section 4.7 for examples).

The opposition to consonantal nasals is a more complicated issue in Sheko, partly because of the distribution of syllabic nasals and consonantal nasals; and partly because of the scarcity of suffixes starting with a consonantal nasal. But with help of simple and morphologically complex words, opposition to consonantal nasals can be found in the same environment (the dot indicates a syllable boundary):

(70) a. \textbf{gin.k-ə} \hspace{1cm} \text{(non-syllabic nasal)}
doze-STI
‘doze!’

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\textbf{kl. = ñ.-k-ə} & \text{(syllabic nasal)} \\
exist = 1PL-REAL-STI & ‘we are there’
\end{tabular}

(71) a. \textbf{kān.tə} ‘basket’ \hspace{1cm} \text{(non-syllabic nasal)}

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\textbf{ta.-n.tə} & \text{(syllabic nasal)} \\
COP-COND & ‘if it is’
\end{tabular}

(72) a. \textbf{fin} \hspace{1cm} \text{(non-syllabic nasal)}
descend
‘descend!’

\begin{tabular}{ll}
\textbf{kl.-n} & \text{(syllabic nasal)} \\
exist-D\$ & ‘...is, ...’
\end{tabular}

The (b) examples are subject to optional desyllabification.
There are numerous morphemes which start with a syllabic nasal. The morphemes are from nominal as well as verbal domains. A list is presented in (73).

(73)  ȵ=  (tone 2)  1sg subject clitic
ₙ-   (tone 2)  1sg possessor prefix
ₙ=  (tone 4)  1pl subject clitic
ₙ-   (tone 4)  1pl possessor prefix
-ǹ   (tone 1)  definiteness marker
-ȵ   (unpred.) (terminal vowel/ nominalizer)
-ŋ   (tone 3/4)  state negation marker
-ŋ   (tone 3/4)  middle derivation
-ŋ   (tone 3/4)  purpose
-ǹ  (tone 1)  different subject switch-reference
-ǹ tà (tone 1.1)  conditional

There is only one suffix which starts with a non-syllabic nasal. This is the conjunction -ná ‘or’. Contrasting forms which are morphologically complex can be found. Examples are given in (74) and (75).

(74)  a.  fââ-fâ-ná  mängō
papaya-or  mango
‘papaya or mango’

b.  ééz-ǹ-s-ka  úk'-ǹ-s-ka
honey-DEF-M-COOR  milk-DEF-M-COOR
‘the honey and the milk’

(75)  a.  gēbe-ǹ-o
queen-1SG.POSS-STL.ADDR
‘oh my queen’

b.  gēbe-ná
queen-or
‘a queen?’

c.  yâb-ǹ-o
man-1SG.POSS.VOC-STL.ADDR
‘oh my friend’
d. yááb-má
   man-or
   ‘a man/person?’

Given the number of grammatical morphemes containing n, the clear opposition to vowels and the opposition to consonantal nasals, as well as the distribution of tone on the syllabic nasal, the syllabic nasal can be established as an independent phoneme of Sheko.

The following remark relates to the tone on syllabic nasals. The tone of most morphemes in (73) is predictable from the preceding tone. After a non-factual verb stem (which can have tone 3 or 4 depending on lexical class), the syllabic nasal has tone 3 or 4 (e.g. for permissive, purpose) and after a factual verb stem with tone 1 or 2 it has tone 1 (e.g. for \textit{ds}, \textit{COND}). After nouns, the definiteness marker has tone 1 if the noun is monosyllabic and otherwise it has the same tone as the terminal vowel would have. However, the tone on the minimal pairs n ‘I’ vs. ñ ‘we’ cannot be explained by tone rules. Also, the tone of the terminal vowel is unpredictable, see (76) below.

\hspace{1cm}
(76) dōrn ‘race’ door ‘run’
    sip’m ‘awl’ sip ‘sew’
    ñyází ‘ability’ ñyáz ‘be able’

2.3.4 A bilabial syllabic nasal?

As has been discussed in the previous section, syllabic nasals are phonemic, at least the alveolar syllabic nasal. From the existing literature on Sheko, the status of the bilabial nasal is unclear. The data of the present research are not conclusive either.

Aklilu (1994b) posits one alveolar (syllabic) nasal, which assimilates in place. However, Aklilu (2003:60) has both m and n as phonemes. It is stated that diachronically the syllabic nasals come from *um and *un respectively (Aklilu 2003:77-78). His data are the following:
(77) | Sheko | Nayi | Dizi | Proto-Maji |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ashes$^6$</td>
<td>ts’eākŋ</td>
<td>ts’eākŋ</td>
<td>ts’yākŋ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandfather</td>
<td>ākŋ</td>
<td>āků</td>
<td>ākŋ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short$^7$</td>
<td>šik’ns</td>
<td>šik’</td>
<td>ſiguz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat!</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tomorrow</td>
<td>bern</td>
<td>bearŋ</td>
<td>byaru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wide</td>
<td>(h)aŋkŋshaŋ ťaŋ</td>
<td></td>
<td>*haŋkuns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bark (of tree)</td>
<td>ŏrk’n</td>
<td>ŏrk’ú</td>
<td>*ork’un</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>four</td>
<td>kubm</td>
<td>kubm</td>
<td>kubm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die</td>
<td>jüb</td>
<td>jübŋ</td>
<td>jubu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>green</td>
<td>tʃ’irš</td>
<td>tʃ’ilu</td>
<td>tʃ’iluz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is possible that *un and *um are the sources of the present day sounds in nouns. But it needs to be noted that the syllabic m always occurs adjacent to a bilabial, and the occurrence of this syllabic nasal can be accounted for by assimilation. There is one exception where m is not adjacent to a bilabial, i.e. the verb ‘eat’. This verb is given as m for the three daughter languages. It is analysed ?m in Diizi (Beachy 2005).

In my corpus of Sheko, the stem for ‘eat’ alternates between ?um- (78) and m- (79). In example (78), the subject agreement marker does not assimilate, which it would if it were adjacent to a bilabial.

(78)  

a.  

$n = ?um-kî-k [ \?umkîk ] \ ^* \ [ \?umkîk ]$  

1sg = eat-exist-REAL  

‘I am eating.’

b.  

$\dot{u}m-\acute{a}râ \quad k'ê-ø$  

eat-NEG remain-STI  

‘Don’t eat!’

(79)  

a.  

$m-\dot{a}$  

eat-INF  

‘to eat/eating’

---

$^6$ In my data: ts’yākŋ ‘ashes’, šikŋ (vocative šikh) ‘grandfather’, šik ‘be short’; um/ m- ‘eat’, byârîh ‘tomorrow’, bâŋkîh ‘be wide’, ŏrk ‘peelings’ (gop’ærâ ‘bark’); kubm ‘four’; gōb ‘die’, tʃ’ir-4-ø ‘green’ (tʃ’ir ‘be wet, unripe, fresh (maize)’).  

$^7$ The adjectives ‘short’, ‘wide’ and ‘green’ are words consisting of multiple morphemes, i.e. a verb root plus nominal suffixes. See section 7.2.
b.  \( \text{há} = \text{m-á-m} \)
\[ \text{3MS = eat-put-IRR} \]
‘he will eat’

However, a single syllabic nasal is accepted as a possible pronunciation of the (affirmative) imperative, as in (80).

(80)  \( \text{úm} \quad \text{[ túm ]} \sim \text{[ t̚m ]} \)
eat
‘eat!’

Apart from \( \text{m-}/\text{úm} \) ‘eat’, there is a syllabic bilabial nasal as an allomorph of the Irrealis marker \( \text{-m} \). Its syllabicity seems to depend on the CV-structure: only in (81c) and (d), where a consonant follows, does it occur as a syllabic nasal. In (a) and (b), there would be three or four nucloid elements following each other if the bilabial nasal were syllabic. On account of (d), one could posit the syllabic bilabial nasal as the underlying form, but it needs to be noted that all occurrences of it are with the form \( \text{-m-bààb} \) and it could thus be syllabic analogous to (c) (since CVC stems are frequent and CV stems rare). Moreover, the form in (d) is given as [ há, kim, bààb ] as well. Therefore, it would also be possible to posit the non-syllabic labial as the underlying form. (Besides, it is hard to hear the difference between a syllabic and non-syllabic bilabial nasal in this context, in spoken as well as in whistled speech, since the syllabic nasal is silent in whistling).

(81)  a.  \( \text{há} = \text{sóq-á-m-ə} \)
\[ \text{3MS = see-put-IRR-STI} \]
‘he will see’

b.  \( \text{há} = \text{see-ə} \)
\[ \text{3MS = see.NV-IRR-STI} \]
‘he might see’

c.  \( \text{há} = \text{sóq-ím-bààb-ə} \)
\[ \text{3M = see-IRR-father-STI} \]
‘he must see’

d.  \( \text{há} = \text{ki-ím-bààb} \)
\[ \text{3MS = exist-IRR-father} \]
‘who will live’
There is no other place in Sheko where questions arise about the necessity of positing a second (bilabial) syllabic nasal as a phoneme.

It should be noted that for the other Majoid languages the verb ‘eat’ is the only ‘evidence’ given for positing m as a phoneme. However, in Benchnon, the dative m on pronouns is undervariable and gives evidence for the phonemic status of m in addition to the verb ‘eat’. Still, its distribution remains very limited (Rapold 2006:55-62).

## 2.4 Phonotactics

### 2.4.1 Occurrence restrictions in word-initial position

The phoneme r does not occur word-initially, except in the ideophonic word rururu ‘[call a cat]’.

The non-ejective affricative sibilants ts, tf, ṭs do not occur in word-initial position.

w in word-initial position only occurs when followed by a back vowel o or u, whereas y in word-initial position only occurs when followed by a front vowel i or e or by a¹. w and y are thus in complementary distribution in word-initial position. In other positions, they are contrastive, as shown in the last series of section 2.1.4.

Non-initial sequences of y and a back vowel or w and a front vowel do occur on morpheme boundaries.

(82) **bây-o**

mother:VOC-STLADDR

‘oh mother’

(83) **kyaw=f-k**

shout = 3FS-REAL

‘she did shout’

---

¹ The word ‘uniform’ is borrowed as yinifo:m accordingly.
Finally, the consonant-vowel sequences p’a, p’i and p’o have not been found in word-initial position.

2.4.2 Restrictions on combinations of consonants and vowels

The non-ejective affricative sibilants ts, tj, ts are not attested preceding e, a and o in mono-morphemic words, because they do not occur in word-initial position, and the vowels e, a and o do not occur as final vowel of nouns or other mono-morphemic words. However, verbs ending in one of these consonants can suffix the indirect stance markers -ə and -o. Furthermore, the sequences ots and it’s are not attested in mono-morphemic words.

The ejective affricate sibilants also have gaps in their distribution with respect to vowels. The sequences tʃ’e, ʃ’s, otʃ’, tʃ’e, ʃ’i, and tʃ’o are not attested in mono-morphemic words in my corpus.

The fricative voiced sibilants too display a few gaps. Sequences that are not attested so far in mono-morphemic words are iz, e3, ez, and zo. For z, which is rare, za is the only consonant-vowel sequence found in mono-morphemic words.

These gaps may be due to the relative infrequency of the sibilants in question and the distribution of the vowels.

Other unattested vowel-consonant sequences in mono-morphemic words are uw, ih, iʔ, eʔ, oʔ and the consonant-vowel sequence p’o.

2.4.3 Restrictions occurring with the syllabic nasal

In mono-morphemic words, only stops (84) and fricatives (85) occur as onset in a syllable with a nasal nucleus.

(84) šdr.t’iŋ ‘lungs’
dūp’k’h ‘leaf at the bottom part of an ensete’
mūṣ.k’iŋ ‘swim’
zér.k’r ‘time’
wōʃ.kn  ‘move’
yár.bn  ‘blood’
tür.gh  ‘hail’

(85) ʃūr.fn  ‘slurp’
kūy.sh  ‘drizzle’
būr.fn  ‘slip’
def.sh  ‘be rotten’
gōr.xn  ‘gullet’

The only consonants which can follow the syllabic nasal are voiceless sibilants. This is the masculine gender marker -s and its allomorphs following the definiteness marker -n.

(86)  sārk-ʃ-ʃ  [ sār.ken ]
be.hot.NV-DEF-M
‘hot’ (adjective)

k’ēetz-ʃ-ʃ  [ k’ēet.tn ]
be.cold-DEF-M
‘cold’ (adjective)

2.4.4  Sequences of consonants
Apart from a Cya onset, sequences of consonants occur in word-medial and word-final position. The word-final sequences occur for instance in Imperatives.

C1 cannot be filled by an affricate, h or w. The preferred sequences are r and n followed by a stop. However, many other combinations are possible. They are exemplified below. Note that in the verbs in (87), the sonority sequencing scale is violated, i.e. the segments do not have a decreasing sonority counting from the nucleus towards the edges of the syllable.

(87)  dyup'khn  ‘leaf at bottom of ensete’ stop - stop
áábdá  ‘floor smeared with dung’
k’áptso  ‘cut (scissors)’ stop - affricate
kóbtʃ  ‘make roof beams’
mùkmùri  ‘top leaf of ensete’ stop - nasal
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gubsl</td>
<td>‘tree sp.’</td>
<td>stop - fricative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zibs</td>
<td>‘look for, beg’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(88) | kântä  | ‘basket’                                     | nasal - stop       |
|      | sînt’ù | ‘nose’                                       |                    |
|      | kâmdl  | ‘cow with much offspring’                    |                    |
|      | šöngü  | ‘lyre’                                       |                    |
|      | wunk’  | ‘steal’                                      |                    |
|      | dînt’fâ | ‘black spotted maize’                        | nasal - affricate  |
|      | damt’f’ârâ | ‘ginger’                                   |                    |
|      | dâmfâ  | ‘sycamore tree’                              | nasal - fricative  |
|      | kumš   | ‘be pulverized’                              |                    |

(89) | bisbirl | ‘basilicum sp.’                              | fricative - stop   |
|      | gâjìù   | ‘pig’                                        |                    |
|      | âskü    | ‘meat’                                       |                    |
|      | ts’ézgâ  | ‘udder’                                      |                    |
|      | aft     | ‘be drunk’                                   |                    |
|      | dâfšù  | ‘evil’                                       | fricative - fricative |
|      | múz̄r̄ | ‘melt’                                       | fricative - tap    |

(90) | gërbi   | ‘armpit’                                     | tap - stop         |
|      | gûrdî   | ‘skirt’                                      |                    |
|      | ts’ertî | ‘rue (herb)’                                 |                    |
|      | ts’frûkî | ‘diarrhea’                                |                    |
|      | k’frk’ | ‘bend’                                       |                    |
|      | wûrts’ù | ‘tadpole’                                    | tap - affricate    |
|      | úrmâ    | ‘platform’                                   | tap - nasal        |
|      | kûrsî   | ‘insect sp.’                                 | tap - fricative    |
|      | gôrzû   | ‘lizard’                                     |                    |
|      | gîrfû   | ‘spider’                                     |                    |

(91) | fayt’  | ‘be weak’                                    | approximant - stop |
|      | güydtû | ‘problem’                                    |                    |
|      | âynâ   | ‘grief’                                      | approximant - nasal |
|      | jáyût’ | ‘squirrel’ (v)                               | approximant - fricative |

2.4.5  Ambiguous sequences
Affricates

Potentially, affricates could be analysed as a sequence of two phonemes, i.e. homorganic stop-fricative sequences. However, there are at least two reasons to analyse them as affricates, i.e. as single phonemes. First, syllabification by native speakers shows that the affricates are treated as single segments. Homorganic stop-fricative sequences are never divided over two syllables but always assigned to one syllable.

(92)  ú.tsí ‘fly’  ká.tsí ‘yam’
      wúr.ts’ú ‘tadpole’  fëb.ts’á ‘taro sp.’
      k’áb.ts’í ‘cockroach’  k’áá.ts’ù ‘ant sp.’

Secondly, the list of syllable patterns would have to be enlarged to accommodate stop-fricative sequences, but only because of homorganic ones. Homorganic stop-fricative sequences are found in all positions where other consonants are also found. While the present analysis of the sequences as affricates increases the phoneme inventory, the number of syllable patterns is kept constant. If the affricates would be analysed as sequences of separate phonemes not only the number of syllable types would have to be enlarged but also the number of phonemes, since the palatal and retroflex affricates do not have a corresponding stop. These phonemes would only occur in a homorganic sequence but nowhere else.

In short, the above arguments support an analysis of affricates as single segments.

Vowel-glide sequences

The following nouns and verb stems serve to show the vowel-glide sequences which could be analysed as vowel-consonant sequences, vowel-vowel sequences or diphthongs.

(93)  gôytã ‘shaft’
      gôyã ‘guereza monkey’
      bôytã ‘plant sp.’
      jooj ‘be spilled (of liquid)’
      boy ‘drive’
gáydú ‘problem’
máyzá ‘herb sp.’ (var. mèezí)
gáyzíři ‘long knife’
k’áy ‘rise’
èywū ‘locust’
zey ‘attract force’
gúy ‘farmland which has to be tilled’
gúyī ‘bow down, worship’
iw ‘live, reside’ (Gf.)
kew ‘shout’

I analyse y and w as consonants. This does not increase syllable patterns, since the presence of codas is established independently. Furthermore, the tonal melodies for the words given above suggest that y and w do not bear tone. If y and w would be viewed as the vowels i and u, we would have to increase the vowel inventory with diphthongs or the possible syllable structures with sequences of different vowels. Therefore it is more economical to adopt the view that y and w in this position are consonants.

Cyá sequences

Preceding the vowel a, both plain consonants and consonants followed by a palatal element appear in root-initial position. Phonetically, the palatal element is heard as a short off-gliding of the preceding consonant. Phonologically, I adopt an analysis of a sequence of two phonemes.

(94)  fyáánú [ f'áánú ] ‘frog’
nyákú [ n'ákú ] ‘young man’
syangà [ s'angà ] ‘dried vines’
tyáárà [ t'áárá ] ‘calabash for drinking’
dyaaas [ d'aaas ] ‘soak in water’
k’yááf [ k'áaf ] ‘kick’
tyaak’ [ t'áak’ ] ‘cut a yam root’

So far, t'y, ts'y, k'y, ty, ky, ?y, by, dy, gy, fy, sy, zy, my, ny are attested in my data. The following consonants do not have palatalised counterparts: the palatal and retroflex sibilants tʃ,
\( t^s, s, s', z, z' \) as well as \( w, h \) and \( p' \). The gap for \( p' \) is due to scarcity of word-initial occurrence. (Consonants not mentioned do not appear in initial position.) The following pairs serve to show the distinctivity of palatalised consonants as opposed to plain consonants.

(95)  
\[
\begin{array}{ll}
  b\ddot{a} & \text{‘crow’} \\
  g\ddot{a}d\ddot{a} & \text{‘to start’} \\
  \ddot{a}ng\ddot{a} & \text{‘much, very’} \\
  z\ddot{a}m\ddot{a} & \text{‘machete’} \\
  k\ddot{a}ts & \text{‘cook’} \\
  k\ddot{a}\acute{a}m & \text{‘be lit (of light)’} \\
  k\acute{a}ats & \text{‘hit with stone’}
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
  b\ddot{y}\ddot{a} & \text{‘calf’} \\
  g\ddot{y}\ddot{a}d\ddot{u} & \text{‘rope’} \\
  \ddot{y}\ddot{a}ng\ddot{a} & \text{‘ram’} \\
  z\ddot{y}\dd\dot{a}m\dd\dot{a} & \text{‘in-law’} \\
  k\ddot{y}\dddot{a}ts & \text{‘fell’} \\
  k\ddot{y}\acute{a}m & \text{‘meet’} \\
  k\acute{y}\ddot{a}as & \text{‘leave’}
\end{array}
\]

There are four ways to analyse the palatal element in this position.

1. \( V_1V_2 \) vowel sequence. This solution goes against the lack of \( V_1V_2 \) sequences within single morphemes. Underlying \( V_1V_2 \) sequences on morpheme boundaries are changed by phonological rules, so that phonetically \( V_1V_2 \) is not present (see section 3.1, \( PR 18 \) and \( PR 19 \)). If vowel sequences are allowed, it is strange to do so because of \( ia \) in this environment only. Note also that palatalised consonants appear before short and long vowels (\( a \) and \( aa \)); a CVV(C) syllable would be odd.

Aklilu (1996:28-31; 2003:61-62; 79-80) has analyzed the \textit{Cya} sequence as a vowel-vowel sequence on an underlying level, i.e. \textit{Cea} surfacing as [ Ca ]. He does so on the basis of the following pieces of evidence (examples taken from Aklilu 2003:61-62, in my own words):

- affixation and derivation - the underlying front vowel /e/ is revealed when a morpheme is added, as is the passive -t to the stem \textit{fyats} ‘shave’ in the example below

(96) [ \textit{fyats}'t ] \rightarrow [ \textit{fest}' ]

Commentary: although Aklilu shows how the basic stem \textit{fyats}' could be derived from underlying \textit{feats}' (palatalisation
preceding front vowel and deletion of the palatalizing segment) he does not go on to explain how to arrive from the underlying form at the pronunciation of the passive ~ \textit{fest}'\textsubscript{4}, leaving it to his readers to explain the disappearance of the other underlying vowel \textit{a} in this case.

- deletion of front vowels at morpheme boundary - the examples given are with the relative clause marker after the verb stems \textit{gé} ‘say’ and \textit{ki} ‘exist’.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{97} \ /\textit{ge-åb} \ / \ /\textit{ki-åb} \\
\textit{\textit{ge-åb}} \ / \ /\textit{ki-åb} \ / \ /\textit{gèb} \ / \ /\textit{kèb} \ / \ ‘who said’ ‘who lived’
\end{itemize}

- dialectal variation and cognates in Nayi

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{[gyanu]} ‘coffee’ (around Sheko)
\item \textit{[gyenu]} ‘coffee’ (around Tepi)
\item \textit{[kyanu]} ‘dog’ (Sheko)
\item \textit{[keenu]} ‘dog’ (Nayi)
\end{itemize}

These points lead Aklilu to adopt \textit{/Cea/} for all instances of \textit{[Cʰa]} in mono-morphemic words.

Variation in pronunciation of the same word occurs even with speakers from the same area and maybe even for the same speaker at different rates of speed or different occasions. This applies to all the examples below, although with long vowels variation is less acceptable (99b).

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{99} \ a. \textit{ṭyází} \ / \ /\textit{ṭézí} \ / \ ‘ability’
\item \textit{tyārbu} \ / \ /\textit{ṭērbu} \ / \ ‘drum’
\item \textit{byārī} \ / \ /\textit{bērī} \ / \ ‘tomorrow’
\item \textbf{b.} \textit{byāāsū} \ / \ /\textit{bēēsū} \ / \ ‘crocodile’
\item \textit{ṭṣṭyaāsts'ū} \ / \ /\textit{ṭṣṭēēsts'ū} \ / \ ‘sunshine’
\end{itemize}

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{100} \ a. \textit{fyāšt' = á-k} \ / \ /\textit{fṣṭāk} \ / \ ‘he was shaven’
\item \textit{shave.Pass = 3MS-REAL}
\end{itemize}
b. \( ?\text{yatj} = \text{á-k} \) \( [ \text{\?y\text{at}j\text{á-k} } ] \sim [ \text{\?\text{et}j\text{á-k} } ] \)
hide.PASS = 3MS-REAL

'It is hidden'

(101) a. \( \text{ge-\text{áb} } \) \( [ \text{g\text{áb} } ] \sim [ \text{\text{g\text{èb} } } ] \)
say-REL

'who said'

b. \( \text{k\text{l-\text{áb} } } \) \( [ \text{k\text{\text{l-\text{èb} } } ] \sim [ \text{k\text{èb} } ] \)
exist-REL

'who was'

Given the fact that variation in pronunciation occurs regularly, I fail to see this as sufficient evidence for positing an underlying vowel e. One can view Ce as contraction or simplification not only of Cea (Aklilu), but of Cia, C\text{a} or Cya as well. Moreover, I have not attested any contour tone in mono-morphemic words with Cya sequences, except for by\text{áá} ‘calf’. A contour tone could have been used as an argument for a previously lost tone bearing unit.

If one adopts the \( V_1V_2 \) analysis it would be impossible to decide whether \( V_1 \) is i or e in most instances, unless comparative evidence exists\(^9\). However, this impossibility does not disprove the analysis or make it less favourable than the other solutions.

2. \( \text{i} \) diphthong. An unambiguous diphthong of this kind has not been reported for any of the Omotic languages (Bender 2003; cf. Rapold 2006:102).

3. C\text{a}, i.e palatalised consonants before a. This analysis would increase the phoneme inventory with 14 consonants. It would be a quite systematic increase, except for the gap p7 (all \[ +

---

\(^9\) Bender (2003:238) remarks that \( \text{i} \) in Dizoid corresponds to i in Aroid, and does not occur in the TN–family. Thus he confines \( \text{i} \) to Dizoid. The correspondence to i in Aroid is true for 1 out of 4 mentioned correspondence series (no. 6, the other 3 do not correspond to i). Other series such as 35, 129 which contain \( \text{i} \) are not mentioned, although Dime has e\(=/\text{i} \) in 35. Benchon (TN) has \( \text{i} \) in 6 and 35 as well. Compare this to p. 295, where the analysis of \( \text{i} \) also causes problems in Mao: there are 4 \( \text{i} \)-series in which ‘perhaps some cases’ are ‘best seen as palatalisation of the preceding C’; the reconstructed items show \( \text{i} \), i and a\(a \) vowels. Moreover, transcriptions of \( \text{i} \) in the same word by different authors vary (eya, i, iya, ya, etc.). All this is not very helpful for setting up an underlying V1.
consonantal] consonants which are not [+ post-alveolar] or [+ retroflex] can be palatalised). However, this large number of extra consonants would be limited in distribution to initial syllables with a or aa as nucleus.

4. **Cc**a analysis. While in this analysis the number of phonemes would not increase, the number of syllable patterns would. The second consonant position can only be filled by y. A consonant-approximant onset is attested for other languages cross-linguistically, even if no other consonant-onset consonant onset is allowed. (This analysis is followed in a similar situation for Benchnon (Rapold 2006:102) and Mao (Ahland 2010).

All four solutions do not explain why the Cya sequence occurs only word-initially.

All of the possible solutions have advantages and disadvantages. In this thesis, solution 4 is followed. The consequence is the acceptance of five extra syllable types (CCV, CCVV, CCVC, CCVVC, CCVC).

*Pre-vocalic glottal stop*

The phonemic status of the glottal stop is established with examples at the end of section 2.1.4. Another example is given below.

(102) jēnī ‘stone’
    yeḥī ‘sieve’
    ečī ‘money’

Given that in some languages a glottal stop is inserted automatically before a word-initial vowel, the status of the glottal stop in this position in Sheko is worth some consideration.

(103) hārkū ‘taboo’ [farku]
      ārkū ‘log’ [arku]
* [arku] (does not exist)
Glottal stops are prone to deletion. Preceding syllabic nasals, glottal stop can be optionally deleted. Intervocalic glottal stops may also be deleted.

(104) ȵ-gər̥  [ŋəɾ̥]  ~  [ŋəɾ̥]  
1SG.POSS-head
‘myself’

Observe that the glottal stop is not predictable in initial position before y, as in (105) and (106)-(107) below.

(105) ʔyááñá ‘pot’
yááñá ‘planting yam, to plant yam’

Phonetically, the palatal element is heard as a short off-glide of the preceding glottal stop. The glottal stop behaves the same as other consonants which occur plain and with the palatal off-glide. This environment implies that the initial glottal stop is present underlyingly.

Moreover, some words with initial [ʔya] sequence vary in pronunciation with [ʔe]. Now we are back at the starting point of the discussion with a glottal stop preceding a word-initial vowel.

(106) ʔyáɾ ‘praise (elegy)’  [ʔyár]  ~  [ʔér]  
yáɾl ‘sesame’
ár ‘think’

(107) ʔyáźñ ‘ability’  [ʔyáźñ]  ~  [ʔéźñ]  
yáźñ ‘reproach’

In addition, glottal stops are present in reduplication.

(3)  
a. f-ʔɪɾk’ínsəb ‘old ones’  [fʔɪɾk’ínsəb]  
b. ʔɪɾk’-ʔɪɾk’a ɡé ‘be damp (getting wet)’  [ʔɪɾk’-ɪɾk’a]

For the reasons given above, I treat the word-initial glottal stop preceding a vowel as present underlyingly. Writing convention: initial glottal stop is not written, except in the sequence ʔya.
2.5 Word structure

2.5.1 Syllable structure

The following syllable types are attested in Sheko:

(108) CV CVV CN
     CVC CVVC CNC
     CVCC
     CCV CCVV
     CCVC CCVVC
     CCVCC

Only in suffixes, additional onset-less syllables are found (109). It is possible to view them as CN and CNC, if one posits a glottal stop as the first C, which is deleted in suffixation. A glottal stop in medial position often is deleted, according to phonological rule 5 in section 3.1. An initial stop before a syllabic nasal may be deleted as well. As for vowel-initial suffixes, they exist, but the language avoids having sequences of different vowels on a phonetic level (see section 3.1 PR 18, 19) and one could again posit a glottal stop which is deleted in suffixation.

(109) N
     NC

Below, all possible syllable types are illustrated, starting with those in the upper row of (108), then going down row by row.

open syllables

(110) a. CV só [ só ]
      ‘up there’

b. CN día <1> t-ň [ ?ň.ňy.tň ] ~ [ nňy.tň ]
     1PL.POSS-COW <F> -DEF
     ‘our cow’

  c. CVV gēēśũ [ gēē.śũ ]
      ‘lower back’
closed syllables
C following N is always a sibilant.

(111) a. CVC \( \text{éd} \) [ ?éd ] 'mouth'
b. CNC \( \text{kár} - \text{bh} - \text{s} \) [ kár. bihs ] be.strong-DEF-M 'strong' (adjective)
c. CVVC \( \text{faad} \) [ faad ] 'body'

closed syllables with a complex coda
See section 2.4.4 on the restrictions of co-occurrence of the consonants in the coda.

(112) a. CVCC \( \text{besk} \) [ besk ] divide 'divide!

syllables with a complex onset
Complex onsets always consist of Cy followed by a or aa in the nucleus. This ambiguous sequence is discussed in section 2.4.5.

(113) a. CCV \( \text{kyáhà} \) [ kyá.hà ] 'stake'
b. CCVV \( \text{gyáasú} \) [ gyáa.sú ] 'shield'
c. CCVC \( \text{myángú} \) [ myáng.gú ] 'forefather spirit'
d. CCVVC \( \text{ts'yááts'} \) [ ts'yááts' ] tie 'tie! / imprison!'e. CCVCC \( \text{ʔyard} \) [ ?yard ] enter 'Enter!'
Onset-less syllables with a nasal as nucleus

Onset-less syllables occur with suffixes starting in a syllabic nasal. The syllable may remain onsetless if the nasal does not lose its syllabic ity.

(114) a. N  an-ńtə [ʔə.ʔn.ʈə] ~ [ʔən.ʈə]  
  put-COND  
  ‘if (he) put’  

b. NC bō-ń-s [bō.ń.s] ~ [bōns]  
  belly-DEF-M  
  ‘the belly’

As said elsewhere, initial ń-syllables may optionally be pronounced without glottal stop.

(115) ń-zēgū [ʔń.zē.gū] ~ [ń.zē.gū]  
  1SG.POSS-OX  
  ‘my ox’

The syllable types are not equally distributed: in lexical items, the nucleus of the initial syllable is always a vowel, never a nasal. The vowel can be long or short. (However, if a word starts with an inflecting morpheme, e.g. subject clitic, the nucleus may be a syllabic nasal.) The nucleus of the second syllable may be a short vowel or a syllabic nasal. If the nucleus of the second syllable is a nasal, no coda will follow. A complex onset occurs only in the initial syllable of a lexical item.

2.5.2 Syllable patterns of nouns and verbs

A noun shows one of the following canonical syllable patterns. The preferred CV-structures for nouns are CV.CV, CVV.CV and CVC.CV. Section 4.7 treats tone in combination with CV-structure. It discusses some aberrant CV-shapes as well.

(116) CV  jř  ‘faeces (of dog etc.)’
  CVC  şōw  ‘cold’
  CVVC  yāáb  ‘man, person’
  CCVC  t’yám  ‘breast’
  CCVVC  kyāāz  ‘lord’
  CCVCC  ḷyārb  ‘tongue’
(117) CV.CV déff ‘threshold’
    CVV.CV zóòff ‘plant sp.’
    CVC.CV yéngí ‘deadwood, firewood’
    CVVC.CV áábdà ‘floor smeared with dung’
    CCV.CV ñyámi ‘paternal aunt’
    CCVV.CV myáák’ú ‘egg’
    CCVC.CV myáŋgú ‘forefather spirit’

(118) CV.CV.CV sèkúři ‘wattle, sixth finger/toe’
    CVC.CV.CV mùkmürì ‘middle ensete leaf’
    CVC.CVC.CV gingíngâ ‘milipede’

(119) CV.CVC.CVC.CV šàkârbârtì ‘large edible mushroom’

The ordinary shape of Sheko verb roots is monosyllabic. A few verbs consist of only CV(V). CVC and CVVC are the most common. Disyllabic verb roots are relatively few in number, and trisyllabic verb roots have not been attested. One verb varies in shape between C and CVC; this is the verb m-/ úm ‘to eat’.

(120) CV
gé ‘say’
ki ‘exist, live’

(121) CVV
téé ‘go’ (Non-Factual stem)

(122) CVC
k’or ‘beg’
    séh ‘erase’
    gób ‘jump’
    k’uts’ ‘cut’
    CCVC
k’yár ‘beat’
    gya? ‘chew’

(123) CVVC
tíí ‘look’
    máak ‘tell’
    bûûts ‘mow’
    k’iś ‘milk’
    CCVVC
ts’yaânts’ ‘tie’
    fyaan ‘peel’
(124) CVCC CCVCC
    k’àpt’s  ‘cut’      ?yárd  ‘enter’
gásk  ‘insult’
    ints  ‘be heavy’

Underived disyllabic verb roots all end in -ar or -ar, which might be a frozen suffix. A possible derivational suffix .ar is also reported for Benchnon (Rapold 2006:197ff). Note that all of these verbs have H tone.

(125) CVCVC
    gédár  ‘exchange’
    k’ók’ár  ‘be incomplete (?)’
    ñíbár  ‘stoke over the head’
    túk’ár  ‘gush, spring forth’
    ák’ár  ‘seem, resemble’
    ñúk’ór  ‘crow (of cock)’

(126) CVCCVC CCVCCVC
    bángár  ‘return’      kyángár  ‘curse’
    byángár  ‘be crooked’

Rapold reports nouns ending in .ar for Benchnon. In Sheko, a couple of nouns end in .arà. These are listed in (127). The words in (128) might also be related.

(127) words in .arà
    bákárà  ‘griddle’
    dùfàrà  ‘elephantiasis’
    göp’árà  ‘bark’
    íbárà  ‘truth’ (cf. Benchnon ibär ‘truth’)
    k’óp’árà  ‘open place in stone or wood’
    säm bǜrà  ‘tree sp’
    dámf’árà  ‘ginger’
    gofàrà  ‘toad’

(128) tumgèrà  ‘tree sp.’
    ùndérkh  ‘day before yesterday’ (.kù < dative?)
    zùngàrà  ‘turn halfway back’ (with gé ‘say’)
Verbs borrowed from Amharic are made to fit one of the above mentioned patterns. Most are of the pattern CVCVC, since most Amharic verbs consist of three radicals (consonants), but CVC does occur as well.

(129) támár ‘learn’ < támăr ‘learn’
    nábáb ‘read’ < nábbáb ‘read’
    dáwár ‘phone’ < däwwál ‘ring a bell, phone’
    ts’af ‘write’ < ts'áf ‘write’

2.5.3 Length of words
While verb roots commonly consist of one syllable, as shown in the preceding section, verb forms composed of multiple morphemes can be much longer.

(130) ḥḥ = klë-<sù-s-h-klh-ya
        3PL = curse-CAUS-CAUS-MIDD-exist-KNOWN-STD
        ‘they are cursing each other (as you should know)’

The majority of nouns has two syllables, some have one and a few have three syllables. Nouns of four or more syllables are mostly compounds. Compounds are discussed in section 5.5.3. The following are examples of multisyllabic nouns which are not considered compounds:

(131) sákârbârti ‘large edible mushroom’
    gârmâtsi ‘(name of spirit)’ (but see 4.7, (40) on tsi)

Numbers, quantifiers and adverbs have mostly two, sometimes one syllable, like nouns. Pronouns have one or two syllables as well. Ideophones are generally two or more syllables, but display a lot of reduplication. The structure of ideophones is dealt with in section 8.1. Derivational and inflection morphemes are short. Most consist of a single consonant or one syllable; the maximum is two syllables (-nà ‘COND’, fshl- ‘3PL.Poss’)

2.5.4 Root structure condition
In Sheko, sibilant harmony occurs not only across morpheme boundaries but also root-externally. The following three
examples shows that root-externally, the sibilants have the
same place of articulation, even if other consonants occur in
between the sibilants. Example (132) illustrates alveolar
sibilants, example (133) post-alveolar sibilants, and example
(134) retroflex sibilants.

(132) sískä ‘scorpion, crab’
    sítú ‘hair’
    ts'ëts'ì ‘grass sp.’
    ézk’úsì ‘plant sp.’
    sááts’ ‘dawn, become light’
    síís ‘listen’
    ts‘uts’ ‘itch’
    ts‘yááts’ ‘tie’
    ts‘yääsí ‘break off with fingertips’

(133) fáyfá ‘squirrel’
    féntjú ‘sin’
    jebt’jà ‘taro sp.’
    fáj ‘wet, make sharp’
    játj ‘herd’
    žááʒ ‘be good’

(134) gúz ‘plant sp.’
    góóz ‘snake’
    gósí ‘plant sp.’
    gúskú ‘weed’
    ts‘úútjú ‘louse’
    gós ‘parch, roast’
    gósí ‘be light, easy’

This root structure condition occurs in other Omotic languages
as well, e.g. Benchnon (Rapold 2006:115), Bambasi Mao
(Ahland 2010:11), Maale (Azeb 2001a:19), and other languages.
The Sheko data once again support Hayward’s claim that
sibilant harmony as a root structure condition is
reconstructable for proto-Omotic (Hayward 1988:287). Sibilant
harmony applies across morpheme boundaries in Sheko, see
section 2.6.2, PR 13.
3 Phonological and morphophonological processes

This chapter aims at giving an overview of the (morpho)phonological processes in Sheko, captured in phonological rules (PR) and morphophonological rules (MP). Furthermore, the chapter discusses reduplication processes.

3.1 Phonological rules

The phonological rules in the following subsections are numbered PR 1 - PR 21. The numbering does not imply rule ordering. The rules are roughly organised from rules that apply to single segments to rules that apply to groups of segments.

PR 1. Free variation of 3 allophones
PR 2. Lenition of b
PR 3. Strengthening of f
PR 4. Realisation of h
PR 5. Intervocalic glottal stop deletion
PR 6. Optional deletion of glottal stop preceding a syllabic nasal
PR 7. Desyllabification of syllabic nasal
PR 8. Resyllabification of uy
PR 9. Assimilation of alveolar nasals
PR 10. Nasal-nasal merging
PR 11. Sibilant merging
PR 12. Realisation of retroflexes
PR 13. Sibilant harmony
PR 14. Devoicing of fricatives preceding voiceless stops
PR 15. Simplification of affricates preceding a syllabic nasal
PR 16. Palatalisation preceding e
PR 17. Labialisation preceding back vowels
PR 18. Reduction of vowel to glide and contraction
PR 19. Glide insertion between vowels
PR 20. Internasal stop reduction
PR 21. Internasal stop deletion in rapid speech
PR 1. Free variation of 3 allophones
For 3, there are free variants [ j ] and [ d3 ]. Impressionistically, 3 is more prominent in the Sheko dialect, whereas d3 and j are more prominent in the Guraferda dialect.

(1) bâzâ [ bâzâ ] ~ [ bâdzâ ] ~ [ bâjâ ] ‘work’

The variation can occur word-initially as well as word-medial and -final, but if a word contains two / 3 / fricatives, the second allophone cannot be more closed than the first.

(2) 3âzâ [ 3âzâ ] ~ [ dzâzâ ] ~ * [ 3âdzâ ] ‘peace’

PR 2. Lenition of b
The labial voiced plosive / b / is optionally weakened to [ β ] following a vowel. For some people, the resulting fricative is subject to PR 14, Devoicing of fricatives.

(3) yââb [ yââb ] ~ [ yââβ ] ‘man’
kûbâyâ [ kûbâyâ ] ~ [ kûbâyâ ] ‘cup’
dôôbû [ dôôbû ] ~ [ dôôbû ] ‘nettle plant’
ábsî [ ?ábsî ] ~ [ ?ábsî ] ‘up’
    ~ [ ?ábsî ]

PR 3. Strengthening of f
The labial voiceless fricative / f / has the allophones [ ɸ ] and [ p ]. [ ɸ ] can occur in all environments. The allophone [ p ] occurs adjacent to a labial stop or nasal, i.e. it is strengthened by the stop feature. Some language consultants did not accept [ f ] adjacent to a labial stop or nasal.

(4) jâfâ [ jâfâ ] ~ [ jâfâ ] ‘fingernail’
gîrfû [ gîrfû ] ~ [ gîrfû ] ‘spider’
dâmfâ [ dâmfâ ] ~ [ dâmfâ ] ‘tree sp.’
jûrfm [ jûrfm ] ~ [ jûrfm ] ‘gulp down’

PR 3 can also be described as the reverse, i.e. lenition of p, which is probably the historic reality. However, synchronically, my consultants preferred to write the grapheme <f> for all
occasions. Therefore I have chosen /f/ as the basic form, by lack of a phonological reason to choose one over the other. Word-initial f has become [h] in Diizi.

PR 4. Realisation of h
/h/ in word-initial position is most often pronounced with voicing, and little friction, as in e.g. [fiárá] 'knife'. Therefore, it is hardly audible. Before back vowels, it may be heard as a soft w (5b). Before front vowels, it seems to have merged with y. The only trace left may be a variation y ~ ? before front vowels in a few items (5c). Whereas language consultants readily distinguish between /7a/ and /ha/, it is hard for them to differentiate /wo/ and /ho/, and they do not make a distinction between /yi/ and /hi/.

(5) a. hāātšā [fiáats’ā] ‘shoot at treetrunk’
    haay   [ fiay ]   ‘water’
    hártj [ fiártj ]   ‘rip, tear’
    hark   [ fiark ]   ‘respect (a taboo)’
 b. hōmfā   [ "õmōšā ]   ‘canoe’
    húmtfā   [ "úmētfā ]   ‘rib of ensete leaf’
    hūnū   [ "ūnū ]   ‘flower sp.’
 c. (h)ējhtā [ yējhtā ] ~ [ ?ējhtā ] ‘for, about’

/h/ in medial or final position is a voiceless fricative (6). See also MP 8 where h is grouped with the voiceless fricatives.

(6) yēhf    [ yēhf ]   ‘woven sieve’
       kyāhā [ k’yāhā ]   ‘stake (for stretching hide)’
       byāh   [ byāh ]   ‘open’

Schematically:

(7) h       > “/ #_ o, u
          > 7/ #_ i, e
          > fi/ #_ a
          = h/ elsewhere
The weakening of h in initial position may be linked to the free variation h/ w/ y/ in initial position in some Omotic languages. In these languages, the variation is limited to a certain group of lexical items, and does not occur across the board. Variation is reported for e.g. h~w in Wolaitta (Lamberti 1997:29f); h~y before front vowels and h~w before back vowel o in Maale (Azeb 2001a:15f); as well as h~? before a and h~y before i in Dime (Mulugeta 2008:24); cf. also initial h in Benchnon (Rapold 2006:79).

**PR 5. Intervocalic glottal stop deletion**
A glottal stop between two vocoids is deleted in fluent speech. The result of the glottal stop deletion rule may be subject to other rules. Example (8) is subject to the rules of glide formation and vowel assimilation (**PR 18**).

(8)  bæʔu-tə  [ bæwta ] ~ [ bòta ]
carry.on.back-ss
'carried'

(9)  n=təsù-tə  [ ?nàtsùtə ]
1SG=give-ss
'I gave'

**PR 6. Optional deletion of glottal stop preceding a syllabic nasal**
A glottal stop preceding a syllabic nasal is optionally deleted.

(10)  n=tág-ə  [ ?ntága ] ~ [ ntága ]
1PL=go-STI
'Let's go'

**PR 7. Desyllabification of syllabic nasal**
A syllabic nasal may lose its syllabicity if it can fill an onset or coda position. Since it looses the ability to carry tone, the syllable to which it is reassigned may obtain a contour tone. The tendency to desyllabify is naturally stronger in rapid speech.
(11) _PRIMARY<1> t-h [ʔôyðə] ~ [nôyðə]
      1PL.POSS-COW <F>-DEF  ‘our cow’

(for the deletion of the glottal stop, see PR 5, 6 above)

(12)  há = kî-ŋtâ [hâkîŋtə] ~ [hâkîntə]
      3MS=exist-COND  ‘if he is’

PR 8. Resyllabification of uy
The sequence uy may be resyllabified to ‘i.

(13)  gûm-št-ø [gùmøtø] ~ [gømøtø]
      worship-PL.ADDR-STI
      ‘worship (pl)’!

PR 9. Assimilation of alveolar nasals
An alveolar nasal assimilates in place to the adjacent consonant. This applies to the syllabic as well as to the non-syllabic alveolar nasal. Examples (14) and (15) show the assimilation of the (non-syllabic) alveolar nasal consonant to the adjacent consonant.

(14)  yêntš'â [yêntš'â]  ‘continence’
      fûntʃû [fûntʃû]  ‘chaff’
      bonk' [bønk']  ‘burn, be on fire’
      bêngâr [bêngâr]  ‘be crooked’

(15)  áll-nââ ha-bàb-mââ  emâ  tô
      3MS-or  2SG.POSS-father-or  so.and.so  COP.Q
      ‘Is it he or your father or so-and-so?’

A bilabial nasal consonant does not assimilate, thus non-homorganic sequences do occur.

(16)  kûmtû [kʷômtû]  ‘chief’
      k'âmtʃ'û [kâmtʃ'û]  ‘sand’ (also hâmjû)
kūṃṣūṣ [ kūṃṣūṣ ] ‘pulverize by hand’
gómkēs [ gómkēs ] ‘name of a clan’

Example (17)-(19) show assimilation of the syllabic nasal  ŋ to the following consonant. The syllabic nasal may be a clitic, affix or part of the root.

(17) a. m = bāās- k [ ṭābaāsk ]
1SG-want-REAL
‘I wanted’
b. n = yīlį- k [ ṭīyīlįk ]
1SG = pull.out-REAL
‘I pulled out’
c. n = tš'ādā- k [ ṭš'ādāk ]
1SG = flight-MIDD-REAL
‘I fought’
d. n = gādū- k [ ṭgādūk ]
1SG-start-REAL
‘I started’

(18) a. yīl = mūz- ŋ [ yımūzŋ ]
3FS = shred-DS
‘she shredded’ (e.g. cabbage)
b. yīl = gōdīf-htā [ yígōdīfhtā ]
3FS = brood-COND
‘if she broods’
c. aś- ŋ-s [ ṭ̩ašŋ ]
leg-DEF-M
‘the leg’

(19) k'ōp'm [ k'ōp'm ] ‘eyelash’
yārbī [ yārbī ] ‘blood’
ūśŋ [ ṭūśŋ ] ‘horns’
ʃʃʃkə [ ṭʃʃkə ] ‘claw’

Progressive assimilation is stronger, as speakers accept variation preceding but not following a noun, as in (20a,b) below. In case of conflict, usually progressive assimilation is strongest as well (20c).
(20) a.  m-bààb  [ m̥bàːb ] ~ [ m̥bàːb ]
    1SG.POSS-father
    'my father'

  b.  báb-m  [ báb̥m̥ ] * [ báb̥n̥ ]
    father.VOC-1SG.POSS
    'my father' (term of address)

  c.  há = !jik-àtà  [ háʃiʃk̂iːt̂à ]
    3MS = be.sweet-COND
    'if it is sweet'

The rule of assimilation is ordered before internasal stop reduction and merging of nasals.

**PR 10. Nasal-nasal merging**
Nasal-nasal sequences merge into one nasal element. It is also possible to say that the first nasal is deleted, since under **PR 21**, the nasal element preceding the stop is deleted.

(21)  an-à  [ òan̥ ]
    put-DS
    'he put'

**PR 11. Sibilant merging**
Sibilant-sibilant sequences merge into one sibilant.

(22)  k’ìs-s + tone change > k’ìs  [ k’ìː ]
    drink-CAUS
    'cause to drink'

The causative suffix -s merges with a preceding sibilant element, i.e. a sibilant fricative or last part of an affricate. (Other changes also take place in derivation, see chapter 12 for a detailed description.)

(23)  k’ìs  'drink'
    ts’ùts’  'be full'

  k’ìs  'cause to drink'
    ts’òts  'fill'
PR 12. Realisation of retroflexes
Retroflexes can have an accompanying lip-rounding and color adjacent vowels, since the tongue is pulled backwards.

(24) maša [mæʃ’a] ‘spirit’
zāākā [zwãːkã] ‘noon’
tuutš’u [tuutʃ’ʊ] ‘knot’

PR 13. Sibilant harmony
Sibilants in suffixes assimilate to the place of preceding sibilants. Sibilants include affricates, see table 2 below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>alveolar</th>
<th>post-alveolar</th>
<th>retroflex</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ejective affricates</td>
<td>ts’</td>
<td>tʃ’</td>
<td>tʃ’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiceless affricates</td>
<td>ts</td>
<td>tʃ</td>
<td>tʃ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiceless fricatives</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiced fricatives</td>
<td>z</td>
<td>ʒ</td>
<td>ʒ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2. Sibilants.

In Sheko, sibilant harmony is a root structure condition (root-internal harmony, see section 2.5.4) and also applies across morpheme boundaries.

Suffixes containing an -s obligatorily assimilate in place if the syllable to which the suffixal -s belongs contains a sibilant. Examples are given with the causative suffix (25) and the plural suffix (26) and the masculine suffix (27). Assimilation is in place only, not in voicing, as can be seen from such examples as bāq-ʊʃ ‘cause to work’ and ʃʊdu-ʊ-ʃ ‘snakes’.

(25) yīts’ ‘sprinkle’  yīts’-ʊs ‘cause to sprinkle’
baş ‘work’       baş-ʊʃ ‘cause to work’
ʃōoy ‘spill a liquid’  ʃōoy-ʃ ‘cause to spill’
aş ‘plant’       aş-ʊş ‘cause to plant’
zār ‘spill grain’  zār-ʃ ‘cause to spill’
(26) sāzā ‘beetle sp.’ sāzā-s ‘beetles’
gātfi ‘stick’ gātfi-f ‘sticks’
tfūt̪fū ‘louse’ tfūt̪fū-s ‘louses’
gōz ‘snake’ gōz-s ‘snakes’
(27) ūfā ‘flower’ ūfā-f ‘the flower’
butšā ‘nest’ butšā-s ‘the nest’

If the preceding sibilant is not in the same syllable, the suffix does not assimilate in careful speech, as evidenced by the examples below.

(28) jīk’ ‘be short’ jīk’-ūs ‘make short’
zā’ak ‘peel maize’ zā’ak-ūs ‘cause to peel’
(29) jāfā ‘fingernail’ jāfā-s ‘fingernails’
tfārū ‘medicine’ tfārū-s ‘medicines’
ẓākā ‘anklet sp.’ ẓākā-s ‘anklets’

In fast speech, sibilant harmony may apply even when the sibilants are separated by more elements and do not belong to the same syllable.

(30) sāf ‘fan’
  sāf-m-s [sāfrūs] ~ [sāfrūs]
  fan-DEF-M
  ‘the fan’

Sibilant harmony does not apply between the root and the third person plural subject clitic mif = ~ = jī (31). There is also no harmony between the root and the possessive prefixes in (32), except in fast careless speech when jī is reduced to jī-

(31) a. gāż = jī-k-o
  prune = 3PL-REAL-STI
  ‘they pruned’

b. kās = jī-k-o
  play = 3PL-REAL-STI
  ‘they played’
c. /if = zêr-k·ə  
 3pl = advise-REAL-STI  
‘they advised’

d. /if = zaak‘u-k·ə  
 3pl = husk-REAL-STI  
‘they peeled (e.g. maize)’

(32) /if-gɔngu  ‘their lyre’
/if-zàràrà  ‘their clan’

While in the above cases none of the affixes and clitics can impose harmony, the Optative complicates the picture: the Optative marker -s changes to -f after the 3pl clitic. The 3pl form is as a rule contracted to -fə after the verb stem. The -f in the 3fs form may be a case of paradigmatic leveling; it is not phonologically conditioned. Except for third person plural affixes and clitics, there are no other morphemes with a non-alveolar sibilant.

(33) 3ms  kááts=á-s-ə ‘may he ripen’
 3fs  kááts=f-s-ə ‘may she ripen’
 3pl  kááts=fíl-f-ə ‘may they ripen’ ~ kááts=fíl-ə

In any case, a sibilant cannot bring about harmony on preceding sibilants, and affixed sibilants do not impose harmony on the root. From these examples it is evident that sibilant harmony at root level and word level are different. In a root, all sibilants agree in place, whereas on word level the harmony is not necessarily complete.

**PR 14. Devoicing of fricatives preceding voiceless stops**

Voiced fricatives (i.e. voiced sibilants and voiced stops which underwent lenition) devoice when they precede a voiceless plosive in fluent speech (34). They may also devoice before a pause (35).

(34)  áz-ka  [ʔáskā]  3ms-with  ‘with him’
 yîz-tà  [yístà]  dist.m-loc  ‘at this’
 ŋ-fə  [ʔíl(di)kə]  3fs-dat  ‘her’
 n=booz-k  [mbōdsk]  1sg = stroll-REAL  ‘I strolled’
(35)  yîz  [ yîs ]  ‘this’
yááb  [ yááβ ]  < [ yááβ ]  ‘man’

Note that ejectives are not specified for voice and normally do not trigger devoicing of a sibilant.

(36)  ezk’usi  [ ?ezk’usi ]  ‘plant sp.’
yiz-k’a  [ yizk’a ]  DIST.M-IN  ‘in this’

PR 15. Simplification of affricates preceding a syllabic nasal
Affricates lose their fricative part preceding a syllabic nasal. (Affricates do not occur as the first member of a consonant cluster, therefore affricates do not occur preceding a non-syllabic nasal.)

This rule is illustrated in example (37) below where the definiteness.gender marking -h-s DEF-M is suffixed to nouns. Besides the deletion of the terminal vowel of the nouns, the affricates become simple stops. Likewise, if the last consonant of a verb stem is an affricate, it looses its fricative part when a suffix with a syllabic nasal is added (38).

(37)  bîtsù  ‘fern’
     bîtsîs  [ bîtsîs ]  ‘the fern’
ts’êtsî  ‘grass sp.’
     ts’êtsîs  [ ts’êtsîs ]  ‘the grass’
gâtîfî  ‘stick’
     gâtîfs  [ gâtîfs ]  ‘the stick’

(38)  há = wûnts’-h  [ hîwûnts’h ]
     3MS = rinse-ds
     ‘he rinsed (his mouth)’

PR 16. Palatalisation preceding e
Consonants are optionally palatalised preceding the vowel e in the first syllable of a stem.

(39)  géek’û  [ géék’û ]  ~ [ ĝ’ék’û ]  ‘goat’
ts’êzga  [ ts’êzgà ]  ~ [ ts’yêzgà ]  ‘udder’
meen  [ meen ]  ~ [ m’yeen ]  ‘buffalo’
kéês  [ kéês ]  ~ [ k’yéês ]  ‘go out’
(40)  \[ \text{há=tee-tə} \quad [ \text{fiáteetə} ] \sim [ \text{fiáteetə} ] \]

3MS=go.NV-SS

‘he went and...’

It is my impression that there is no palatalisation before the vowel \( \text{i} \). Therefore, one could argue that the above examples are a sign of underlying \( \text{ie} \) sequences (cf. the section on \( \text{Cya} \) sequences). The optional nature of the palatalisation, the parallel with labialisation and the occurrence before short and long vowels make that less likely.

**PR 17. Labialisation preceding back vowels**
Consonants are also optionally labialised preceding the back vowels \( \text{o} \) and \( \text{u} \). The tendency is strongest with velar and bilabial pulmonic plosives.

(41)  \[ \text{kóóká} \quad [ \text{kóóká} ] \sim [ \text{k*aóká} ] \quad \text{‘low point of valley’} \]

\[ \text{góórā} \quad [ \text{góórā} ] \sim [ \text{g*aórā} ] \quad \text{‘Amhara’} \]

\[ \text{bókú} \quad [ \text{bókú} ] \sim [ \text{b*aókú} ] \quad \text{‘time’} \]

(42)  \[ \text{ha=kùfū} \quad [ \text{fiakùfū} ] \sim [ \text{fiak*wùfū} ] \]

2SG=be.sick-[q]

‘Are you sick?’

**PR 18. Reduction of vowel to glide and contraction**
Sheko does not allow a sequence of two unlike vowels. Normally, underlying \( V_{1}V_{2} \) sequences will be reduced to glide-vowel or vowel-glide sequences. The remaining vowel may be lengthened to compensate for the loss of a tone bearing unit.

(43)  \[ \text{sá-ù-tə} \quad [ \text{sàwta} ] \]

arrive.NV-EV-SS

‘arriving...

In the Tepi and Guraferda variants, the above verb form is rendered \( \text{sák-ù-tə} \). However, the negative is identical in all variants and displays the stem \( \text{sa} \), as shown below.
Furthermore, a sequence of two vowels or of vowel and glide may be contracted. An alternative pronunciation for (43) is given in (45). ya and ay sequences may be contracted to e or e (46)-(47).

(45) sə-ə-te [ sədə ]
arriving.NV-EV-SS
‘arriving’

(46) ʔyard-a [ ʔarə ] ~ [ erə ]
enter-STI
‘Enter!’

(47) ná-ʔa<1> g-ʔ [ náʔəyɡə ] ~ [ nəɡə ]
1PL.POSS-grandmother <F> -DEF
‘our grandmother’

In case of prohibitives for plural addressee, the glide may be assimilated in vowel quality in rapid speech.

(48) kääs-ărə k’é-it [ kääsərə k’éiɾt ] ~ [ kääsərə k’ééɾt ]
play-NEG remain-PL.ADOR
‘Don’t play (pl)’!

Note that subject clitics do not assimilate.

(49) kí=a-k [ kyãk ] ~ [ k’aák ] but ^[ k’ék ]
exist = 3MS-REAL
‘he exists’

PR 19. Glide insertion between vowels
An alternative solution for avoiding V₁V₂-sequences is to insert a glide between the two vowels. This is mostly done in slow, careful speech.
(50)  náánú-onka     [ náánúwoŋka ]
      elder.brother-ASS
      'elder brothers'

(51)  kì = á-k     [ kìyák ] ~ [ kìàák ]
      exist = 3MS-REAL
      'he exists'

**PR 20. Internasal stop reduction**
In normal fluent or careful speech, a voiceless stop between two nasals is still audible as a voiceless nasal. This is because the feature [-voice] is retained. Since the nasal cavity is not closed, the air goes through it and the stop becomes a voiceless nasal.

This rule is ordered after the nasal assimilation rule (**PR 9**). The preceding nasal may or may not be deleted. (A voiced stop is not detectable between two nasals: since it would become a voiced nasal it would not be distinguishable from the neighboring assimilated nasals.)

(52)  ūn-t-ŋ     [ ūn른 ] ~ [ ū른 ]
      ignite-PASS-DS
      'was ignited'

há = yan’k-ŋ     [ fiáyanŋ ] ~ [ fiáyanŋ ]
      3MS = be.angry-DS
      'he was angry'

(53)  ŋb-ḅàb-on-kŋ     [ ŋbáàbọŋkŋ ] ~ [ ŋbáàbọŋkŋ ]
      1PL.POSS-father-ASS-DAT
      'to our fathers'

**PR 21. Internasal stop deletion in rapid speech**
In rapid speech, an internasal stop is deleted completely. This rule occurs for example in (passive) verbs preceding the different subject marker -ŋ (54) or the conditional marker -nta (55), and in nouns preceding the definiteness-gender marker
ǹ-s ‘DEF-M’, see section 5.2.1. This rule is ordered after PR 9, assimilation of alveolar nasals. The output of this rule may be subject to further rules, such as PR 10, merging of nasal-nasal sequences.

(54) \( \text{hà = kānt-ǹ} \) \[ \text{fiākān} \]
3MS = beg.milk-ns
‘he begged milk’

\( \text{há = fāng-ǹ} \) \[ \text{fiāfāŋ} \]
3MS = spread.legs-ns
‘he spread his legs’

(55) \( \text{àn-t-htà} \) \[ \text{ʔàhtà} \] \~ \[ \text{ʔàntà} \]
put-PASS-COND
‘if it was put’

3.2 Morpho-phonological rules

The morpho-phonological rules are numbered MP 1 - MP 12. They are presented here together to give an overview of the morpho-phonology of Sheko. The first five rules concern nominal morphology, whereas the other rules apply to the verbal domain. MP 1 - MP 4 involve definiteness-gender marking and MP 6 - MP 10 involve causative and passive formation.

MP 1. Deletion of the terminal vowel preceding the definiteness marker
MP 2. Deletion of internasal sibilants preceding the definiteness marker
MP 3. Realisation of the definiteness marker following r in feminine nouns
MP 4. ns-C simplification in rapid speech
MP 5. Realisation of the accusative marker

MP 6. Shortening of long vowels in derivation
MP 7. Deglottalisation of ejective preceding the causative
MP 8. Deglottalisation of the passive-middle -t following fricatives
MP 9. Metathesis and cluster simplification with velar stops in derivation
MP 10. Metathesis and cluster simplification with affricates in derivation
MP 11. Simplification of 3pl in Optative
MP 12. Contraction in compound negative tenses

3.2.1 Rules pertaining to definiteness marking

MP 1. Deletion of the terminal vowel preceding the definite marker

The terminal vowel of a noun is deleted preceding the definite-gender marking. (Its tone is then linked to the definiteness marker -h, see section 4.5 for more information.)

(56) a. zękū ‘ox’
zęk-h-s [ zękjiː ]
ox-DEF-M
‘the ox’
b. kōsă ‘basket sp.’
k‘o<1>s-h [ k‘oys ]
basket<1>-DEF
‘the little basket’ (feminine gender has diminutive connotation)

With other suffixes, the terminal vowel may or may not be deleted.

(57) a. ṇ-naanu-onka [ ṇnaanuwoŋka ]
1SG.POSS-elder.brother-ASS
‘my elder brothers’
b. ṇ-naan-onka [ ṇnaanoŋka ]
1SG.POSS-elder.brother-ASS
‘my elder-elder’

(58) ṇ-naanu-ra [ ṇnaanura ]
1SG.POSS-elder.brother-ACC
‘my elder brother (acc)’
MP 2. Deletion of internasal sibilants preceding the definite marker
When the definiteness-gender marking is suffixed to a noun with a nasal-sibilant cluster, the sibilant is deleted. The remaining adjacent nasals merge (PR 10). (For the tonal side, see MT 2.)

(59)  a. \( \text{intfù} \) ‘wood’
\( \text{intfù}-\text{n-} \) [ ?iŋ]\n\text{name-DEF-M}
‘the wood’

b. \( \text{fénji} \) ‘fifty cents coin’
\( \text{fénji}-\text{n-} \) [ ?eŋ]\n\text{50c-DEF-M}
‘the fifty cents coin’

c. \( \text{hámjù} \) ‘sand’
\( \text{hámjù}-\text{n-} \) [ hám]\n\text{sand-DEF-M}
‘the sand’

d. \( \text{yantsà} \) ‘bee’
\( \text{yà}<\text{f}>&\text{nts}-\text{n} \) [ ?ay]?\n\text{bee<f>-DEF}
‘the bee’

Note that in other environments a sibilant between two nasals is not deleted.

(60) \( \text{hà}=\text{sàn-s-} \) [ fiásànŝ]
\text{3MS=turn-CAUS-DS}
‘he turned it’

MP 3. Realisation of definiteness marker following r in feminine nouns
The definiteness marker in feminine nouns with an \( r \) as last consonant is realised not as a syllabic nasal, but as a vowel-consonant sequence \( \text{in} \).
(61)  

a.  
bāārà  ‘young woman’

bāā <l>r-ń >  [ bāārín ]
young.woman <F>-DEF
‘the young woman’

b.  
tūrū  ‘tree sp.’

tū <l>r-ń >  [ tūyrín ] ~  [ twīrīn ]
tree <F>-DEF
‘the tree’

(the resyllabification of uy is captured in PR 8)

MP 4. Simplification of ns-C cluster in rapid speech

Generally speaking, in rapid or careless speech the assimilation to adjacent elements is stronger and deletion of elements more likely. A good instance of this is given in (62), where the gender marker -s completely disappears. The outcome of this rule is subject to rules of assimilation (PR 9) and internasal stop reduction (PR 20).

(62)  
zīn-ń-s-kh >  [ zīnëŋ ]
leopard-DEF-M-DAT
‘to the leopard’

3.2.2 Realisation of the accusative marker

MP 5. Realisation of the accusative marker -ara

The accusative marker -ara is -ra after a vowel (63)-(64) and tends to be -a after a sibilant (65). After the nominalizer -bāāb the allomorph -a is often used (66).

(63)  
éez-ārā   es=ā
honey-ACC  harvest.honey = 2SG.Q
‘Did you harvest honey?’

(64)  
gyādū-rā   há=kééts-á-m
rope-ACC  3MS = twist-put-IRR
‘He makes rope.’
(65) gyān-s-a $\overset{\text{if}}{=}\overset{\text{fùr-}}{\text{k-}}$-
coffee.DEF-M-ACC 3PL = trade-REAL-STI
‘They sold the coffee.’

(66) ha = yāg-m-bāb-a $\overset{\text{if}}{=}\overset{\text{tùs-}}{\text{k-}}$-
2SG = come-IRR-father-ACC 3PL = know-REAL-STI
‘They knew that you would come’

### 3.2.3 Rules pertaining to verb derivation

The following four rules all occur in the causative and/or passive formation. The formation of causatives and passives is partly lexical. More information on derivation is given in chapter 12.

**MP 6. Shortening of long vowels in derivation**

In causative and passive formation, a long vowel is shortened.

(67)  
- k’ēt  ‘swallow’
- k’ēt-ūs  ‘cause to swallow’
- door  ‘run’
- dor-s  ‘cause to run’

(68)  
- deb  ‘bury’
- deb-t’  ‘be buried’
- gōm  ‘pile’
- gom-t’  ‘be piled’

**MP 7. Deglottalisation of p preceding causative -s**

An bilabial ejective is deglottalised, i.e. becomes a simple voiceless stop preceding the causative marker -s.

(69)  
- t’ip  ‘fill up, clog’  t’ips  ‘cause to fill up’

Stems ending in another ejective may be suffixed by the causative -ūs; or metathesis and cluster simplification may apply.

**MP 8. Deglottalisation of the passive marker**

The passive marker -t deglottalises and becomes the voiceless plosive -t after a voiceless fricative (70). Note that the passive marker does not change after a voiced fricative (71).
(70) důúf ‘hit’    duft ‘be hit’
wos ‘send’    wost ‘be sent’
baaj ‘slaughter’    bašt ‘be slaughtered’
byáh ‘open’    byaht ‘be opened’

(71) baq ‘work, do’    baqt ‘be done’
muz ‘shred’    muqt ‘be shredded’

**MP 9. Metathesis and cluster simplification with velar stops**

In some verbs with a stem-final velar stop, metathesis takes place. Example (72) illustrates this for the causative -s and (73) for the passive t’. It is not fully predictable whether the glottal element of the passive is preserved.

(72) wóók’ ‘be tired’    wosk’ ‘tire’
tik ‘be extinguished’    tisk ‘extinguish’

(73) duuk’ ‘sow (maize)’    dutk’ ‘be sown’
haak ‘pick’    hatk ‘be picked’

Further changes are assimilation in voice, i.e. clusters of a voiced velar stop and -t ‘PASS’ or -s ‘CAUS’ become voiceless. Only the second consonant (after metathesis) may be ejective. The presence of the ejective feature is not fully predictable.

(74) yáb-m-s    dàtk = á-k-ə  (< daag-t’ )
man-DEF-M    invite.PASS = 3MS-REAL-STI

‘The man was invited.’

(75) kátjí bòsk’=á-k-ə  (< boog-s )
   yam    harvest.yam.CAUS = 3MS-REAL-STI

‘He caused (him) to harvest yam’

(76) sòsk = á-k  (< sok’t-s )
sleep.CAUS = 3MS-REAL

‘He sleeps.’
MP 10. Metathesis and cluster simplification with affricates
Furthermore, some verbs ending in an affricate simplify the cluster that is created after suffixing the passive -t' to a cluster of homorganic sibilant and stop.

(77) gyù-h-s  bust = á-k-ǝ  (< buus-t')
glass-DEF-M  cut.PASS = 3MS-REAL-STI
‘The grass is cut.’

há = ts'yaástù-k  (< ts'yaats'-t')
3MS = tie.PASS-REAL
‘he was imprisoned’/‘it was tied’

k'śćt = á-k-ǝ  (< k'ats'-t')
stone.PASS = 3MS-REAL-STI
‘he was stoned’

Likewise, the causative suffix -s sometimes forms one cluster with a verb-final affricate. If the affricate is ejective, the ejective feature is dropped.

(78) ts'ọots ‘be full’  ts'ots ‘fill’
k'eets 'be reheated (of taro)’  k'ets ‘reheat taro’

3.2.4 Rules pertaining to specific paradigms

MP 11. Simplification of 3pl. in Optative
The sequence ffl-f in the Optative 3rd person plural is simplified to f.

(79) nyās = ffl-f-ǝ  →  [ nyāssǝ ]
bear.child = 3PL-OPT-STI
‘let them bear children’

MP 12. Contraction in complex negative tenses
If a complex negative tense is contracted, the last vowel of the negative suffix -āra is deleted (80b). In the first person, the negative marker and the first person marker are further contracted to -en plus tone (81b).
(80) a. \textit{maak-ara} \ ỵ̄l-ki-k-o \ [ maākārā ri̯kīkə ]
tell-NEG 3FS = exist-REAL-STI
‘She did not tell’

b. \textit{maak-ar-ī=ki-k-ə} \ [ maākārīkīkə ]
tell-NEG-3FS = exist-REAL-STI
‘She didn’t tell’

(81) a. \textit{maāk-ārā} \ n-ki-k-ə \ [ maākārā n̥kīkə ]
tell-NEG 1SG-exist-REAL-STI
‘I did not tell’

b. \textit{maāk-en=ki-k-ə} \ [ maākenkīkə ]
tell-NEG,1SG-exist-REAL-STI
‘I didn’t tell’

3.3 Reduplication
There are various reduplication processes in Sheko. This section describes two reduplications found across word categories. In ideophones, more processes are found which are unique to that word class (see section 8.1.1).

The two reduplication processes are full reduplication of the stem and reduplication of the initial CV. It is not clear whether there is a meaning difference between the two processes. They can be used interchangeably at least to some extent (see examples (82), (85) and (86); other examples have not been discussed with language consultants). The reduplicated part is glossed \textit{PLUR} for ‘pluraional’. Although this term is usually connected with verbs, I use it for other word categories as well.

3.3.1 Full reduplication
For full reduplication of the stem, the following textual examples are attested: in (83)-(82), a noun is reduplicated; in (83), a question word and in (84)-(85) verbs. Note that the causative derivation is part of the stem and the expletive vowel \underline{u} is also reduplicated.
(82) bērgū-bērgū-k’ā = ee zēgū byaà úzi
    PLUR-year-IN-STI ox calf firstborn
hā = ta-ūtā m-baàb-kū òrá-tà
    3MS = COP-COND 1SG.Poss-Father-DAT garden-LOC
haàs-tà m = baaʃ-ā-m-ə
    PROX.M-LOC 1SG = slaughter-put-IRR-STI

‘Year upon year, I slaughter an ox, preferably a firstborn male calf, here in the garden of my father.’
also possible: bē-bērgū-k’ā

(83) gōmfā-ka yāf-tū-kl-b k’ōdāmà
    gomfa-WITH find-PASS-exist-REL qodama
ge-t’ū-b-is òdàs-ʔàās-t = ā
    say-PASS-REL-DIST.M PLUR-how-COP = 3MS
ét-tū-t = ā hā = yāāb fày-kly
    do.NV-PASS-SS = 3MS 3MS = man be.healthy-exist[ŋ]

‘How is this what is called qodama which is acquired from the gomfa bird done, and people get better?’

(84) dîmbērī sâsku-tə ūntʃū dàrk’ūs-ḍārk’ūs-tə
    boundary(Amh) arrive.CAUS-SS wood PLUR-chop.off.CAUS-SS
ās-tà kəaří ūntʃū būtū-tə
    PROX.M-LOC toward wood throw-SS

‘...making a boundary, they chopped branches into pieces and threw the wood towards it...’

(85) yī = ẓârsu-ẓârsu-t = ť wûsā ētšā dirliš
    3FS = PLUR-spill.CAUS-SS = 3FS IDEO month until(Amh)
 zgârsu-kî-baàstà
    spill.CAUS-exist-while

‘she spilled and spilled (the food) and while she spilled it for many months,...’
also possible: yī = ẓa-zArsu-t = ť...

In (86), an adjective has undergone reduplication. Adjectives are derived from verbs by the definiteness-gender marking. Reduplication is the only way to overtly indicate plurality of the referent for adjectives.
3.3.2 Reduplication of the Initial CV

In the following examples, the initial CV of the syllable is reduplicated. In example (87), the first syllable of the noun gōri ‘head’ is reduplicated. (88) and (89) show adjectives, while (90) illustrates an adverb.

(87) ʧʧ-غو-ګڼڅڅ - ګڼڅڅ-کڅ-y-y-k'á ʧʧ-t=t ʧʧ
3PL.POSS-PLUR-head-DAT  grassland-IN  go.NV-SS = 3PL

ʧʧ-ٓڼڅڅټ ʧʧ=کڼڅڅ-چ-م
3PL.POSS-food  3PL = farm-put-IRR

‘...they would go each to their/ to each others' grassland and farm their food.’

(88) ʔyáʔ-yááts-ن-s-ә-b-a  na-ң  ats-o  [ʔeʔɛtnsəba ]
PLUR-big-DEF-M-REL-ACC  1SG-DAT  give-STI

‘Give me the big ones.’

(89) ʔ-ټګ-ن-s-ә-b  yaab-u-s  yis  tə
PLUR-be.old-DEF-M-REL  man-m-PL  DIST.M  COP

ٸئڅ-ra  k'ڼڅڅ-ئ-ن-کڅ-څ
cow-ACC tie.cattle-put-EXIST-REL

‘It’s the old people who were keeping cattle.’

(90) қә-کڼڅڅتائ  ٹәوڅڅ  ha=k'أپ'ts'ә-ٹә
PLUR-again  board(Amh)  2SG = cut-SS

‘then again, you can cut a board and …’ (Context: introducing the next method of preventing a honey badger from reaching the beehive.)
The reduplication of initial CV is also found with manner ideophones. The reduplication processes found with ideophones are discussed in detail in section 8.1.1.

(91) nà-nàp’a  gé  zút-yàg-ə
     PLUR-steplightly  say  trample-come-sti
     ‘Come stepping nimbly.’
     also possible: nàp’-nàp’a

Interestingly, the reduplication processes described here are also found in Dime, a South Omotic language. Reduplication is frequent according to Mulugeta (2008:34). E.g. adjectives can reduplicate the full stem or the initial CV; in addition a plural marker -lid can be used, which occurs only with adjectives (examples from Mulugeta 2008:83):

(92) a. kúl  giččó-giččó-b-is
     stick  RDP-big-M-DEF
     ‘big sticks’

b. ʔèh-af  čé-čakk’-ub
     house-PL  RDP-small-M
     ‘small houses’

c. kul-af  giččó-d
     stick-PL  big-PL
     ‘big sticks’

Reduplication in Dime is also common with imperfective verbs, as shown in (93). With some verbs, the final syllable is reduplicated. For more details on this fascinating language the reader is referred to Mulugeta’s grammar.

(93) de-deis-déé-n
     RDP-kill-pf-3/2
     ‘is killing’

Finally, reduplication can be contrasted with repetition. The Sheko examples below show the repetition of a whole verb form. In (94) and (95), the complete verb form is repeated including subject clitics (for the use of gé ‘say’ see 15.5.2).
(94) kādū yi = haay-ḥtā kādū if = tūtš-ā-m
three 3FS = spend.night-COND three 3PL = knot-put-IRR
sūkū guru if = tūtšū-gē-t = if
rope only 3PL = knot-say-SS = 3PL
tūtšū-gē-t = if jät-h-h gēar-kl-bāstā
knot-say-SS = 3PL maize-DEF-M bear.fruit-exist-WHILE

‘When (the moon) appeared in the third night, they made a third knot. Knotting and knotting that rope while the maize was ripening, …’

(95) há = tee-t = ā tee-t = ā tee-t = ā
3MS = go.NV-SS = 3MS go.NV-SS = 3MS go.NV-SS = 3MS
há = őti datā sāk-ń
3MS = cow near.LOC arrive-DS

‘he went and went and went and reached a cow; …’
4 Tone

This chapter gives an overview of tone in Sheko, including its functions, its realisation, and its distribution.

Sheko has four level tonemes. These play a role in the lexicon and in the grammar. The levels are numbered from 1 (lowest) to 4 (highest). The tones are written as follows:

tone 4 (highest)  \^#

tone 3  \^\^#

tone 2  \^#

tone 1 (lowest)  \^\^#

(\^ stands for any tone bearing unit, i.e. a vowel or a syllabic nasal.)

A language with more than three tones is uncommon in Africa. There are just a few languages with four or five tones. These are in Namibia (Khoisan), Ivory Coast (Mande, Kru and Gur), on the Nigerian borders (Benue-Congo), and in Ethiopia (Omotic). These areas are shown in the map below, taken from Wedekind (1985a).
In Ethiopia, Benchnon is the only language which has the rare number of five levels of height. It has six tonemes: five level tones and one glide (Wedekind 1983; Breeze 1989; Rapold 2006). Benchnon is the geographical neighbor of Sheko. Four-tone languages had not been reported for Omotic, although in general on Wedekinds’ map five-tone languages are bordered by four tone languages. Aklilu (1988) mentioned that Sheko has three tones but recommended further research. I have analysed Sheko as having four tones. Thus, Sheko is a bridge between Benchnon with five tones and the surrounding two- or three-tone Omotic languages such as Kafa (2 tones, Taddese 2001) and Nayi (3 tones, Aklilu 1994a). Whereas Benchnon nouns commonly have CVC-structure, most Sheko nouns have a CV(V)CV-structure. Wedekind (1985b) suggests that the loss of segments is connected to the development of the fifth level of tone in Benchnon.

Sheko differs from the other Majoid languages in having four levels of height. It is noteworthy that Diizi and Sheko have the same CV-structure. In Diizi, the final vowel may be dropped
when nouns in isolation are elicited. However, Diizi has only three tone levels according to Aklilu (2003) and Beachy (2005). Nai is reported to have three tonemes as well (Aklilu 1994a:602). It would be interesting to investigate tone comparatively and try to find evidence for the historical circumstances which led to the present divergence in tone systems. It is known from oral history that the Sheko came from the Maji area to their present area.

4.1 Overview
Tone in Sheko has a lexical as well as a grammatical functional load. Tone can be characterized as follows:

- On the whole, tone in Sheko appears as stable.
- There is no downstep (not to be expected with four levels of height).
- One of the major functions of tone is to distinguish between persons. This distinction is found with pronouns, possessor prefixes and verbal subject clitics. Compare for example (1a) and (b). The function of tone in this domain is outlined in section 6.1.1.

(1) a. m-baadû-ra ha = dùfû
   1SG.POSS-younger.sibling-ACC 2SG = hit.[q]
   ‘Did you hit my younger brother?’

   b. m-baadû-rama há = dùfû
      1PL.POSS-younger.sibling-ACC 3MS = hit.[q]
      ‘Did he hit our younger brother?’

Tone in nouns and verbs can be summarized in the following four points:
- Tone on nouns does not change except on head nouns with a preceding modifier, and in some terms of address (masculine and feminine vocatives). Modifiers following the noun or case markers do not have an influence on the tone of the head noun. See section 9.1 on NPs with modifiers and section 5.3.4 on vocatives. The tone of modifiers such as adjectives, demonstratives and possessive prefixes does not change.
All verbs can be classified “H” or “L”. Tone on verb stems in the TAM paradigms is predictable once the lexical tone class is known. The two classes cover the range of four levels of tone in inflection. The lexical class label refers to the relative height within a verb paradigm, not to a specific tone level, i.e. a “L” stem has a lower tone level than a “H” stem in each verb paradigm, but across paradigms the tone level for a “L” stem differs.

From a tonal point of view, verb paradigms can be grouped into Basic, Factual, and Non-Factual. The Basic paradigm is formed by the Imperative singular and Jussive; in this paradigm the tone on the verb stem is on level 2 for “L” stems and on level 4 for “H” stems. Factual paradigms are e.g. Realis and Obvious, and the tone on verb stems is on level 1 for “L” stems or level 2 for “H” stems. In Non-Factual paradigms, such as Irrealis and Optative as well as Negative, the tone is on level 3 for “L” stems or level 4 for “H” stems. Examples are given in section 4.2 below. The division of verb paradigms is fully discussed in section 10.3.1.

In verb derivation such as causative formation, all verbs become L, as is shown in chapter 12. The relation between verb and derived adjective is not regular (section 4.7).

Question intonation, if present, is marked by a final falling intonational contour. This intonation in interrogatives is illustrated comprehensively in section 13.3. The high (4) or extra high tone of the elative may be viewed as intonational as well. Furthermore, a high tone or rise on the last tone bearing unit of a clause may signal that the speaker wants to continue the sentence, and it is glossed CONT where attested.

4.2 Evidence for contrasts
The clearest evidence for the four levels of height is found in the verbal system. In (2a, c) the verb сфіс ‘listen’ and in (2b, d)

---

10 Falling intonation is notated through tone 1 and the gloss .Q where tone 1 is distinctive. The gloss [q] is used in all other cases. In chapter 13, a downward arrow is used to signal falling intonation.
the verb kaas ‘play’ is used. The segmental make-up of the verbs does not influence the tone. In (a, b) the verb forms are in the Irrealis mood, a Non-Factual paradigm. In (c, d) the verb forms are in the Realis mood, a Factual paradigm. Taken together, (a-d) display four levels of height.

(2)  
a.  \( \eta = \text{sís-tə} \quad \eta = \text{māāk-ā-m-ə} \)  
\( 1SG = \text{listen-ss} \quad 1SG = \text{tell-put-IRR-STI} \)  
‘I will listen and talk’  

b.  \( \eta = \text{kāās-tə} \quad \eta = \text{māāk-ā-m-ə} \)  
\( 1SG = \text{play-ss} \quad 1SG = \text{tell-put-IRR-STI} \)  
‘I will chat and talk’  

c.  \( \eta = \text{sīs-tə} \quad \eta = \text{kootu-k-ə} \)  
\( 1SG = \text{listen-ss} \quad 1SG = \text{wait-REAL-STI} \)  
‘I listened and waited’  

d.  \( \eta = \text{kāās-tə} \quad \eta = \text{kootu-k-ə} \)  
\( 1SG = \text{play-ss} \quad 1SG = \text{wait-REAL-STI} \)  
‘I chatted and waited’  

The tone levels pair in two ways, namely levels 4 and 2; 3 and 1 according to “H” and “L” lexical verb class, as well as 4 and 3; 2 and 1 according to mood. These pairings suggest approaches of ‘tone’ and ‘register’, see Yip (2002:42ff) for a summary. An explanation for tone and register phenomena is the involvement of two different muscles in making tone.

In the noun, six tonal melodies are attested. Examples are given in (3). Instrumental measurements in graphs of the six melodies are presented in the following section. Other word classes display additional patterns, exemplified in (4). See further section 4.7 on distribution of tone in several word classes.

(3)  
bádá  4.4 ‘tree sp.’  
tóri  4.1 ‘fork which branches into three’  
k’éfi  3.3 ‘tobacco holder on water pipe’  
kādí  3.1 ‘cactus (Euphorbia candelabrum)’  
útṣā  2.1 ‘honey badger’  
tètʃũ  1.3 ‘pebble’
(4) kétá 4.3 ‘all’
kóta 4.2 ‘little, few’
gàma 1.2 ‘truly’

Minimal pairs and a few triplets are recorded. Multiplets of more than three nouns have not been found, which is reasonable in view of the complex syllable structure and number of consonants. The nominal triplets are given in (5), and some minimal pairs in (6).

(5) tʃ’áárù 4.1 ‘waterfall (stone)’ fōörù 3.3 ‘entrance’
tʃ’áärù 3.3 ‘medicine’ foorù 2.1 ‘rotation’
tʃ’aarù 2.1 ‘twin’ fôrù 1.3 ‘bird sp.’

(6) bóta 4.1 ‘calabash half’ tʃ’úbù 3.3 ‘smoke’
bóta 3.3 ‘mortar’ tʃ’ùbù 2.1 ‘sin’
häyy 3 ‘water’ zínnà 4.1 ‘tree sp.’
haay 2 1. ‘ear’ zünnà 3.3 ‘leopard’
2. ‘leaf of ensete/yam’

Some minimal pairs for verbs include the following:

(7) bár ‘become blind’
bar 1. ‘boil (of liquids)’
2. ‘throw away’ 3. ‘flower (of trees)’
búr 1. ‘flow by’ 2. ‘ask your money back’
bur ‘flood’
gáb ‘be collected’
gab ‘gossip’
ór ‘urinate’
or ‘meow, make a sound (of animals)’

If one mixes different categories and uses inflected verbs, multiplets of more than three members do occur.

(8) bäärà ‘100’
bäärà ‘girl’
báárà ‘to take a mouthful’ (inf.)
baarà ‘did you take a mouthful?’
baarà ‘did he take a mouthful?’

(9) órá ‘wet dung’
órá ‘garden’ (but almost always with -tà ‘LOC’)
órá ‘1. to meow 2. to urinate’ (inf.)
orà ‘did you urinate?’
orà ‘did he urinate?’
órà ‘did you meow?’
orà ‘did he meow?’

4.3 Phonetic realisations
To give an idea of the four levels of tone, this section presents six graphs with each graph showing the phonetic realisation of one of the six patterns found on disyllabic nouns. All nouns are pronounced by the same male person of about 35 years. The graphs show semitones and in this case, level 4 = 53 semitones, level 3 = 50 semitones, level 2 = 48 semitones and level 1 = 45 semitones.

Graph 1. Tone pattern 4.4. Noun: kátá ‘grass sp.’
Graph 2. Tone pattern 4.1. Noun: șfnt’ū ‘nose’

Graph 3. Tone pattern 3.3. Noun: tf’ārū ‘medicine’
Graph 4. Tone pattern 3.1. Noun: zünkë ‘sheep’

Graph 5. Tone pattern 2.1. Noun: dunkë ‘basket sp.’
4.4 Tonological rules

The only purely tonological rules are TR 1. Downdrift and TR 2. Raising tone 1 in rapid speech.

TR1. Downdrift

A general tendency among languages is a downward inclination, which may be strong in some languages and slight in others. This is called downdrift or automatic downstep. It means that the reference point for the realisation of a tone or string of tones is lowered following a phonological lower tone. Downdrift can be observed in Sheko as well. In example (10), the second set of tones on level 4 is phonetically one to two semitones lower than the first pair. (The level 2 tone at the very end is also slightly lower than the level 2 tone on the pronoun.)

(10) ʃfrá ye-kə báátʃi hà = ʃmz-ə-m-ə
day.after.tomorrow 2SG-DAT skin 3MS = hurt-put-IRR-STI
‘The day after tomorrow, your skin will hurt.’
Graph 7. Downdrift.

The exact nature of the rule and the factors which influence setting tonal reference points need further investigation. The effect of downdrift is not marked in this thesis.

TR 2. Raising tone 1 in rapid speech
Optionally (in rapid speech) a single tone 1 preceding a tone 2 may be raised to level 2.

(11) /datʃa/  [datʃa] ~ [datʃa]  ‘right, correct’

(12) /emə-ra/ [ʔemara] ~ [ʔemara]
      so, and so-ACC
      ‘so and so’

4.5  Morphophonological rules
The following rules are described in this section:
MT 1. Contour formation
MT 2. Deletion of tone of definiteness marker
MT 3. Contour simplification
MT 4. Tone change on a pre-modified noun
MT 5. Realisation of tone 2 on case suffixes
MT 6. Tone lowering in causative and passive formation

Additionally, there are some lexicalised, i.e. partly unpredictable tonal changes. For adjectives, these are described in section 4.7 and for vocatives in section 5.3.4.

MT 1. Contour formation
MT 1 happens in the context of loss of a tone bearing unit, such as described by the rule about \( V_1V_2 \) sequences (PR 18 on glide formation and vowel contraction). Its output may be subject to MP 3.

When two tone bearing units meet across a morpheme boundary the first tone bearing unit loses its syllabicity and thereby its ability to carry tone, then its tone is relinked to the following tone bearing unit.

(13) \( \text{há} = \text{tēë-b-tā} = \ddot{a} > [\text{hārēēbtā}] \)
\( 3\text{MS} = \text{go.NV-REL-LOC} = 3\text{MS} \)
\( \) ‘when he went, he...’

(14) \( \text{kī} = \ddot{a}-\text{k-ə} > [\text{kēkə}] \)
\( \text{exist} = 3\text{MS-REAL-STI} \)
\( \) ‘he/it is there’

One environment where contour formation does not apply is in definiteness marking (see MT 2).

MT 2. Deletion of tone of definiteness marker
The basic tone of the definiteness marker -\( ŋ \) is 1. This is its realisation when the definiteness marker is suffixed to a monosyllabic noun.

(15) \( \text{yāāb} \) ‘man, person’
\( \text{yāāb-mü-s} \) [\( \text{yāābũs} \)]
\( \text{man-DEF-M} \)
\( \) ‘the man’
When the definiteness marker is suffixed to a noun with two or more syllables, its own tone is deleted. The preceding tone, whose tone bearing unit is deleted in the process, is relinked to it.

(16) didū `scar’
    did-ŋ-s [ did̃s ] *[ did̃s ]
    scar-DEF-M
    ‘the scar’

MT 3. Contour simplification
A contour tone is optionally simplified by dropping the first tone. Further investigation into contour simplification is needed, to check under which circumstances simplification takes place, and whether it is always the first tone which is dropped.

(17) há=tē-b-tā=a > [ fāt̃e–b̃tā ] ~ [ fāt̃e–b̃tā ]
    3MS = go.NV-REL-LOC = 3MS
    ‘when he went, he...’

MT 4. Tone change on a pre-modified noun
When a modifier precedes its head noun, the tonal pattern on the head noun changes. The following table shows the tonal changes in disyllabic nouns for all six tonal patterns. The numbers in brackets indicate the tone level of the two syllables of the noun. Tone 4 is replaced by tone 2 and all other tones are replaced by tone 1. Note that four of the six contrastive patterns are neutralized by this replacement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun in isolation</th>
<th>pre-modified noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kábi (44) ‘axe’</td>
<td>há-kábi (22) ‘his axe’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>záma (41) ‘machete’</td>
<td>há-záma (21) ‘his machete’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tōsā (33) ‘story’</td>
<td>há-tōsā (11) ‘his story’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>būdā (31) ‘pumpkin’</td>
<td>há-būdā (11) ‘his pumpkin’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>batʃa (21) ‘bed’</td>
<td>há-batʃa (11) ‘his bed’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t’êtʃù (13) ‘pebble’</td>
<td>há-t’êtʃù (11) ‘his pebble’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1. Tone on pre-modified nouns
Section 9.1 discusses modification of head nouns in detail.

**MT 5. Realisation of tone 2 on case suffixes**

Case suffixes with underlying tone 2, are on level 3 following a tone on level 3 or 4 for some speakers. The case suffixes concerned are the accusative marker -ra and the instrumental marker ka.

(18) a. **háárá-ka**  [hááráka]  ~  [hááráká]
    knife-WITH
    ‘with a knife’

b. **gēēnī-ka**  [gēēnīka]  ~  [gēēnīkā]
    pouring.cup-WITH
    ‘with a pouring cup’

Note that e.g. compounds do not show the same variation.

(19) **kújímbe**  [kújímbe]  ‘ant sp.’ (? + bé ‘mother’)

**MT 6. Tone lowering in causative and passive formation**

A “H” verb root becomes “L” when followed by the causative suffix -s or the passive suffix -t. In the Imperative singular (which is also the citation form), H stems have tone 4 and L stems have tone 2.

(20) **gób**  ‘jump’  **gób-s**  ‘cause to jump’
    **úm**  ‘eat’  **úm-t**  ‘be eaten’

The causative or passive verb stem behaves like a “L” verb stem in all paradigms, except in the Imperative singular and Jussive when the derived stem consists of two syllables: then the tonal height on the verb stem is not on level 2 but on level 3. This is exemplified for causative Imperatives in (21) with the verbs **bááf** 'slaughter' and **yiij** 'pull out, dig up'.

(21) a. **bááf**
    slaughter
    ‘slaughter! (sg)’
b. **bāf-ūf**  
slaughter-CAUS  
‘cause to slaughter! (sg)’

c. **yuif**  
pull.out  
‘pull out!’ (sg)

d. **yif-ūf**  
pull.out-CAUS  
‘cause to pull out!’ (sg)

### 4.6 Post-lexical H-spread

At morpheme boundaries, a tone 3 or 4 may spread over the next syllable (22b). In slow or careful speech this will create contour tones, as well as in whistled speech.

(22) a. **fif-kōmtu**  
3pl.poss-chief  
‘their chief’

b. **fit-kōmtu**  
2pl.poss-chief  
‘your chief’

The graph below compares the third person plural **fif**- (22a), which has tones 4.1, with the second person plural **fit**- (22b), which has tones 4.4 and whose tone spreads over the following syllable. Note that even though the second i of **fif**- is elided on this occasion, its tone still prevents the first high tone to spread.
In fluent speech, the phonemically high tone is often realised with a rising tone and the following syllable actually has a higher pitch than the phonemically high one, since the target point of the high tone is delayed in time. However, this does not occur in whistling. The “delayed” H peak is illustrated with the following sentence and corresponding graph. The two circles in the graph show where the highest pitch (tone 4 of the 3fs subject clitics yí= and =f) is realised on the following syllable instead of on the subject clitic.

(23) yí=te♭-b  gābā-k’a  té-ré-e  
 3fs = go.NV-REL  market-IN  COP-NEG-STI

bēytēkidistiyan  t=f  te-te-k-a
church(Amh)  COP = 3fs  go.NV-REAL-STI

‘She didn’t go to market, but to church’ (Lit: her going was not to market, it was to church she went.)
Graph 9. Realisation of H pitch with target point delayed in time.

The effects of this rule are not written in this thesis.

4.7 Distribution of tone
This section illustrates the distribution of tone in several word classes. The data is organised according to syllable type, and by comparison it is found that there is no correlation between syllable type and tone. There are no signs of depressor consonants leading to a phonological difference in height.

monosyllabic nouns
In monosyllabic nouns tone 1 is not attested.

(24) CVC
    ed   ‘mouth’   4
    gūb  ‘chest’
    ts’fr ‘clay’
    iy   ‘house’   3
    gōw  ‘cold’
    gob  ‘welkin, sky’ 2
    kum  ‘neck’
(25) CVVC
ééz  ‘honey’  4
gódó ‘heart’
ááb  ‘1. eye; 2. fruit’
ééd  ‘door’  3
gűné ‘life’
gáá ‘well with water containing minerals’
gaad  ‘body’  2
góoz ‘tree sp.’
meen ‘buffalo’

(26) CCVC
t’yám ‘breast’  4
tyyáb ‘fodder plant’  3

(27) CCVVC
kýáaz ‘lord’  3

(28) CCCVC
tyárb ‘tongue’  3

A few monosyllabic words have a contour tone, written here with the low tone mark on the semi-vowel if the vowel is short (29). It is assumed that they have a disyllabic origin. The words in (30) are also analysed disyllabic underlyingly, on the basis of their tonal behaviour when they are made definite. The definiteness marker carries tone 3 instead of tone 1, which would be the case if the noun was monosyllabic (see section 4.5, MT 2).

(29) baà ‘crow’  < ba.(?)à
káy ‘god’  < ká.(?)ì
báy ‘mother’  < bá.(?)ì
byaà ‘calf’  < bya.(?)à

(30) bòw ‘belly’  < bò.(?)ù or ba.?ù
biy ‘feather’  < bi.(?)ì
**disyllabic nouns**

All six tonal melodies (section 4.3) are found with frequent syllable structures and gaps are random with less frequent syllable structures. For each CV-shape in disyllabic nouns, four words have been given, if possible, with each of the vocoids which can occur word-finally, i.e. u, a, i, ŋ.

### (31) CV.CV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1.3</th>
<th>t'ëtjú ‘pebble’</th>
<th>2.1</th>
<th>karà ‘leaf’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>yàtń ‘fox’ (~ yàtńbe) (f)</td>
<td>uzi ‘firstborn’</td>
<td>atš’u ‘tooth’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>tösá ‘story’</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>šük’á ‘porridge’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>ëkí ‘money’</td>
<td>k’üdl ‘lid’</td>
<td>bōdû ‘corm centre’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>zëgû ‘ox’</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>ts’äp’m ‘root’</td>
<td>tük’n ‘hole’</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### (32) CVV.CV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1.3</th>
<th>dààdù ‘reciprocal labor’</th>
<th>2.1</th>
<th>baakà ‘tuber ssp.’</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>kuurà ‘donkey’</td>
<td>zaaak’n ‘noon’</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>göobá ‘mud bed’</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>fāänà ‘fork (road)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>tūüzì ‘door closing pole’</td>
<td>jöödl ‘bag sp.’</td>
<td>nūütsü ‘hyena’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>tāamû ‘fire’</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>t’sisn ‘bird sp.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>ēëk’n ‘cabbage’</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>háárá ‘knife’</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>séémà ‘tusk’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>zóófi ‘plant sp.’</td>
<td>tóórl ‘anklet’</td>
<td>k’âats’u ‘ant sp.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>fírû ‘rain’</td>
<td>ts’ílk’h ‘charcoal’</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
(33) CVC.CV

4.4 gárgá ‘termite’
zhřbí ‘cotton’
řúntjú ‘chaff’
zérků ‘time’ (~ zérků)

3.3 hümfa ‘canoe’
gěbí ‘armpit’
āsků ‘meat’
jörků ‘grasshopper’

1.3 jiltů ‘plant sp.’
šörtů ‘lungs’

(34) CCV.CV

4.4 řyátsů ‘moon’

3.3 řyáfů ‘tongue wound’
gyânů ‘coffee’
byáků ‘spear’

(35) CCVC.CV

3.3 řyängů ‘ram’
myängů ‘forefather spirit’

1.3 k’yántů ‘flower sp.’
řyārků ‘perspiration’

(36) CCVV.CV

4.4 řyáná ‘pot’
zyáámí ‘tree sp.’
myaaků ‘egg’

3.3 gyåšů ‘shield’

tri-syllabic nouns
Underived tri-syllabic nouns have one of four patterns.
(37) CV.CV.CV

4.4.1  
- tērēfā ‘clay pitcher’  
- yūmātā ‘early morning’  

1.3.1  
- dōgāmā ‘dove’  
- sūmūnī ‘50 cent coin’

3.3.1  
- sēkūrī ‘wattle’  
- bākāfā ‘stool’

(38) CVC.CV.CV

4.4.1  
- kēngāfā ‘clay pipe’  
- būrgifā ‘liver’

1.3.1  
- yānk’ābā ‘red maize’  
- mūkumūrī ‘top leaf of ensete’

3.3.1  
- dingūrū ‘viper’  
- sāmbārā ‘tree sp.’

(39) CVC.CVC.CV

1.3.1  
- gīngīngā ‘milipede’

A fifth melody is only found with words ending in -tšī and these words are said to come from Benchnon.

(40) CV.CV.CV

3.3.3  
- yōrōtsī ‘God’  
- dēmētsī ‘(name of spirit)’  
- dēgōtsī ‘(name of spirit)’

Tri-syllabic loan words from Amharic have often the 1.3.1 pattern.

(41)  
- kūbāyā ‘cup’  < Amh kubbayya
- dāgūsā ‘grain sp.’  < Amh dagussa
- mājīrā ‘millet’  < Amh majilla
- k’ōrk’ōrō ‘zinc sheet’  < Amh k’ork’orro
- mismārī ‘nail’  < Amh mismar

numerals

The tone patterns of numerals are a subset of those in nouns. See section 7.3.1 for a list of numerals.
adjectives
Adjectives, derived by the definiteness-gender marking -n-s from verbs, display four tone patterns, namely 44, 41, 33 and 31. 44-toned adjectives are always derived from a H verb stem, but not all H stems have their adjective in 44. Since the tone of an adjective is unpredictable from the tone of the verb stem, a list is given in (42) and (43) with H and L verbs respectively.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(42)</th>
<th></th>
<th>(43)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>k'ěēts’</td>
<td>‘be cold’</td>
<td>k'ěēts’ñš</td>
<td>dākň</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jáád</td>
<td>‘be tall’</td>
<td>jáádns ~ jáádns</td>
<td>fay’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ts’ůbńś</td>
<td>‘be narrow’</td>
<td>ts’ůbńś</td>
<td>gaar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tʃ’ır</td>
<td>‘be green’</td>
<td>tʃ’ırńʃ</td>
<td>karp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tʃ’óřr</td>
<td>‘be finished’</td>
<td>tʃ’óřńʃ ‘last’</td>
<td>k’ož</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wóók’</td>
<td>‘be weak, flexible’</td>
<td>wóók’nś</td>
<td>fapk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fík’</td>
<td>‘be old’</td>
<td>fík’nś</td>
<td>jeen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kór</td>
<td>‘be dry’</td>
<td>kórňś</td>
<td>jíľk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kyát</td>
<td>‘be sour, stingy’</td>
<td>kyátnś</td>
<td>jōōtn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k’āľk’ú</td>
<td>‘be sour’</td>
<td>k’āľk’hńʃ</td>
<td>gšōkń</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>máń</td>
<td>‘be patient’</td>
<td>máńkńʃ</td>
<td>t’yăbńń</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>méér</td>
<td>‘be fat’</td>
<td>méérńś</td>
<td>ins</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(31) zááz | ‘be good’ | záázńš ~ zėēńʃ  |  |  |  |

(33) kááts  | ‘be ripe’ | káátsńś  |  |  |  |
| sár    | ‘be hot’ | sárńś  |  |  |  |

(41) 3ááń | ‘be good’ | 3ááńś |  |  |  |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Sheko</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fay</td>
<td>fâŷn̂ś</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘be saved’</td>
<td>‘alive, healed’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōōn̂</td>
<td>gōōnt̂s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘be white’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sub</td>
<td>sūb̂ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘be red’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jik̂</td>
<td>jik̂̂ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘be short’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ts’aw</td>
<td>ts’ā̂̂ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘be black’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hāsk̂</td>
<td>hāsk̂̂s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘be wide’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adjectives in attributive function have these tone patterns irrespective of whether they follow or precede their head. When used predicatively, they have tone patterns occur too. It is not known whether adjectives undergo a change in tone pattern, if they function as head and a modifier precedes them.

**adverbs and ideophones**

Next to the six patterns found in disyllabic nouns, adverbs and ideophones and quantifiers may have the following patterns:

(44)  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Sheko</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ōōza</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘unstable, wobbly’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wūja</td>
<td>4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘much’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kētā</td>
<td>4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘all’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**verbs**

The lexical tone is H or L, see section 4.1 above or section 10.3.1. All verbs have a verbal noun with a 4.1 tone pattern, regardless of the lexical tone.

Although Sheko has four tones, it uses just six out of 16 logically possible patterns for disyllabic nouns. With tri-syllabic nouns and adjectives, just four patterns are used. Lexical tone of verb stems, which are normally monosyllabic, is restricted to two classes. If all word classes are included nine patterns are used in total: 4.4, 4.3, 4.2, 4.1, 3.3, 3.1, 2.1, 1.3, 1.2. Excluded are the patterns 3.4, 2.4, 1.4, 2.3, 3.2, 2.2 and 1.1. The latter two patterns are found on pre-modified nouns but do not occur on nouns in isolation. The restrictions in tone patterns can be seen as a trace of historical stages of the language during which it had fewer tone levels. At present, little is known about the processes and interactions between tones which led to the development of more tone levels.
5  **Noun morphology**

This chapter treats the inflectional morphemes of Sheko that attach to nouns, and give an overview of the categories of definiteness, gender and number in the language. Other inflectional markers like case attach to the right of the noun phrase and are treated in chapter 9. Furthermore, this chapter treats noun derivation and compounding.

5.1  **Gender, definiteness and number**

Definiteness, gender and number are interconnected. Although the morphemes for definiteness and gender are not port-manteau morphemes and one can recognise the individual morphemes, they are so closely linked together that discussing gender also involves speaking of number. Likewise, one cannot speak about definiteness without mentioning gender, since a definiteness marker always co-occurs with a gender marker.

The table below and the following of this section give an overview of morphemes concerned with gender, definiteness and number in Sheko. Sections 5.2, 5.3 and 5.4 treat gender, definiteness and number respectively in all the relevant word categories.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Morphology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>definite noun</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M: -n-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F: &lt;1&gt;-n</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M: DEF-M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F: &lt;F&gt;-DEF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plural noun</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M: -(n)-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F: -(I)-s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M: PL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F: -PL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demonstrative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M: -z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F: -m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nominalizer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M: bââb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F: bé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relative clause</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M: -ab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F: -abe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person pronoun</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M: áz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F: íz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3MS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3FS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd person subject clitic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M: há</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>F: yí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3MS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3FS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3PL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1: Overview of gender, number and definiteness morphology

Definiteness marking and plural marking exclude each other in nouns. Definiteness is marked by the morpheme -n and always co-occurs with gender marking, which consists of an infix <I> for feminine and the default gender suffix -s for masculine. The combination of the definiteness marker and these gender markers is referred to as definiteness-gender marking. It is not obligatory, i.e. a form morphologically unmarked for definiteness may still refer to a known referent mentioned before. The definiteness-gender marking bears functional resemblance to the distal demonstrative (cf. section 5.2.2 and 7.1.2).
Gender is predominantly a category of the singular. However, gender suffixes appear in the plural as well with a small group of nouns: -û for masculine and -i for feminine nouns. -û only occurs suffixed to monosyllabic words which are marked for plural. The suffix -i is restricted to that environment as well. It is clearly linked with the infix <i> in definite nouns and -ni in demonstratives.

Furthermore, the default gender is non-feminine, as can be seen from the table. In other words, the feminine gender is singled out as opposed to masculine and plural, which are marked by the suffix -s. This default gender marker formally resembles the suffix -z in demonstratives. Note that in the nominalizers and in relative clause marking too, the feminine gender is singled out as opposed to masculine and plural, which are always marked identically. In other words, feminine is the marked and non-feminine the unmarked gender. The default gender can be called masculine, because gender agreement on verbs is with the third person singular masculine. In Diizi and Nayi too, masculine is the unmarked gender (Beachy 2005; Aklulu 1997).

Looking through the table, there are no morphemes which uniquely express number in nouns, demonstratives, relative clauses and the nominalizer bâab ‘father’ / bé ‘mother’. For nouns, demonstratives and relatives, there is one morpheme which serves for masculine singular as well as plural (plural irrespective of gender). Thus, one could say that (except for 3rd person) the category of number is irrelevant or that it is reducible to gender. However, by the configuration of morphemes one can distinguish a plural form for most nouns, which has an -u / -i gender marker, and/or no definiteness marker. Plural marking in nouns is not obligatory, i.e. plural marking is only used in contexts where the speaker wants to refer explicitly to more than one referent. The referent of the plural noun may be known (“definite”) or unknown (“indefinite”). An unmarked noun can refer to one or more referents depending on the context, i.e. it is transnumeral (Biermann 1982). Definite nouns are also transnumeral.

In glossing, the default (masculine) gender marker -s is glossed m in the majority of cases, which is when it occurs together
with the definiteness marker -\( \text{nh} \) \text{DEF}; it is glossed \text{PL} when occurring separately, or with the markers -\( \text{mu} \) \text{m} and -\( \text{ft} \). In demonstratives, the default (masculine) marker -\( \text{z} \) is glossed \text{M} and the feminine marker -\( \text{mf} \); the relative clause marker -\( \text{ab} \) \text{REL} is not glossed for gender, while its feminine counterpart -\( \text{abe} \) is glossed \text{REL,mothers}.

5.2 Definiteness

Definiteness marking co-occurs with a gender marker. Since the two occur together obligatorily, the rest of this thesis speaks mostly of definiteness-gender marking for ease of reference. In nouns, definiteness marking excludes plural marking, and a definite form is interpreted as singular out of context, although the form is in fact transnumeral. The form of the definiteness-gender marking is discussed under section 5.2.1, while its function is discussed in section 5.2.2. The definiteness-gender marking refers anaphorically to nouns and derives adjectives from verbs.

5.2.1 Form of definiteness-gender marking

The basic form of the definiteness marker is -\( \text{nh} \). The terminal vowel of a noun is dropped before the syllabic nasal of the definiteness marker. The definiteness marker is always accompanied by a gender marker, which is a suffix -\( s \) for masculine and an infix \( <1> \) for feminine.

(1)  
\begin{align*} 
t\text{ot}\text{\text{z}} & \quad \text{‘relative’} & t\text{ot}\text{z-\text{nh}} & \quad \text{‘the relative (m)’} 
t\text{ar\text{\text{a}}} & \quad \text{‘injera’} & t\text{ar-\text{nh}} & \quad \text{‘the injerra (m)’} 
t\text{ot}\text{\text{z}} & \quad \text{‘relative’} & t\text{o}\text{<1> z-\text{nh}} & \quad \text{‘the relative (f)’} 
\text{y\text{\text{\text{g}}}i} & \quad \text{‘grandmother’} & \text{y\text{\text{\text{g}}}a <1> g-\text{nh}} & \quad \text{‘the grandmother’} 
\end{align*}

Some (morpho-)phonological processes apply when the definiteness-gender marking is suffixed to a noun. These are repeated here in order to explain the surface forms of nouns with definiteness-gender suffixes. The processes themselves are described in detail in chapter 3.

The (morpho-)phonological processes involved in suffixing definiteness-gender marking are:
MP 1. Deletion of the terminal vowel preceding the definiteness marker
PR 13. Sibilant harmony
PR 9. Assimilation of alveolar nasals
MP 2. Deletion of internasal sibilants
PR 10. Nasal-nasal merging
PR 15. Simplification of affricates preceding a syllabic nasal
PR 20. Internasal stop reduction

In case of rapid or careless speech, PR 20 is overruled by PR 21. Internasal stop deletion in rapid speech.

Rules specific to feminine nouns:
MP 3. Realisation of definiteness marker following r in feminine nouns
PR 18. Reduction of vowel to glide and contraction

The tonal side is captured in MT 2. Deletion of tone of definiteness marker.

The examples below serve to illustrate the application of the above rules. Note that the rules are ordered. Assimilation processes take place before the deletion of the element they assimilate to, i.e. sibilant harmony applies before simplification of affricates and assimilation of alveolar nasals applies before internasal stop deletion in rapid speech and before nasal-nasal merging. (2)-(4) are examples of masculine nouns and (5)-(7) of feminine nouns.

(2) 不忘 [罕忘]  ‘wood’

[罕忘-/-s] - MP 1 Deletion of terminal vowel
[罕忘-/-f] - PR 13 Sibilant harmony
[罕凡/-j] - PR 9 Assimilation of alveolar nasals
[罕凡/-f] - MP 2 Deletion of internasal sibilants
[罕凡/-f] - PR 10 Nasal merging

不忘 [罕忘]  ‘the wood’
(3) **k'árš'ú**  [ k'árš'ú ]  ‘wrist or ankle joint’

- [ k'árš'í-n-s ] - MP 1 Deletion of terminal vowel
- [ k'árš'í-n-g ] - MT 2 Deletion of tone of def. marker
- [ k'árš'í-ñ-g ] - PR 13 Sibilant harmony
- [ k'árš'-ñ-g ] - PR 9 Assimilation of alveolar nasals
- [ k'árš'-ñ-y ] - PR 15 Simplification of affricates

**k'árš'ēs**  [ k'árš'ēs ]  ‘the wrist or ankle joint’

(4) **umt’a**  [ ?umt’ā ]  ‘food’

- [ ?umt’-h-s ] - MP 1 Deletion of terminal vowel
- [ ?umh-ñ-s ] - MT 2 Deletion of tone of def. marker
- [ ?umh-ñ-s ] - PR 20 Internasal stop reduction
- [ (?umh-ñ-m-s ] - PR 9 Assimilation of alveolar nasals
- [ (?umh-ñ-y-s ] - PR 10 Nasal merging

**uňs**  [ ?uňš ]  [ ?uňš ]  ‘the food’

In rapid speech:
- [ ?umt’-h-s ] - MP 1 Deletion of terminal vowel
- [ ?um-ñ-s ] - MT 2 Deletion of tone of def. marker
- [ ?um-ñ-s ] - PR 21 Internasal stop deletion
- [ ?umh-s ] - PR 9 Assimilation of alveolar nasals
- [ ?um-ñ ] - PR 10 Nasal merging

**uňs**  [ ?uňš ]  ‘the food’

(5) **ʔyants’a**  [ ?'ants'ā ]  ‘bee’

- [ ?'a< inclined ñ-nt ] - MP 1 Deletion of terminal vowel
- [ ?'a< inclined ñ-nts' ] - MT 2 Deletion of tone of def. marker
- [ ?'a< inclined ñ-ñ ] - MP 2 Deletion of internasal sibilants
- [ ?'a< inclined ñ-ñ ] - PR 10 Nasal merging
- [ ?'a< aligned ñ-ñ ] - PR 18 Reduction of vowel to glide
- [ ?'a< inclined ñ-ñ ] - PR 15 Simplification of affricates

**ʔyayn**  [ ?'ayn ]  [ ?'ay ’s ]  [ ?'eñ ]  ‘the bee’
(6) **bäärä** [ bäärä ] ‘young woman’

[ bäär-In - MP 3 Realisation of def.-gender marker following r in feminine nouns - MT 2 Deletion of tone of def. marker

bäärin [ bäärin ] ‘the young woman’

(7) **zünkù** [ zünkù ] ‘sheep’

[ zù<i>ŋk-h - MP 1 Deletion of terminal vowel - MT 2 Deletion of tone of def. marker ]
[ zù<i>ŋ-h - PR 21 Internasal stop deletion ]
[ zù<i>ŋ-ŋ - PR 9 Assimilation of alveolar nasals ]
[ zù<i>ŋ - PR 10 Nasal merging ]
[ zù<y>ŋ - PR 18 Reduction of vowel to glide ]

züyn [ züyn ] ‘the sheep (ewe)’

One might wonder whether -h _DEF_ can also be analysed as singulative. However, this was not volunteered by any of the language consultants (nobody said: “It means just one,” or the like). Moreover, definiteness-gender marking occurs with mass nouns, e.g. ùk'ìs ‘the milk’, and with nouns which may denote a plural referent, e.g. yábìns ‘the people’.

The definiteness-gender marking is always suffixed to the head noun. It can co-occur with demonstratives (8)-(9) and possessives (10)-(11).

(8) **é-ká**  **fáád-k'á-bàáb**  **fn-ʃ**  **yís-ørá**

there-lct  body-in-father  wood _DEF-M_  DIST-M-ACC,CONT

k'ôdám-ør-s  yís  há = gësû-kôb-t = á

qodama _DEF-M_  DIST-M  3MS = pull-take-ss = 3MS

kës-á-m-ø
go.out,CAUS-put-IRR-STI

‘that qodama pulls out the wood which is there in the body’
(9) ás-kh ñy-ka' ük'ú kî-h ük'-ñ-s yîs-ora
3MS-DAT house-IN milk exist-DS milk-DEF-M DIST-M-ACC
tô k'aabu-te
just pour-SS
‘There was milk in his house; pouring only that milk...’

(10) yî=ziîn-ñ-s-kh báátj-ñ-s-ora yî-bâtâ
3FS = leopard-DEF-M-DAT11 skin-DEF-M-ACC 3FS.POSS-ON.LOC
siîp'u-te
sew-SS
‘she sewed the skin of the leopard on her and...’

(11) k'ay-te ñ-uus-ñ-s-a ats-ô yî = ge-ñ
rise-SS 1SG.POSS-bone-DEF-M-ACC give-STI 3FS = say-DS
‘she rose and said: “Give my bone!”

Definiteness-gender marking does not occur on nouns in generic statements in my corpus.

(12) gárgá ñtîfù-rà há=gyá-m-ô
termite wood-ACC 3MS = chew-IRR-STI
‘A termite eats wood.’

(13) êéz-kh têêmà-ka ük'ú-ka
honey-DAT honey.liquid-COOR milk-COOR
jîjîk-h-s-òb ña-k-ô
be.fasty-DEF-M-REL COP-REAL-STI
‘Honey and milk are sweet.’

The definiteness-gender marking does not occur with proper nouns like Gaana (male person’s name) or Kuki (place name) in my sample. But it occurs on names which are used to denote a member of a group, see the first line in (14):

---
11 On the use of the dative for possession see section 9.3.
Synchronically, definiteness-gender marking is not ordered neatly, but involves a different order for feminine nouns, with the infix <i> preceding the definiteness marker -n. For masculine nouns, the definiteness marker is followed by the gender marker.

Although it is outside the scope of this thesis to work out the diachronical developments which led to the present situation of definiteness-gender marking in Sheko, a few comparative notes on definiteness and gender marking in Diizi and Nayi are given below.

Definiteness in Diizi is related to verbal subject clitics (Beachy 2005:58, but cf. section 15.3.1 for the use of subject clitics in Sheko in comparable clauses) as well as to demonstrative suffixes (2005:60). Interestingly, an element -s frequently follows these demonstrative suffixes -a prox and -e dist. Beachy (2005:67f) has analysed -s as an accusative case marker alongside -n, but perhaps an alternative analysis is possible, with -n as the accusative case marker (regular, cf. Sheko -ra, Gf. -na, Nayi -na) and -s as a demonstrative or other morpheme indicating definiteness (The distribution of -s in Diizi bears resemblance to the distal demonstrative yis in Sheko). Markers for feminine gender in Diizi include -n ~ -ni ~ -eni for nouns (Beachy 2005:62).

For Nayi, Aklilu (1997:603f) gives the definiteness suffixes -s for masculine and -n for feminine nouns. While the feminine definiteness suffix -n is accompanied by the gender infix <i>, the masculine definiteness suffix -s lacks a corresponding gender affix. Finally, the Nayi proximal demonstratives are
comparable to those in Sheko: haa-s ‘this/these M’, haa-yin ‘this/those F’, while the distal demonstratives are nea-s ‘that/those M’ and ne-yin ‘that/those F’ (Aklilu 1997:606).

As to the origin of the definiteness marker -n in Sheko, a demonstrative would be a logical source. Could it have been a distal feminine, which is suggested here on the basis of the Nayi distal? If so, was the default gender feminine in earlier times? (Another clue to the possibility of a switch in default gender is discussed in section 5.3.8.) In any case, this overview clearly hints at a demonstrative origin for the present-day Sheko morphemes -s M and -n DEF.

On the other side of the Sheko area, Benchnon has masculine/ feminine/plural marking which is ū/ en/ end in verb-final paradigms, which are ultimately derived from the distal demonstratives ūc, en, end respectively (Rapold 2006:588).

5.2.2 Definiteness on nouns and anaphoric reference

The two major functions of the definiteness-gender marking are to refer anaphorically to referents of noun phrases, and to derive adjectives from a group of verbs denoting adjectival concepts. In addition, it occurs suffixed to a few other verb stems.

The main function of the definiteness marker is anaphoric reference to a previously mentioned entity. Thus, in examples (15) and (16) below, the first mention of a participant or entity is without, the subsequent with the definiteness marking. The anaphoric reference can also be associative (17)-(18).

(15) só òti háš-tà kl-b-tà
    up.there cow PROX.M-LOC exist-REL-LOC

η = sāw-fín-á-m-ə há = ge-ń ə < y > t-ń
1SG = arrive.NN-descend.put-IRR-sti 3MS = say-DS cow < F > -DEF

datà ə̣ = sāk-ń
near.LOC 3PL = arrive-DS

‘he said: “Up there where there is a cow I will arrive and descend.”
They arrived near the cow; ...’
(16) ሁ-ዘግמדה ይቡይ-ቶ ን-ወድ ካቡ-ቶ
1SG.POSS-ox drive-ss 1SG.POSS-honey take-ss

አ = ደግ-ስት-ባል ሚስ ን-ኩብ-ትግ-ሆ ኳ-ዘግמדה
1SG = go-IRR-father DIST.M 1SG = take-go-DOS 3MS.POSS-ox

ባናት ን-ዘግ-ስት-ስ-ወን ይብናት
slaughter-ss 1SG.POSS-ox-DEF-ACC slaughter-ss

 neuronal-sb  ይልእስ-ትአ
1SG.POSS-honey-DEF-ACC immerse-ss

‘...having to go I drive my cow and take my honey; (for Badi, he is my ‘father’.) This I bring with me; he slaughters his ox and slaughters my ox and immerses my honey and...’

(17) ኤሆ=ሱብ-ጎስ ከ-ባሌስ-ን-ስ-ወራ
3MS = die-excrete-Ds 3MS.POSS-skin-DEF-ACC

የሱ ካባስ-ትአ
3FS = slaughter-ss

‘...he died; she skinned his skin and...’

(18) ወባር-ያልት-ካ ዯ进货 እ-አይ-ቶ ዴ=የኩት እን
1SG.POSS-burzha-man-WITH together rise-ss 1PL = come.NV-ss = 1PL

ማይ-ኮአ ከነን የውስ-ትአ ለጎስ-ስ
house-IN enter-ss INTJ time(Amh)-DEF-ACC

ታን-ር-ሰስ
finish-COND

‘together with my assistant we will rise, come and enter the house and well, when the time is finished,...’ (Context: a specific period of four days in a certain ritual during which the leader and his assistant don’t leave the house.)

However, the use of the definiteness marking for anaphoric reference is basically pragmatic. While the second reference to an entity is often by a definite noun phrase, subsequent references may be unmarked for definiteness. In example (19), several parts of a story are put next to each other. The cock and the rat have been mentioned before. In the first line, the rat is referred to by a definite noun phrase. In the second line, the rat is referred to twice by an unmarked noun phrase. In the last line, the rat is again referred to by a definite noun phrase.
(19) *jī = kōob-m-s-ka uuth-s-ka t'āagī-bād*

3PL = cock-DEF-M-COOR  rat-DEF-M-COOR two-father

ki-tə (…) hā = ?uutə-əra maad-ə
exist-ss  3MS = rat-ACC lie-DS

hā = ?uuth hā = gāmə tə-k-ə ge-tə (…)
3MS = rat  3MS = true COP-REAL-SSI say-SS

hā = mútə'ā səw-tə hā = ?uutə-s-əra
3MS = bird.of.prey arrive.NV-SS  3MS = rat-DEF-M-ACC

kaw-ə-s-ka dən-su-tə ...
fat-DEF-M-WITH be.together-CAUS-SS
‘the cock and the rat were left together (…) he deceived the rat; the
rat thought: “It is true,” (…) a bird of prey arrived and (seizing) the
rat with the fat…”

Definiteness-gender marking is often absent with body parts
and locatives (20), perhaps because these are quickly taken for
granted or accommodated associatively. Sometimes a
demonstrative is used rather than definiteness-gender marking
(21), although both can occur together. For the use of distal
demonstratives in reference, see section 7.1.2.

(20) kyəān-s ás-kə gār-tə ʔyānə-kə bōw-kə
dog-DEF-M 3MS-DAT head-ACC pot-DAT belly-IN
tòōrə hā = wūskū-tə hā = bās-ə kāāy
downward 3MS = insert-ss 3MS = want-DS be.not
‘the dog entered his head down in the pot and searched (but) it
wasn’t there.’

(21) tūrū-kə bōw-kə karə tʃəf-tə
land-DAT belly-IN leaf stick?-PASS-DS
kara yis bātə yēngi an-tə
leaf DIST.M on.LOC firewood put-PASS-DS
‘… in the ground (hole) leaves will be placed, on the leaves firewood
will be put,…’

Definiteness does not figure in immediate situation use, as
illustrated in (22) and (23).
(22) jājā na-ē há=kl-ē na-ē ats-ō
    shawl 1SG-DAT 3MS=exist-DAT 1SG-DAT give-STA
    ‘Give me my shawl’ (Lit: there is a shawl to me (I have a shawl), give it.)

(23) háárá na-ē ats
    knife 1SG-DAT give
    ‘Give me the knife’ (Context: woman directs a child to give her the knife which lies outside her reach.)

5.2.3 Definiteness-gender marking on adjectives and verbs

Definiteness-gender marking derives adjectives from verbs, as illustrated in (24) with the verb jik’ ‘become short’. These adjectives have a number of characteristics which set them apart from nouns. Adjectives are therefore discussed separately in section 7.2.

(24) a. dādū jik’-ē-s
    child be.short-DEF-M
    ‘a/the short child’

b. dā<y>g-ē jik’-n
    child<DEF-F> be.short.F-DEF
    ‘a/the short girl’

Additionally, there are a few other occurrences where definiteness-gender marking is attested on the verb. This happens with the verbs gé ‘say’ and ákár ‘resemble’. After presenting the examples, the role of the definiteness-gender marking on verbs is discussed.

The construction with gé ‘say’ is likely used for the introduction of a topic. Example (25) is found at the beginning of a description of badgers. Compare the first clause with the final clause of the description (26). Example (27) introduces a certain tree whose bark was used to make sleeping mats and bags from.
(25)  uțså  gê-t'-h-s  kĩ-tô  lâñ-ëñá  kêês-tô  
say-PASS-DEF-M  exist-ss  beehive-ACC  go-out-ss  
‘There is what is called a badger, and it climbs beehives and...’

(26)  yis  to-k  uțså  ge-t'-ȧb  
DIST.M  COP-REAL  badger  say-PASS-REL  
‘This is it, the badger.’

(27)  têngi  gê-t'-h-s  łyñfû  ky=ä-k-o  
tengi  say-PASS-DEF-M  wood  exist = 3MS-REAL-STI  
têngi-ra  ḫî=k'yar-tə  ḫî=ʃêemã  gōntfî  
tengi-ACC  3PL = beat-ss  3PL = cloth  SIMIL  
sâskû-tə  
arrive-CAUS-SS  
‘There is a tree called tengi. They pounded the tengi and produced something like cloth...’

The second environment in which definiteness-gender marking occurs on a verb is in constructions with the verb âkăr ‘resemble, be similar’, although one time on the verb âkăr itself (28) and the other time on the auxiliary verb k'é ‘be left, remain’ (29).

(28)  kârkâ-kâ  yîr-be  sûrû  akar-ń-s  kî-ń  
forest-IN  what-mother  Suru  resemble-DEF-M  exist-DS  
.fxî = tee  bêk'ń-ka  tʃa'd-tə  ḫî=ziłp'm-k  
3PL = go.NV  spear-with-pierce-SS  3PL = chase.away-REAL  
‘whatever resembled a Me’en in the forest, they went and pierced it with a spear and chased it away.’

(29)  kêês-âr =â-k'ê-ń-s  akar-ʃə  
go.out-NEG = 3MS-remain-DEF-M  resemble-REAL-STI  
‘It seems it will not come up.’

Definiteness-gender marking is typically nominal inflection, and its occurrence on verb stems is unexpected. The adjectives in (24) as well as the usage in the examples with the verbs gê ‘say’ and âkăr ‘resemble’ suggest that we have to do with relative clauses here.
Synchronously, the Sheko relative clause marker is -\textit{bāb} \sim -\textit{āb}, and relative clauses marked by -\textit{bāb} cannot suffix definiteness-gender marking. Moreover, adjectives have a more limited distribution than relative clauses, since adjectives can only follow the noun they modify whereas relative clauses occur on both sides of the head noun (cf. section 7.2.1). Nevertheless, a relative clause marker may be combined with definiteness-gender marking on adjectives, but it is suffixed after the definiteness-gender marking (30).

(30) \texttt{dād-ī-s jīk'-ī-s-āb hāz ʒéěni}  
\texttt{child-DEF-M be.short-DEF-M-REL PROX.M well}  
\texttt{hā = kāās-kl-k}  
\texttt{3MS = play-exist-REAL}  
‘This short boy plays well.’

Thus, there are arguments against the analysis of adjectives as relative clauses. Sporadically, however, relative clauses without overt marker occur, and especially in the Guraferda variant zero-marked relative clauses are common. Therefore an analysis of adjectives as a different (older?) type of relative clause may be justified.

Turning to other Omotic languages, Beachy (2005:128ff) analyzes adjectives in Diizi as relative constructions as well. Interestingly, in Dime, adjectives and relative clauses are marked for gender whereas nouns are not, and they have a special plural marker which does not occur with nouns: masculine -\textit{ub}, feminine -\textit{ind} (< ‘mother’), plural -\textit{id} (Mulugeta 2008:81;154). The masculine and feminine markers resemble the relative clause markers in Sheko, which are -\textit{bāb} REL and -\textit{āba REL.mother} respectively.

The definiteness-gender marking is not the only nominal element in Sheko that occurs in verbal forms. The nominalizer \textit{bāāb} ‘father’ (feminine \textit{bē} ‘mother’) forms verb complements and relative clauses. In contrast to the definiteness-gender marking it does not attach directly to the verb stem but to an Irrealis verb form (see section 11.4.6).
5.3 Gender

Gender is distinguished morphologically in nouns, adjectives, demonstratives and relative clauses, as well as in third person pronouns, third person possessor prefixes on nouns and third person subject coindexing clitics on verbs. In terms of address (vocatives), a tonological distinction is made.

Leaving the gender distinction in the third person aside until section 5.3.9, the gender system in Sheko distinguishes feminine from ‘default’ or non-feminine, since marking for masculine is used for plural as well. The default gender morpheme is -s. Feminine gender morphemes are characterized by a vowel ʌ, namely <ʌ> in nouns and adjectives, and -ni in demonstratives; and masculine gender is characterized by -u in plural nouns. In relative clauses, -ʌbe is used for feminine gender; the last part be is probably derived from bʌy ‘mother’. The default gender can also be called masculine (as opposed to feminine, and given 3ms agreement on verbs).

In nouns, gender is expressed obligatorily when the noun is made definite. Like in most Omotic languages, gender is generally semantically motivated: gender is assigned according to the inherent gender of animate entities. That is, words like ‘ox’ and ‘cow’ have default (masculine) and feminine gender respectively. Most inanimate nouns have the default gender. A small group of inanimate nouns is feminine. Feminine gender agreement is also used to express smallness of the referent.

5.3.1 Default gender

There are several reasons to consider ‘masculine’ as the default gender in Sheko. These are listed below, with examples.

1. Most inanimate nouns have masculine gender
The majority of the nouns in the lexicon has masculine gender since they show masculine gender agreement. Only a small minority of nouns is feminine. A list of feminine nouns is found in section 5.3.3.

2. Verbal nouns have masculine gender agreement
Nouns which are cognate with verbs (31) have masculine agreement.

(31) kāa₃sù 3aa₃ = á-k-ø
    playing be.good = 3MS-REAL-STA
    ‘The game is good’
    cf. kaas ‘play’

3. A reference to states of affair is with masculine gender

(32) yi-s  tø-k
dist-m cop-real
    ‘That’s it.’ (Said e.g. when someone performs an action correctly during training.)

(33) ás-kh wu₃ku  na-ñ  há = ?ntsú-k-ø
    3MS-DAT untying 1SG-DAT 3MS = be.heavy-REAL-STA
    ‘It is difficult for me to explain.’ Lit: its untying is heavy for me.
    (Context: refers to the words/meaning of a fable.)

(34) dād-ñ-s  há = du₃-f’-ab  ás-a  há = yèf-sù-k-ø
    child-DEF-M 3MS = hit-PASS-REL 3MS-ACC 3MS = cry-CAUS-REAL-STA
    ‘The beating of the child made him cry.’

4. Impersonal constructions

Impersonal constructions always are with masculine gender, irrespective of the gender of the subject in the embedded clause.

(35) n = taq-ñtá  há = 3aa₃-k-ø
    1PL = go-COND 3MS = be.good-REAL-STA
    ‘It is good if we go.’

(36) yì = yèg-øb  (t = á)  há = 3aa₃-k-ø
    3PS = come-REL COP = 3MS 3MS = be.good-REAL-STA
    ‘That she came is good.’

Weather verbs have an overt lexical subject with masculine gender and cannot be used to determine the default gender (37)-(38).
(37) **frú k’yrä=á-k**
    rain beat = 3MS-REAL
    ‘It rained.’ (Lit: the rain beat.)

(38) **gob kätjä saats’=á-k-ə**
    welkin yet lighten = 3MS-REAL-STA
    ‘It has already become light’

Likewise, the following causative ‘experiencer verbs’ are used mostly without subject causer nouns (39)-(40), but these subject nouns are optionally expressed, as in (41), and have masculine gender. For a discussion of experiencer verbs see section 12.4.

(39) **nata-ra wősk’=á-k-ə**
    1SG-ACC be.tired.CAUS = 3MS-REAL-STA
    ‘I am tired.’

(40) **nata há=kāž-ŋ-s-kl-k-ə**
    1SG 3SG = be.glad-MIDD-CASUS-exist-REAL
    ‘I am glad’

(41) **káážä nata há=kāž-ŋ-s-kl-k-ə**
    gladness 1SG 3SG = be.glad-MIDD-CASUS-exist-REAL-STA
    ‘I am glad’

5. Subject clauses are masculine even if their subject is feminine
   A subject clause, as exemplified in (42), is a headless relative clauses. Even if the subject of such a clause is feminine, the clause still triggers masculine agreement on the verb (43)-(42).

(42) **nata n = yag-əb āŋgā-bàbà bàzã**
    1SG 1SG = come-REL much-father work
    há = bàzò-fù-m-ə
    3MS = work-CAUS-IRR-STA
    ‘My coming could create a lot of work.’
6. Ambi-gender words are treated as masculine when the sex of the referent is unknown or irrelevant.

(44) dādū yēg=ā-k-ə
child come = 3MS-REAL-STI
‘A child came.’

If the referent should be identified as feminine, the verbal subject clitic has feminine agreement:

(45) dādū yēg=f-k-ə
child come = 3FS-REAL-STI
‘A girl came.’

The above are all reasons to analyse masculine as the default gender in Sheko.

5.3.2 Gender semantics
Feminine gender is associated with diminutive, as in (46b).

(46) a. kāntă jēn=ā-k
basket bad = 3MS-REAL
‘the basket is bad’

b. kāntă jēn=f-k
basket bad = 3FS-REAL
‘the little basket is bad’

Masculine gender is neutral, i.e. it is not associated with bigness. However, masculinity is. In the compound in (47), bāābū ‘male, man’ refers to big size.

(47) tyārbū bāābū ‘largest-sized drum’

The noun õtē with feminine gender denotes ‘cow’, whereas with masculine gender it denotes ‘cattle’ (48).
(48) a. ő < y > t-ń
  \( \text{cow} <{}^{\text{F}} > -{}^{\text{DEF}} \)

b. őt-ń-s
  \( \text{cow-DEF-M} \)

‘the cow’

‘the cattle’

gender switch for a trickster

The example below comes from a trickster story, in which the cock, the main character, gets rid of several of his helpers in order to take the plunder of their trip for himself. Throughout the story the cock is referred to by ordinary masculine agreement, as shown in the first clause. In the final trick, he persuades the rat to stay on the front yard with a piece of fat on his head; and then a bird of prey seizes the fat and the rat. When he plots the trick to get rid of the rat, the cock is referred to by feminine agreement. The storyteller could not explain why he switched the gender.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{há} &= \text{kōōb-ń-s} & \text{k’ay-tə} & \ldots & \text{yf} &= \text{k’ay-tə} & \text{yín} \\
3\text{MS} &= \text{cock-DEF-M} & \text{rise-SS} & \text{3FS} &= \text{rise-SS} & \text{DIST.F} \\
\text{ń} &= \text{báf} & \text{ń} &= \text{gya=ń} & \text{sām-bāb} & \text{kōb-tə} \\
1\text{PL} &= \text{slaughter} & 1\text{PL} &= \text{chew} = 1\text{PL} & \text{remain.IRR-father take-SS} \\
\text{ń} &= \text{ńf-ă-m-ə} & \text{yf} &= \text{ge-t=f} & \text{maad-ń} \\
1\text{PL} &= \text{go-put-I RR- STR} & 3\text{FS} &= \text{say-SS} = 3\text{FS} & \text{deceive-DS} \\
\text{ń} &= \text{ńf-ă-m-ə} & \text{yf} &= \text{ge-t=f} & \text{maad-ń} \\
1\text{PL} &= \text{go-put-I RR- STR} & 3\text{FS} &= \text{say-SS} = 3\text{FS} & \text{deceive-DS} \\
\end{align*}
\]

‘the cock rose and... she rose and saying “Let’s slaughter this one, let’s eat it and we will take the remaining ones and go,” she deceived (the rat);...’

5.3.3 Terminal vowel, gender and lexical gender

The final vowel of nouns is labelled terminal vowel. The term suggests that these vowels are not or were not part of the root. Indications for a special status of the terminal vowel include: 1) only a subset of the vowel qualities appear in this position; 2) there is variation in realisation of the terminal vowel; 3) the vowel is deleted in certain conditions; 4) the vowel is linked to functions such as gender marking; 5) it is impossible to reconstruct the terminal vowel (Hayward 2001).

Not all Omotic languages have nouns with terminal vowels. The well-known case of Benchon shows a language in which almost all nouns are monosyllabic instead of having a
disyllabic shape with a terminal vowel. It is often suggested that Benchnon lost its terminal vowel and compensated for it by extra tonal contrasts (Breeze 1990; Wedekind 1985b).

With respect to the issue of terminal vowels, Bender (2000:215) has noticed that Majoid languages too have a large proportion of nouns ending in a consonant rather than a terminal vowel. Rapold (2006:202) remarks that this is an areal feature linking Benchnon and Majoid. Bender (2007:737) also names Oyda, Basketo, Ganjule and Dime as having part of the lexicon without terminal vowels. Mulugeta (2008:41) divides nouns in Dime into nouns with and without a terminal vowel. Some Dime nouns allow variation in the terminal vowel without a change of meaning. For Sheko, I estimate the number of nouns ending in a consonant around ten percent. The preferred structure for nouns in Sheko is disyllabic. I have not noticed doubt of speakers about the presence or absence of terminal vowels in isolation. In a few cases, there is some variation in the terminal vowel.

(50) \textsc{wúrt'sú} \sim \textsc{wúrt'sá} \quad \text{‘tadpole’}  
\textsc{bá.ú} (\sim \textsc{bá.á} (Gf.)) \quad \text{‘belly, stomach’}  
\textsc{húmtf'á} \sim \textsc{húmtf'í} \quad \text{‘midrib of ensete leaf’}  
\textsc{súmá} \quad \sim \textsc{súmú} \quad \text{‘name’} (\sim \text{Amh})  
\textsc{góbsà} \sim \textsc{góbsù} \quad \text{‘grain sp.’} (\sim \text{Amh})  
\textsc{bázi} \quad \sim \textsc{bázu} \quad \text{‘monkey (Sykes’ monkey?)’}

Furthermore, borrowings usually acquire an extra vowel at the end. This vowel is often -\textit{i}, but the motivation for it is not known.

(51) \textsc{mëngísti} \quad \text{‘government’} \sim \textsc{mëngist} (Amh)  
\textsc{mabt} \quad \text{‘right’} \sim \textsc{máb} (Amh)  
\textsc{kömptétí} \quad \text{‘computer’} \sim \text{(English/Amh)}  
\textsc{astądáderu} \quad \text{‘administrator’} \sim \textsc{astádádár + -u DEF} (Amh)

In contrast to Sheko, more than half of the nouns in Diizi occur without terminal vowel, but informants may pronounce or not pronounce a terminal vowel at different times, according to Beachy (2005:55-56).
The terminal vowel of nouns in Sheko is either i, a or u or ŋ (syllabic nasal).

(52) **küki** ‘tree sp.’
    **úkà** ‘hat’
    **kúkú** ‘plant sp.’
    **túkà** ‘hole’

It has been suggested that the terminal vowel bears a relation to gender. Aklilu (1988:51) stated that feminine nouns end in i, and masculine nouns in u or a consonant. This generalisation is indeed useful for kinship terms and other lexical gender pairs. An overview of lexical gender pairs and some kinship terms is given in (53)-(56) below. All feminine counterparts have a terminal vowel i, or final glide y, except **baara** ‘young woman’. For masculine nouns, the majority end in -u, but some end in a. Besides, the pattern -u for masculine and -i for feminine lexical gender pairs is attested in Nai as well, according to Aklilu (1994a:602).

(53)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>M</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bāābā</td>
<td>‘father’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāābū</td>
<td>‘male’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>náámú</td>
<td>‘elder brother’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nyākú</td>
<td>‘young man’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nāsā</td>
<td>‘husband’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bātja</td>
<td>‘paternal uncle’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kōmtū</td>
<td>‘king’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zēgū</td>
<td>‘ox’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kōobū</td>
<td>‘cock’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>F</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bāy, bēy, bāy</td>
<td>‘mother’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāy</td>
<td>‘woman, female’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nīfī</td>
<td>‘elder sister’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāārā</td>
<td>‘young woman’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bāyḥ</td>
<td>‘wife’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?yāmī</td>
<td>‘paternal aunt’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēbe</td>
<td>‘queen’³²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ōtī</td>
<td>‘cow’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kūṭī</td>
<td>‘chicken’ Gf. kōybīn</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some words do not form pairs, but have inherent gender as well, such as **ūkā** ‘maternal uncle’ (cf. maternal aunt: bāy ‘mother’).

(54)  

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>k’ēmti</td>
<td>‘co-wife’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kōótī</td>
<td>‘mother-in-law’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kāmdī</td>
<td>‘cow which has borne a calf often’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

³² Judging from the tone, this word is a compound with be ‘mother’ as the second part. According to one consultant, the basis for the derivation is gībi ‘housewife’.
Other kinship terms are ambivalent for gender. The referent can be masculine or feminine. These nouns have default masculine gender agreement. Note that only some words have a terminal vowel u. uzi ‘firstborn’ even has a terminal vowel i.

(55)  

bádù ‘younger sibling’  
dădû ‘child’  
tʃ’aːrù ‘twin’  
ākā ‘grandparent’ cf. āygn ‘the grandmother’  
gōmā ‘age mate’  
z[y]āːmā ‘in-law’  
toːz ‘relative’  
uzi ‘firstborn’

A gender distinction of animals can be indicated by placing bābû ‘man, male’ or bay ‘woman, female’ after the noun. (For the change in tone, see section 9.1.)

(56)  
a. kyâñũ bâbû ‘male dog’  
zînâ bâbû ‘male leopard’  
b. kyâñũ bay ‘female dog’  
zînâ bay ‘female leopard’

When other feminine nouns outside the kinship terms or inherent gender pairs are taken into consideration, the generalisation that feminine nouns end in i does not hold. Example (58) illustrates the other nouns which trigger feminine agreement.\(^{13}\)

(57)  

ṭyânts’ā ‘bee’  
dâwâ ‘deer’  
tûtû ‘vulture’ (female character in stories)  
bârkây ‘grivet’ (female character in stories)  
ṣûn ‘life’  
tûn ‘spring’

\[^{13}\] The feminine words in this section are all the underived feminine words in my data set.
Even though the majority of feminine nouns has a terminal vowel i, as shown in (53) and (55), the reverse does not hold: many inanimate nouns with a terminal vowel i have not feminine gender but masculine gender (as is evident from verb agreement). A few examples are given in (59).

(58) tītī ‘back’
gōrī ‘head’
ūtsī ‘fly’
tārtī ‘butterfly’
kāṭī ‘yam’
fūffī ‘storm, hurricane’
geēnī ‘gourd with long neck’

As the following table shows, masculine and feminine words have similar terminal vowels and can both end in a consonant. Only underived feminine words ending in a syllabic nasal have not been attested.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M</th>
<th>F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-u</td>
<td>gōgū ‘tortoise’</td>
<td>tūtū ‘vulture’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-i</td>
<td>jātī ‘maize’</td>
<td>nīnī ‘sister’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-a</td>
<td>kūūrā ‘donkey’</td>
<td>?yants’ā ‘bee’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-C</td>
<td>tūūm ‘mountain’</td>
<td>tūūn ‘spring’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-n</td>
<td>sekh ‘bird sp.’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3. Terminal vowels for both genders

Some words have inherent feminine definiteness-gender marking, i.e. even when asking for isolated words in elicitation the definiteness-gender marking is not shed.

(59) jōyā ‘bird sp.’
kōybrī ‘elk’
dyäyp’rī ‘tree sp.’
bāārīn ‘star’
kāyṛī ‘sun (disc)’

Outside the domain of terminal vowels, -i is generally associated with grammatical feminine gender in noun morphology and -u with masculine (in some plural nouns), as is shown in section 5.4.1.
5.3.4 Gender in terms of address

A group of twelve kinship terms has a special tone pattern when used as term of address. The tone pattern differs for male and female relatives. Usually, these ‘vocatives’ are accompanied by a first person possessor suffix. In this special environment, the possessor suffix carries the tone of the vocative rather than its own tone. Normally, the vocative is further followed by the indirect stance marker -o, although it is not obligatory (see section 10.2 on stance).

The common vocative tone pattern for male relatives is 4.1, as shown in example (61). The pattern for female relatives is 1.3, see example (62). Only níní ‘elder sister’ pairs with ‘elder brother’ and gets a 4.1 melody. The noun zyāmā ‘in-law’ gets a pattern all of its own. In addition, a good friend can be called with the form found in (64), which patterns with female relatives.

(60) ūkā ‘maternal uncle’ ūkñ-o ‘oh my uncle’
ākā ‘grandfather’ ākñ-o ‘oh my grandfather’
bāṭţā ‘paternal uncle’ bāṭţñ-o ‘oh my uncle’
náānû ‘elder brother’ nánñ-o ‘oh my brother’
níní ‘elder sister’ nínñ-o ‘oh my sister’
bāābā ‘father’ bābñ-o ‘oh my father’

(61) byname ‘paternal aunt’ byname-o ‘oh my aunt’
bāy ‘mother’ bāy-o ‘oh mother’
byname ‘grandmother’byname-o ‘oh my grandmother’
k’emtû ‘co-wife’ k’èmtû-o ‘oh co-wife’

(62) zyāmā ‘in-law’ zyāmā-o ‘oh in-law’

(63) yááb ‘person, man’ yábñ-o ‘oh my friend’

Apart from the above terms of address, there are two vocative pronouns: nna ‘you (m)’ and nnya ‘you (f)’, which are described in section 6.1.1 on pronouns. Other kinship terms, animals or other nouns have no special tone melody and keep their normal pattern. The indirect stance marker -o is normally suffixed.
(64) 'àap'û ‘nephew’  àap’û-o ‘oh my nephew’
gebe ‘queen’  gebe-o ‘oh my queen’
yááb ‘person, man’  yááb-o ‘oh man’
oði  ‘cow’  oði-o ‘oh cow’

Nouns modified by definiteness-gender marking prefix the possessor affix.

(65)  bááðù ‘younger sibling’
mbaad-ð-s-o
1SG.POSS-younger.sibling-DEF-M-STL.ADDR
‘oh my sibling’

In addressing people by their name or title, one of the stance suffixes, -o ‘indirect’ or -a ‘direct’, is frequently added after nouns and proper names. On nouns it is -o (67)-(68). On proper names -o is common but sometimes -a is used (69). There is no gender distinction.

(66)  ñ-kōmt-o  hāäy  ñ = ás-ka  ñfð-t-báb
1SG.POSS-king-STL.ADDR  water  1SG = 3MS-WITH  fetch-IRR-father
ñ-dátà  hāák’astà  káy-a  yí = ge-k-á
1SG.POSS-near.LOC  now  be.NOT-STI  3PS = SAY-REAL-STI

‘She said: “Oh my lord, right now I haven’t something with which I can fetch water.”’

(67)  fyáánú-o  gúúrú  3f = ge-ta  3f = ?ós̄kù-k
frog-STL.ADDR  only  3PL = SAY-3S  3PL = CALL-REAL

‘They only called saying ‘Hey frog!’.’

(68)  dâniyər-a  p’et’rös-a  yég-ʃt
Daniel-STD  Pexres-STD  come-PL.ADDR

‘Hey Daniel! Hey Peter! Come!’

If someone calls for his/ her mother, when the first call does not lead to a reaction the second call is often without -o. This is less polite and the calling child may be impatient for a reaction.
(69)  m-bā-y-o  ...  bā-y
1SG.POSS-mother.VOC-STL.ADDR  mother.VOC

‘Oh my mother... mother!’

5.3.5  Gender in nouns and adjectives

Gender is marked morphologically when a noun is made definite and when an adjective is derived from a verb by definiteness-gender marking. Definiteness-gender marking consists of the definiteness marker -ā and a gender affix. The terminal vowel of a noun is dropped before the syllabic nasal of the definiteness marker. Masculine (default) gender is indicated by a suffix -s and feminine gender by an infix <i>. Some examples of nouns are given in (71). Details of the processes involved in definiteness-gender marking can be found in section 5.2.1.

(70)  noun  definite masc.  definite fem.
      dādū ‘child’  dād-ā-n ‘the boy’  dā<y>g-ā-n ‘the girl’
      sāzā ‘beetle’  sāz-ā-n ‘the beetle’  sā<y>z-ā-n ‘the beetle’
      fyāá-n ‘frog’  fyāá-n ‘the frog’  fyā<y>n ‘the frog’

Adjectives are derived from verbs by suffixing the gender-definiteness marker to the verb stem (section 7.2.1). Feminine gender can be derived in exactly the same way as with nouns.

(71)  verb  adjective (m)  adjective (f)
      3áá-z ‘be good’  3áá-z-ā-n ‘good’  3á<y>ż-ā-n ‘good’
      sū ‘be red’  sū-ā-n ‘red’  sū<y>b-ā-n ‘red’
      ńūk ‘be sweet’  ńūk-ā-n ‘sweet’  ńūk<y>b-ā-n ‘sweet’

In addition, a small group of nouns suffixes a gender marker when the noun refers to a plural referent. This group consists of nouns ending in a consonant. Masculine is indicated by the suffix -ū (73) and feminine by the suffix -i (74), followed by the default gender marker -s. Note that there is no morpheme which indicates plurality per se. If the noun ends in a terminal vowel, only the default gender marker -s is suffixed (75). The great majority of nouns ends in a terminal vowel, but there are some nouns which end in a consonant.
(72) ááb ‘fruit’ ááb-ù-s ‘fruits’
yááb ‘man, person’ yááb-ù-s ‘men’
šóź ‘snake’ šóź-ù-s ‘snakes’

(73) túń ‘spring’ túń-l-s ‘springs’
šūń ‘life’ šūń-l-s ‘lifes’

(74) bārā ‘young woman’ (f) bārā-s ‘women’
nyākū ‘young man’ (m) nyākū-s ‘young men’
bááði ‘younger sibling’ (m) bááði-s ‘siblings’
kāṭī ‘yam’ (m) kāṭī-s ‘yams’
uīṅ ‘rat’ (m) uīṅ-s ‘rats’
(def. sg. formally identical)

5.3.6 Gender in demonstratives

In demonstratives, default gender is marked by -z (for masculine and plural referents) and feminine gender is marked by -nī (for feminine referents).

(75) hàà-z ‘this, these M’ yī-z ‘that, those M’
 hàà-nī ‘this, F’ yī-nī ‘that F’

Here are two sentential examples:

(76) göōsū hàà-z wūt = á-k-ɔ calabash PROX-M fall = 3MS-REAL-STM
 ‘This calabash has fallen.’

(77) bāy é-k-l-nī itī tə woman there-LCT-DIST-F who OOP[O]
 ‘Who is that woman over there?’

5.3.7 Gender in relative clauses

Relative clauses are marked by the relative clause marker -āb ~ -āb when the referent of the clause is masculine (79) or plural (80). In relative clauses with a feminine referent, the marking is ābe ~ ābe (81). Because of the tone 2 on the final syllable, it is assumed that be derives from ‘mother’.
(78) ｇोङ nata t๐-k-ə há-ge-b sàm
snake 1SG COP-REAL-STI 3MS-say-REF remain:DS
‘The snake who said “It’s me” remained behind;...’

(79) ahkan sàm-əb fyānū-s-kh ʒéenj ki-ıt-ə
here remain-REL frog-PL-DAT well exist-PL.ADDR-STI
ge-ta...
say-SS
‘(she) said “stay well!” to the frogs who remained there and...’

(80) gōnà jì-ka dànn-tə há = ṭày-əbe
yesterday 3FS-WITH be.together-SS 3MS = dance-REL.mother
bàrnh-ora ha = see-kl
maiden,F.DEF-ACC 2SG = see.NV-exist.[q]
‘Do you see the girl with whom he danced yesterday?’

Relativised adjectives are marked identically:

(81) frãd-ŋ-s-ðb-ora na-ŋ ats-o
be,long-DEF-M-REL-ACC 1SG-DAT give-STI
‘Give me the long one(s) (m/pl)!’

(82) túńn bànn-ə ʒéen-be
spring PROX-F be.good,F-DEF-REL.mother
“This spring is a good one (ŋ)!’

5.3.8 A gender mismatch in compounds
bāb ‘father’ and bé ‘mother’ are frequently used as second element of compounds. Among others, they form ‘possessor of’ nouns (section 5.5.5). The ‘mismatch’ between masculine (default) and feminine gender appears when constructions with bāb ‘father’ and bé ‘mother’ as second element are made definite. When bāb ‘father’ is made definite, the compound becomes ungrammatical; instead, bé ‘mother’ plus masculine definiteness-gender marking is used. Thus in (84) below the odd one out is the masculine definite form in (b).

(83) a. əkī bāb b. əkī bey-ŋ-s
money father money mother-DEF-M
‘rich man’ ‘the rich man’
c. ēkī be
     money mother
     ‘rich woman’

d. ēkī bey-ē
     money mother, F-DEF
     ‘the rich woman’

Below, two sentential examples are given. Sentence (85) illustrates definiteness with feminine gender, sentence (86) with masculine gender. Evidently, the meaning of bé ‘mother’ is sufficiently bleached in this context to allow masculine gender agreement.

(84) ūntśū hà-ní tīrā bey-ē tə-k-ə
     wood PROX-F shadow mother, F-DEF COP-REAL-STI
     ‘This tree here is shadow-giving.’

(85) aśtū bey-ē-s kōm-s-əra há = gasku-k-ə
     dinking mother-DEF-M chief. DEF-M-ACC 3MS = insult-REAL-STI
     ‘The drunkard insulted the chief.’

The case given above is the only place in the Sheko language where feminine gender (bé ‘mother’) is used with both feminine and masculine nouns. Is it a trace of a historical shift from feminine to masculine as the default gender? Alternatively, the gender mismatch could just be an idiosyncracy in compounding. On the other hand, compounds may keep old morphological possibilities which are lost or regularized elsewhere in the languages, due to their conceptualization as single word constituents. Another possible trace for such a shift is reported for Benchnon, the geographical neighbor of Sheko. In Benchnon, the present-day default gender is masculine, but the plural demonstratives are more similar to the feminine gender than to the masculine (Rapold 2006:389). While it may be imprudent to draw conclusions from such small facts, they may contribute to the discussion about gender in (Proto-)Omotic. The gender situation for Proto-Omotic is not clear, since present-day Omotic languages vary in their treatment of gender. For some languages, gender is reported to be non-grammatical, i.e. only some words display inherent gender based on biological distinctions (Bender et al. 1976:36). Other languages have feminine gender as a default gender, e.g. Maale (Azeb 2001a:45) and Zayse (Hayward
1990b:248), whereas yet others, like Sheko, have masculine gender as default gender.

5.3.9 Third person gender distinction
In this section, pronouns and other referential suffixes are discussed in relation to gender only. For the full picture see chapter 6.

The independent subject pronouns are given in (87).

(86) nata ‘I’    náta ‘we’
yeta ‘you’    ítí ‘you (plural)’
áz ‘he’    ífi ‘they’
f3 ‘she’

From the above list, it is clear that gender is only distinguished in the third person singular. However, it is possible to express gender with a second person singular by using an additional demonstrative (88). Furthermore, the vocative pronouns distinguish gender (89).

(87) hà-ní yeta fikàb-tà yòg-wà
    PROX-F 2SG podium-LOC come-STI
    ‘You here (female) come to the podium!’

(88) nna ‘hey you (m)
    ñnya ‘hey you (f)’

In possessor prefixes and in subject coindexing clitics on verbs, gender is again only distinguished in the third person singular. The examples below illustrate both. For more information, see section 6.1.1.

(89) há-fèmà bàrt’jú=á-k-wà
    3MS.POSS-cloth wash = 3MS-REAL-STI
    ‘He has washed his clothing.’

(90) yí-fèmà bàrt’jú=f-k-wà
    3FS.POSS-cloth wash = 3FS-REAL-STI
    ‘She has washed her clothing.’
5.4 Number

Number is partially marked on nouns. When the default gender marker -s occurs without definiteness marker, reference is made to a plural referent. The marker -s occurs with gender suffixes -ù (m) and -ì (f) in some cases. Plural formation excludes definiteness marking. Nouns can also suffix the associative plural marker -onka, which occurs mostly with kinship terms.

Demonstratives do not mark number, as the default gender marker serves for masculine singular as well as for plural referents. The same is true for the nominalizer bāāb ‘father’. Neither do relative clauses mark plurality of the referent. A relative clause with a referent which is masculine or plural is marked with -āb, (allomorphs -āb ～ -b) and a relative clause with a feminine referent is marked by -ābe (allomorphs -ābe ～ -be). This is illustrated in (92)-(94). Thus, relative clause marking does not distinguish number.

(91) ṇ-noogù-ra t’ùs-āb yaab ta-h

1SG.POSS-word-ACC know-REL man COP-DS

‘it is a man who knows my issues...’

(92) sāāyā màāk-ābe dēy-g-̀h yàg=f-k-è

fable tell-REL.mother child.f-DEF come =3FS-REAL-STI

‘The girl who told a story has come.’

(93) màn-dār-k’à kāās-kl-b dàws sòkù-ka

village(Amb)-IN play-exist-REL children Sheko-WITH

|f| = nòn-kl-k-è

3PL = talk-exist-REAL-STI

‘The children who play in the village speak Sheko.’

Adjectives can indicate plurality of referents by reduplication.

Furthermore, 1PL, 2PL and 3PL persons are distinguished in the paradigms of pronouns, verbal subject clitics and possessor affixes on nouns.
Indication of plurality of a referent is pragmatic in nouns and adjectives, i.e. plural marking is only used in contexts where the speaker wants to refer explicitly to more than one referent. An unmarked noun or adjective can refer to one or more referents depending on the context.

5.4.1 Number and gender in nouns

The relation between gender and number is discussed immediately above as well as in section 5.1. To reiterate what has been said so far, the ‘singular’ definite form as well as the unmarked form are in fact transnumeral, i.e. these forms can refer to one or more referents (Biermann 1982).

Example (95) gives some nouns referring to single entities. Evidence for transnumeralty is given in examples (96)-(97) and (98), where it is clear from the context that there are several stones involved, since they are piled, and many feathers. The examples show that unmarked as well as definite nouns can refer to more than one referent.

(94) \( yí = tòs-àb \) \( tòsà \) \( nà́mù-ka \)

\( 3^{	ext{fs}} = \text{storytell-REL story} \) \( \text{elder.brother-COOR} \)

\( báádù-ka \) \( è́jìá \) \( hà́=màákù-ka \)

\( \text{younger.brother-COOR} \) \( \text{MOTIVE} \) \( 3^{	ext{ms}} = \text{tell-REAL-STI} \)

‘The story that she told tells about an elder and a younger brother.’

(95) \( jë́̃-rã \) \( hàaku-tɔ \) \( yè́b-̀n-s \) \( ?yàn-ŋ-s-ɔ-kà \)

\( \text{stone-ACC} \) \( \text{pick-ss} \) \( \text{man-DEF-M} \) \( \text{pot-DEF-M-IN} \)

\( gòom-tɔ \)

\( \text{pile-ss} \)

‘she picked stones and stacked them in the man’s pot...’

(96) \( jë́̃̃-ñ̃̃ \) \( báákù-tà-bàb \) \( yi̱s \) \( dufu-tɔ \)

\( \text{stone-DEF-M} \) \( \text{firestones-LOC-father} \) \( \text{DIST.M} \) \( \text{hit-ss} \)

\( á́s-a \) \( gyè́w- bàr-ñ \)

\( 3^{	ext{ms-ACC}} \) \( \text{chew-throw.away-DIS} \)

‘... those stones above the fire struck and finished him off...’
(97) íⱢ hán̕hán̕n̕úbe bîy-əra yaafu-tə
3PS bird.of.prey.mother feather-ACC find-ss
p'úc'a kóy-tə ... hán̕hán̕n̕úbe
many.ELAT bring-ss bird.of.prey.mother
bîy-ə-s-a ás-kə ãts-ə
feather-DEF-M-ACC 3MS-DAT give-DS
'she found feathers of a hán̕hán̕n̕úbe bird and brought a lot and (...) and gave the bird’s feathers to him;...'

The word ñ.ncbi ‘cow’ can also refer to ‘cattle’ and yáəb ‘man, person’ likewise can refer to ‘men’ or ‘people’.

(98) ń-otl-ra hâ=wünk'-tt'-ub êj̃tə
1PL.POSS-cow-ACC 3MS=stpl-PASS-REL MOTIVE
hâ=ts'yašt'ú-kə
3MS = the.PASS-REAL-STI
‘He was imprisoned because of his stealing our cattle.’

(99) yáəb mändär kaari ḣî=k'ôr-t'-ə-m-ə
man village(Amb) towards 3PL = beg-PASS-IRR-STI
‘People/men from the neighborhood will be asked.’

Plurality of referents can be indicated in the following way:

To form a plural, the default gender marker for nouns -s is suffixed to the noun (due to sibilant harmony rules it may change to -ʃ or -ʂ). If there is no definiteness marker, the noun refers to a plural referent. Thus, definiteness marking and plural marking exclude each other. N.B. If the noun ends in a syllabic nasal, the distinction between a definite masculine and a plural form disappears.

(100) unmarked plural definite
ʔyants'ə 'bee' (f) ʔyants'ə-s 'bees' ʔyayh ‘the bee’
kóbtʃə ‘roof beam’ kóbtʃə-ʃ ‘roofbeams’ kóbtʃəj ‘the roofbeam’
góydu ‘gueraza’ góydu-s ‘guerezas’ góydu-h-ə ‘the gueraza’
kōŋi ‘field’ kōŋi-ʃ ‘fields, the field’
gúfə ‘porcupine’ gúfə-ʃ ‘porcupines, the porcupine’
In addition, a small group of nouns ending in a consonant takes a gender suffix when the noun refers to a plural referent. Masculine (default) is indicated by the suffix -ǜ and feminine by the suffix -i (102), followed by the default gender marker -s.

\[(101) \quad \text{unmarked} \quad \text{plural} \quad \text{definite} \]

\begin{tabular}{lll}
\text{tóóz} & ‘relative’ & tóóz-ụ-s & ‘relatives’ & tóózụ̀s & ‘the relative’ \\
\text{bày} & ‘mother’ & bày-ị-s & ‘mothers’ & bàyị̀ & ‘the mother’ \\
\end{tabular}

Morphologically, Sheko makes a three-way distinction, where logically there are four possibilities (singular indefinite and definite as well as plural indefinite and definite referents). The glosses in (101) and (102) reflect only the first intuitive translation. In context, however, different translations may be possible, since definiteness and number are not obligatorily marked. This is illustrated for definiteness in section 5.2.2 (see example (19)) and for number in this section (see examples (96)-(98) above). Thus, the unmarked form covers all four logically possible referents, the form marked for definiteness covers all definite referents and the third form covers all plural referents.

Mass nouns can form a plural like other nouns. In the case of mass nouns, reference is made to a quantity of X or a number of containers full of X.

\[(102) \quad \text{ûk’ụ} \quad ‘milk’ \quad \text{ûk’ụ-s} \quad ‘some litres/tins of milk’ ~ \text{tákà} \quad ‘mead’ \quad \text{tákà-s} \quad ‘some litres/bottles of mead’ \quad \text{yéngi} \quad ‘firewood’ \quad \text{yéngi-s} \quad ‘some bundles of firewood’ \]

The noun ‘child’ has an irregular plural dāws ~ dūōs ‘children’, next to a regular plural form dādu-ụ ‘child’ has also slightly irregular definite forms: dād-ị-ụ ~ dēd-ị-s ‘the boy’ and dāyŋi ~ dēgŋ̃ ‘the girl’.

Plurality is not indicated on the noun when a quantifier follows the noun.
(103) dâdû  p’ûtjá  ŋ=nyàas-ŋ
child  many  1sg=give.birth-ds
‘I have given birth to many children;...’

The other Majoid languages Diizi and Nayi have some plural markers with a k formative, unlike Sheko. Diizi has an optional plural marker -(a)ke as well as a marker k’apkaz (Beachy 2005:60f). In Nayi, there is a plural marker -kis, which is suffixed to nouns and adjectives when the referent is plural (105). Furthermore, -kis is part of pronouns with plural referents (106), (Aklilu 1994a:602-607).

(104) a. dôdô  ‘boy’    dôdû-kis  ‘boys’
yâb  ‘person’    yâb-kis  ‘persons’

b. got’n-is-kis
white-def-pl
‘the whites (m)’

cf. got’n ‘become white’

(105) nà  ‘I’
yeta  ‘you’
isi  ‘he’
ifi  ‘she’

nákis  ‘we’
ftkis  ‘you (pl)’
?ujku  ‘they’

5.4.2 Associative plural

There is an associative plural suffix -onka. An epenthetic glide w is inserted if the suffix follows a terminal vowel. Some speakers have a variant -(n)onko. The suffix is mainly used with kinship terms.

The last syllable -ka of the associative plural marker -onka is formally similar to the coordinator -ka ‘and’. It may be dropped when (dative) case marking is suffixed.

(106) inj-àku-won-kñ  gâtsñ-ki-b
3pl.poss-grandfather-ass-dat  help-exist-rel

nááan-onka  tñ-kñ
elder,brother-ass  cop-real-sti

‘Those who help their grandparents are the elder brothers.’
Semantically, -onka can denote plurality, i.e. two or more of the entity, but also ‘acquaintance’ i.e. the entity and those associated with it (108)-(109). The associative plural can also be attached to the question word iti ‘who’ (110).

(107) m-bayd-à-onka-ra 

\[1SG.POSS\text{-younger.sibling.F-DEF-ASS-ACC}\] 

n-see-k-à 

\[1SG.NEVT-ASS\] 

‘I saw my little sisters.’

‘I saw my little sister(s) and those associated with her.’

(108) m-bàyù-onko yí-dàta 

\[1SG.POSS\text{-wife-ASS}\] 

tee-feej-tà 

\[3FS.POSS\text{-near.LOC go.NEVt-ASS-SS}\] 

‘My wife and her friends spent the day with her and...’

‘My wifes...’

(109) p'et'ros-onka iti-wonka kááy=ifi-k-à 

\[Pexros-ASS\] 

\[WHO-ASS\] 

\[be.not = 3PL.NEVt-ASS\] 

‘Peter and his companions, who else, they were not present.’

Younger people seem to be more liberal in their use of -onka; it may be suffixed to nouns that do not refer to human beings (e.g. géék'ùwonka 'goats'). This was not accepted by elder language consultants. Nevertheless, one youngster said even wuk'yanos-onka ‘oceans’ spontaneously when talking about names of countries, rivers and oceans on a globe (< Amh wuk'yanos 'ocean').

According to some speakers, -s and -onka can be combined after some nouns as shown in the last line of (111). However, the language consultants did not agree on what difference in meaning it could give, neither for which words the combination is possible.

(110) báádù ‘younger sibling’

báád-onka ‘younger siblings’

báádù-s ‘younger siblings’

báádù-s-onka ‘younger siblings’
5.4.3 Adjectives and plurality

Adjectives can indicate plurality by reduplication. Either the initial CV or the stem is reduplicated (112). Furthermore, adjectives can add the relative clause marker ˒ ámb and then either follow the pattern of relative clauses or reduplicate for plural reference (113).

(111) masculine feminine

SG sūb-m-s sū < y > b-m
    be.red-DEF-M    be.red < F > -DEF
    ‘red, red one’  ‘red, red one’

PL sū-sūb-m-s sū-sūyb-m
    PLUR-be.red-DEF-M PLUR-be.red.F-DEF
    ‘red, red ones’  ‘red, red ones’

~ sūb-sūb-m-s  ~ sūyb-sūyb-m

(112) f- البع-ح-م-ح man yaab yis tə
def-old-DEF-M-REL DIST.M COP

ōtī-ra kˈiitsˈu-an-ki-b
    cow-ACC  tie.cattle-put-exist-REL

‘It’s those old people who tying them were keeping cattle.’

Reduplication is also used with other word categories, denoting pluractionality (see section 3.3). Here is an example of verb reduplication:

(113) dimbēri sàskù-tə íntfù dárikˈus-dákˈus-tə
    boundary(Amh) arrive.CAUS-SS wood PLUR-chop.off.CAUS-SS

às-tə kaari íntfù bûtù-tə
    PROX.M-LOC toward wood throw-SS

‘...making a boundary, they chopped branches into pieces and threw the wood towards it...’

One day I asked a language informant how you could know whether someone meant a single or multiple referents when uttering (115). He said: ‘By looking, of course.’ Reduplication is not frequent and is probably only used when it is judged important in a certain context.
(114) jād-n-s-ēb-ora na-ŋ ats-ə
be.long-DEF-M-REL-ACC 1SG-DAT give-STI
‘Give me the long one(s)’

5.4.4 Number and person
Regarding number in pronouns, possessor affixes and subject clitics, it is noteworthy that the difference between first person singular and first person plural is purely tonal. The full independent pronouns are given here for convenience. For the affixes and clitics, see section 6.1.1.

(115) nata ‘I’ nāta ‘we’
yeta ‘you’ ĭtī ‘you plural’
āz ‘he’ ĭfī ‘they’
fʒ ‘she’

Additionally, there is a plural addressee marker -ft, which is clearly related to the second person plural morpheme. It occurs on imperatives:

(116) a. dúf
hit
‘Hit!’

b. dúf-ft
hit-PLADDR

5.5 Noun derivation and compounding

5.5.1 Verbal nominal
A verbal nominal form can be derived from all verbs by a final vowel -a and a characteristic 4.1 tone pattern.

(117) fin ‘descend’ finə ‘to descend’
kees ‘ascend’ kēēsə ‘to ascend’
tōg ‘go’ tōgə ‘to go’
duf ‘hit’ dúfə ‘to hit’
ōtʃ ‘ask’ ōtʃə ‘to ask’
bangar ‘return’ bangārə ‘to return’
fin-s ‘lower’ (caus) finsə ‘to lower’
The verbal nominal is used mostly to emphasize the activity denoted by the verb. It is provisionally glossed Inf for infinitive, but its status awaits further research. Examples (119)-(122) all have a cognate object construction with the verbal nominal. Note that some verbs have a cognate noun as well, e.g. ôskú ‘call’. These cognate nouns are discussed in section 5.5.2 below.

(118) ôskà  ƞ = ôsk-á  há = nata-ra  ƞy-k-a
    call-INF  1SG = call-DIS  3MS-1SG-ACC  deny-REAL-STI
    ‘I rang and rang but it refused me’ (Context: the phone was out of order.)

(119) isn-ôrâ  ha = kààf-rítà  k’éét’â  guúrû
    beehive-ACC  2SG = build-COND  swallow-INF  only
    t = á  k’éé’tü-to  há = tfôr-f-á-m  swallow-SS  3MS = finish-CAUS-put-IRR
    ‘if you build beehives (in a forest where a badger lives), he will only eat and finish.’ (Lit:...only eating it is that he eats and finishes.)

(120) tógà  ƞ = té-é-m  há = ge-á
    go-INF  1SG = go.NV-IRR  3MS = say-DIS
    ‘ “I will go,” he said...’ (Context: although warned not to go, a boy wants to go.)

(121) nat-nà  bôózà  m = bôôs-kí-k-a
    1SG-or.Q  walk-INF  1SG = walk-exist-REAL-STI
    ‘Me? I am just walking/taking a stroll.’ (Context: response to the question ‘Where are you going to?’)

Example (123) has a nominal with an object. However, its tone implies it is a noun rather than a verbal nominal like the ones illustrated in this section. There is partial overlap between verbal nominals and cognate nouns, since some cognate nouns ending in a have a 4.1 tone pattern as well, (as illustrated in section 5.5.2 immediately below).

(122) kútlí  búutš-â-rá  út-âr = f-kl-k-a
    chicken  plucking-ACC  like-NEG = 3FS-exist-REAL-STI
    ‘She doesn’t like the plucking of a chicken.’ / ‘...to pluck a chicken’ ?
### 5.5.2 Cognate verbs and nouns

Nouns which have cognate verbs may end in any of the attested terminal vowels, a, i, u, and syllabic nasal. They have one of the following tone patterns: 4.1, 4.4, 3.1, 3.3 or 2.1, and thus look like other ‘ordinary’ nouns, with the exception that pattern 1.3 is not attested so far. From the data available it is not possible to say which way the derivation goes. It is also not possible to predict the tone of the verb from the noun or the tone of the noun from the tone of the verb, although for H verbs, the corresponding noun does only rarely have 3.1 or 2.1 patterns.

Example (124) lists nouns with a terminal vowel a, example (125) those with i, example (126) those with u and example (127) those with a syllabic nasal.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun</th>
<th>verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gába</td>
<td>‘gossip’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kéwa</td>
<td>‘shout’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kófá</td>
<td>‘value’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>údgá</td>
<td>‘darkness’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gáská</td>
<td>‘insult’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>káázá</td>
<td>‘joy’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kóbtá</td>
<td>‘roof beam’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sááná</td>
<td>‘baldness’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>súá</td>
<td>‘rest, chapter’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>árá</td>
<td>‘brains, thought’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fírá</td>
<td>‘ululation’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bútšá</td>
<td>‘plucking’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dúufá</td>
<td>‘blow’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>káámá</td>
<td>‘flame’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kíšá</td>
<td>‘drink’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>níňá</td>
<td>‘kiss’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>óótfá</td>
<td>‘question’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>órá</td>
<td>‘wet dung’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>júufá</td>
<td>‘smell’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>súúmá</td>
<td>‘thirst’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wóótsá</td>
<td>‘bite’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>áášá</td>
<td>‘standing’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

búútsá ‘pluck (a chicken)’
dúufá ‘hit’
káámá ‘be lit’
kíšá ‘drink’
níňá ‘kiss’
óótfá ‘ask’
órá ‘urinate’
júufá ‘smell (of flowers)’
súúmá ‘be thirsty’
wóótsá ‘bite’
áášá ‘stand’
| bārā | ‘young woman’ | bārū | ‘become adult (f)’ |
| bōtā | ‘mortar’ | bōtū | ‘pound’ |
| k’ēdā | ‘oath’ | k’ēd | ‘swear’ |
| žārā | ‘song’ | žār | ‘sing’ |
| tōsā | ‘fable’ | tōs | ‘storytell’ |
| žynā | ‘desire, wish’ | žyn | ‘ponder, worry’ |
| oorā | ‘snare’ | oor | ‘set a snare’ |

(124) **noun**

| tš’ārl | ‘top ring’ | tš’ārl | ‘pin, nail’ |
| fādī | ‘number’ | faad | ‘count’ |
| nāāsī | ‘honor, praise’ | naas | ‘thank, honor’ |
| bōrī | ‘curse’ | bōr | ‘curse (revocable)’ |
| žānī | ‘judgment’ | žaa | ‘judge’ |
| k’ūdī | ‘stop’ | k’ud | ‘cover’ |
| žēnī | ‘gourd sp.’ | geen | ‘pour with cup’ |
| tš’ūusī | ‘knowledge’ | tš’ūus | ‘know’ |
| zūgī | ‘infertile’ | zūgī | ‘become infertile’ |
| māādī | ‘lie, deceit’ | mād | ‘deceive’ |
| ūtī | ‘love’ | ūt | ‘love’ |
| ayī | ‘dance’ | ay | ‘dance’ |

(125) **noun**

| bēgū | ‘payment’ | beg | ‘pay’ |
| fādū | ‘hunger’ | fādūs | ‘make hungry’ |
| gūtū | ‘strangling’ | gūtū | ‘strangle’ |
| nōgū | ‘matter, word’ | nōn | ‘talk’ |
| kārū | ‘strength’ | kārb | ‘be strong’ |
| hārkū | ‘taboo’ | hark | ‘respect a taboo’ |
| tš’ūdū | ‘saliva’ | tš’ud | ‘spit’ |
| ōgkū | ‘call’ | ōgk | ‘call’ |
| ūntsū | ‘heaviness’ | ūnts | ‘be heavy’ |
| ōrū | ‘urine’ | ōr | ‘urinate’ |
| ūgūkū | ‘weed’ | ūgūk | ‘weed’ |
| šōnk’ū | ‘lie’ | šōnk | ‘lie’ |
gätsù ‘start’
géétšù ‘laughter’
kääšù ‘game’
tüütšù ‘knot’
ts'āfù ‘writing’
bēezù ‘sprout’
nārrū ‘wind’
nyākū ‘young man’
šūbū ‘death’
tāājū ‘skirt of grass’
wünk'ū ‘theft’
insū ‘pregnancy’
daabù ‘creation’
diik'ū ‘ointment’
dookù ‘roasting’
gaap’ù ‘roasting’
koosù ‘divination’
yifjù ‘pulling’
ziitù ‘cross’
p'eeep’ù ‘prayer’
daab ‘create’
diik ‘anoint, paint’
dook ‘roast (uncooked)’
gap ‘roast with stones’
koos ‘divinate’
yif ‘pull out’
ziit ‘hang, crucify’
p'eeep ‘pray’

(126) noun

verb

gibmù ‘struggle’
gibm ‘struggle’
kuyšnù ‘drizzle’
kuyšn ‘drizzle’
tʃ’ābùm ‘stake, post’
tʃ’āb ‘plant a post’
tʃ’ādha ‘war’
tʃ’ād ‘fight’ (tʃ’ād ‘pierce’)

ząp’nù ‘lamp’
ʃàd ‘be long’
ʃūf ‘give off smell’
ʔyázi ‘ability’
dörh ‘race’
door ‘run’
görh ‘fear’
ʃor ‘be afraid’
kōšn ‘farmland’  
kooš ‘farm, till’

sip’ām ‘awl’  
siip’ ‘sew’  

ʔyarkh ‘sweat’  
ʔyārkḥ ‘sweat’

Some nouns are built on the passive stem (128), some others on the causative stem (129).

(127) furt’a ‘order’  
furt ‘obey’  
kī ‘life’  
ki ‘exist, live’

mánt’tā ‘braid’  
mán ‘braid hair’

umt’a ‘food’  
úmer ‘eat’

(128) aṭmī ‘exercise’  
āṭnī ‘get used to’

goğl’nsi ‘decoration’  
goğnī ‘decorate’

k’ābūs.l ‘order’  
k’ābūs ‘make obey, order’

t’ēp’sū ‘load’  
t’ēp ‘carry’

āyśū ‘gestation’  
āy ‘be covered’

Here are a few example sentences with some of the listed nouns:

(129) ā-kōd’āsū  
yis
I.PL.POSS-divination  
DIST.M

‘This is our divination, these are our traditional practices.’

(130) wünk’-ā-ḥā = gōθn-s-k-ə
theft-DEF-M-ACC  
3MS-be.far.MID-CUS-REAL-STI

‘He condemned the theft.’

(131) bāəārə  
batā  
ōtj’ā  
na-ŋ  
kī = á-k-ə
youn.g.woman  
on.LOC  
ques.tion  
1SG-DATE  
exist = 3MS-REAL-STI

‘I have a question about young women.’

5.5.3 Compound nouns

Most compounds involve nouns. The second part of the compound undergoes the same tonal alternation as a head preceded by its modifier (section 9.1).

---

14 cf. fuur ‘trade’. Conceptually equal to Amh. gæzzə ‘buy’ tāgæzzə ‘obey’.
The examples (133) and (134) illustrate compounds of which both elements are known. The words in (134) are compounds whose parts are not neatly separated anymore. Long vowels have become short and the terminal vowel of the first word has been dropped.

(132) böw kutṣù ‘hand palm’ (böw ‘belly’ & kutṣù ‘hand’)
böw āškù ‘liver’ (böw ‘belly’ & āškù ‘meat’
yārbh sukù ‘vein’ (yārbh ‘blood’ & sukù ‘rope’
gāatjù kafà ‘bird sp.’ (gāatjù ‘teff’ & kafà ‘bird’)
šūbù bambù ‘grave’ (šūbù ‘death’ & bambù ‘pit’
tyārbù bābbù ‘largest-sized drum’ (tyārbù ‘drum’ & bābbù ‘male person’)
ts’yāats’ù bēngì ‘hot season’ (ts’yāats’ù ‘sun’ & bēngì ‘year’)
fīrù bēngì ‘rainy season’ (fīrù ‘rain’ & bēngì ‘year’)

(133) kumusù ‘nape of neck’ (kum ‘neck’ & úusù ‘bone’)
also kum zirà (zirà ‘bottom part’)
baṣyaab ‘neighbor’ (baṣa ‘work’ & yāáb ‘person’
gek’uku ‘plant sp.’ (gek’u ‘goat’ & kùkù ‘plant sp.’)
būdāy ‘squash’ (būdà ‘pumpkin’ & haay ‘ear’
bāydeʃa ‘tree sp.’ (bāy ‘mother’ & deʃa ‘nut tree’)

Example (135) illustrates compounds of which one or both parts are unknown elements.

(134) kaas aab ‘pupil’ (? & aab ‘eye’)
also aab ts’ay-ʃ- be eye be.black.F-DEF-mother
gūgù kārâ ‘plant sp.’ (? & kārâ ‘leaf’
tyārbù tîngi ‘middle-sized drum’ (tyārbù ‘drum’ & ?)
tyārbù tepà ‘drum indicating the rhythm’ (‘drum’ & ?)
fiririṣa ‘tree sp.’ (? & ?)
k’arÌkajà ‘plant sp.’ (? & ?)
bîrkaʃa ‘tree sp.’ (? & ?)

Compound nouns can be distinguished from possessive noun phrases, such as kūtṣù k’umù ‘elbow (knee of the arm), since possessive noun phrases can be paraphrased by the ‘possessor
ascension construction’, with a dative case marker (136), (section 9.3); compound nouns cannot (137). Additionally, compound nouns consist of maximally two members, whereas possessive noun phrases may involve more than two members. Moreover, compounds are often semantically opaque (e.g. the meaning of the compound is more specific than its parts would suggest).

(135)  
\[ \text{kútsú-kh} \quad \text{kúmú} \]
\[ \text{hand-DAT} \quad \text{knee} \]
\[ \text{‘elbow’} \]

(136)  
\[ \text{*bôw-kh} \quad \text{kútsú} \]
\[ \text{belly-DAT} \quad \text{hand} \]
\[ \text{‘hand palm’} \]

5.5.4 Compounds with dàdù ‘child’
Compounds with dàdù ‘child’ are nouns indicating members of a group.

(137)  
\[ \text{jáarà dàdù} \quad \text{‘choir member’ (jáarà ‘song’)} \]
\[ \text{n-turù dàdù} \quad \text{‘fellow villager (n-turù ‘my-land’)} \]
\[ \text{gókú dàdù} \quad \text{‘Sheko (person)’} \]
\[ \text{yááb dàdù} \quad \text{‘human being’ (yááb ‘man, person’)} \]

5.5.5 Compounds with bääb ‘father’ and bé ‘mother’
bääb ‘father’ and bé ‘mother’ are used in compounds and function frequently as nominalizer. -bääb ‘father’ has an allomorph -báb and -bë ‘mother’ has an allomorph -bay ~ -bey. These nouns nominalize a wide range of words, even case-marked NPs, and they form Irrealis relative clauses and verb complements. Interesting is the gender mismatch when the compounds are made definite. Nominalizations (at least relative clauses and verb complements) cannot be made definite. It is not clear whether adverbs, quantifiers and other modifiers can take the definiteness-gender marking. For the present, they are included under nominalizations.

Sheko is not the only Omotic language showing the grammaticalization of the terms for ‘father’ and ‘mother’. For
instance, the cognate forms of Sheko baab / bé show a similar behavior in the Omotic languages Dime and Bench. In Dime, agentive nominals are derived by -bab (with a H tone). The word for ‘father’ in Dime is bábe (Mulugeta 2008:58). In Bench, the geographical neighbor language of Sheko, -báy occurs in names of plants and animals, báb and báy are used with the semantics of ‘owner’, and nouns and adjectives can be bases for a nominalisation process that suffixes .u-báb, u.báy (Rapold 2006:213ff).

Compounds
baáb ‘father’ and bé ‘mother’ form ‘possessor of’ nouns, denoting a person or entity characterized by what is mentioned in the first part of the compound (Elders 2006). ‘Possessor of’ nouns can be used to express ownership. Some examples are given in (139)-(141). Since there are many ‘possessor of’ nouns, and formation of these nouns appears to be productive, baáb ‘father’ and bé ‘mother’ can also be viewed as derivational nouns.

(138) aftú babb ‘drunkard’ aftp ‘drunkenness’
  fítfí babb ‘sorcerer’ fítfí ‘sorcery’
  gági babb ‘enemy’ gági ‘revenge’
  koosú babb ‘trad. leader’ koosú ‘divination’
  wünkũ babb ‘thief’ wünkũ ‘theft’
  éki babb ‘rich man’ éki ‘domestic animals, money’

(139) fíntú babb dátā n=téé-tə n=ás-a
  wood father near.LOC 1SG = go.NV-SS 1SG = 3MS-ACC
  essage-IRR-INT
  ‘I’ll go to the owner of the wood and ask him.’

(140) yi-ni úfn be tə-kə
  DIST-F flower mother COP-REAL-INT
  ‘This one has flowers.’ (Lit: this is a mother of flower.)

Furthermore, many plant and animal names are compounds with -bé — -báy as the second element. In most cases, the first
half does not occur without -bé, therefore the names are written as a whole.

(141) kúsúbe  ‘ant, sp. (tiny)’
    háánhánúbe  ‘bird of prey, sp.’
    sántàbe  ‘bird, sp.’
    tf'íntf'úbe  ‘fly, sp.’
    wőp'úbe  ‘chameleon’
    fíbe  ‘water taro’
    zúngúbe  ‘plant sp. (with blue flowers)’
    írkúbe  ‘yam sp.’
    óngúbay  ‘yam sp.’

**Gender mismatch**
Noun phrases with bääb ‘father’ or bé ‘mother’ as second element can be pluralized. Just like other nouns, the masculine (default) takes the suffixes -t-s -m-pl and the feminine the suffixes -t-s -f-pl.

(142) a.  ékí  bääb-ü-s
    money father-m-pl
    ‘rich men’

    b.  ékí  be-i-s
    money mother-f-pl
    ‘rich women’

However, when masculine (default gender) noun phrases with bääb are made definite, they take the feminine bé instead of bääb but still add the masculine marker -s after the definiteness marker. Gender is evidently not straightforward in this type of definite noun phrases. Thus, in (144) below the odd one out is the masculine definite form in (b).

(143) a.  ékí  bääb
    money father
    ‘rich man’

    b.  ékí  bey-ñ-s
    money mother-def-m
    ‘the rich man’

    c.  ékí  be
    money mother
    ‘rich woman’

    d.  ékí  bey-ñ
    money mother.f-def
    ‘the rich woman’
Sentence (145) illustrates ‘the odd one out’. Evidently, the meaning of bé ‘mother’ is sufficiently bleached in this construction to allow non-feminine gender agreement. This phenomenon is discussed at length in section 5.3.8.

(144) äftù  bey-ñ-s   t=á   gar-kì-kh
     drinking  mother-DEF-M  COP = 3MS  sing.drunkenly-exist-KNOWN
     ‘It’s the drunkard who is singing.’

5.5.6  Nominalizations with bāāb ‘father’ and bé ‘mother’

bāāb ‘father’ and bé ‘mother’ as nominalizers are attested following adverbs (146), time adverbials (147)-(148), quantifiers (148), numerals (149), manner ideophones (150), and question words (151).

(145)  körù-bāāb-is   kob
      empty-father-DIST,M  take
      ‘Take this empty one.’

(146)  göña-bey-ra   sje-y-bär-kì=á
      yesterday-mother-ACC  forget-throw.away-exist = 2sg.Q
      ‘Did you forget yesterdays’?

(147)  únà-bàb-kh   gàrl-tà   āngà-bàb
      long.ago-father-DAT  head-LOC  much-father
      yaaàb  kày-ñ-s   fìjì = ?aman-k-ë
      man  god-DEF-M  3PL = believe(Amh)-REAL-STI
      ‘Many more people than before believed in God.’

(148)  ás-kh   t’àágh-bàb   yìr-të
      3MS-DAT  two-father  what-COP[Q]
      ‘What is the second one?’

(149)  dàfà-bàb
      slowly-father
      ‘a slow, careful one’
(150) **yifrâ-bàâb**

*what-father*

‘what type, which one’

Only -be is acceptable after question words in negative sentences (152). This might be due to the semantics of the feminine gender, which can be used as a diminutive. The use of the feminine/diminutive form emphasizes that even the least of what might be expected did not take place.

(151) **yifr-be-ra áts-ăr-á-kâ-k**

*what-mother-ACC give-NEG = 3MS-exist-REAL*

‘He didn’t give anything whatsoever.’

Intensifying ideophones and forms derived from adjectival verbs cannot enter this nominalization (153). The forms derived from adjectival verbs are already nominalized by the definiteness-gender marking and function as adjective. The particle to ‘only’ also cannot enter this nominalization.

(152) **òjọjọs-bàâb**

*IDEO{look.intently}-father*

*ts’aans-bàâb, *ts’áwâ-bàâb*  

*be.black-DEF-M-father be.black-INF-father*

Furthermore, bââb ‘father’ and bé ‘mother’ function as nominalizers of case-marked NPs, such as for example (154)-(156). In (157), the word yistâ ‘at that’ without -báâb would be interpreted as referring to time (158) instead of location; the nominalization makes it possible to function as modifier of fitf ‘the tree’.

(153) **yâtn-kh-bàâb éez fôtt-n**

*fox-DAT-father honey become-DS*

‘the one of the fox had become honey;...’
(154)  jē?-n-ʃ  báákt-tä-bäb  yīs  dufu-tə
dist-DEF-M  firestones-LOC-father  DIST.M  hit-SS
ás-a  gyèw-bär-ə
3MS-ACC  chew-throw.away-DS
‘... those stones above the fire struck and finished him off,...

(155)  bāšə-k’a-bāb-ba-a  sñis-árá  kí-tə
work-IN-father  listen-NEG  exist-SS
‘not having heard what had happened at work,...’

(156)  yīs-tä-bäb  ūñ-ʃ  ááb-ara
dist.M-LOC-father  wood.DEF.DAT  fruit-ACC
hā = ?um-t-á  kùʃù-k-ə
3MS = eat-SS = 3MS  be.ill-REAL-STI
‘He ate berries of that tree and became ill.’

(157)  yí-s-tä  ūñ-ʃ  ááb-ara
dist.M-LOC  wood.DEF.DAT  fruit-ACC
hā = ?um-t-á  kùʃù-k-ə
3MS = eat-SS = 3MS  be.ill-REAL-STI
‘Then he ate berries of the tree and became ill.’

In addition, bāab ‘father’ and bē ‘mother’ form verb complements of Irrealis clauses (159) as well as relative clauses (160)-(161). The semantics of the Irrealis can give a strong sense of obligation, as in (162).

(158)  há-dëygən  támär-ń-bāb-ara  út-árá
3MS.POSS-child.F-DEF  learn(Amih)-IRR-father-ACC  like-NEG
hā = kí-k-ə
3MS = exist-REAL-STI
‘He doesn’t want his daughter to study.’

(159)  hāñy-ora  áz-k’ə  n = wōg-ūs-ṁ-bäb  ?yana
water-ACC  3MS-IN  1SG = sit-CAUS-IRR-father  pot
‘a pot in which I can store water’
(160) dāws yīs-ora kʿām-m-bāb  káy
   children DIST.M-ACC raise-IRR-father be.not
   ‘There is no one who will raise up the children.’

(161) hāāy-kʿa  ha = zut-ḥtā  jë?i  batā
       water-IN  2SG = trample-COND  stone  on.LOC
       zūt-árā  ha = kʿé-m-bāb-ee
       trample-NEG  2SG = remain-IRR-father-STI
   ‘If you step in the water, you must not step on the stone anymore’
   (Context: warning to use the right way to enter a magical house.)
6 Pronouns

Chapter 6 describes the personal pronouns and other pronominal forms found in Sheko, with the inclusion of pronouns of the Guraferda variant. Furthermore, this chapter treats reflexivity.

6.1 Personal pronouns

Personal pronouns distinguish number and gender. Gender is differentiated only in the third person singular. A logophoric pronoun has not been found. Hayward (2009:92) comments that South Omotic languages differ from North Omotic languages in not having such a pronoun.

6.1.1 Pronominal forms of Sheko

The first column of the table below illustrates the personal pronouns. All pronouns clearly have a basic form to which case markers can be added, as is evidenced by columns two (accusative -ora), three (instrumental -ka) and four (dative -kh). For comparison, the last columns show the clitics used as person markers on verbs and the possessive prefixes on nouns, which are formally identical.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>S</th>
<th>DO</th>
<th>Instr</th>
<th>IO</th>
<th>subj. cl.</th>
<th>poss. pr.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1sg</td>
<td>nata</td>
<td>nata-ra</td>
<td>nata-ka</td>
<td>na-ŋ</td>
<td>ŋ =</td>
<td>ŋ-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2sg</td>
<td>yeta</td>
<td>yeta-ra</td>
<td>yeta-ka</td>
<td>ye-kh</td>
<td>ha =</td>
<td>ha-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3ms</td>
<td>áz</td>
<td>ás-ora ~ ás-a</td>
<td>ás-ka</td>
<td>ás-kh</td>
<td>há =</td>
<td>há-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3fs</td>
<td>ŋ³</td>
<td>ŋ³-ora</td>
<td>ŋ³-ka</td>
<td>ŋ³-kh</td>
<td>yî =</td>
<td>yî-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1pl</td>
<td>náta</td>
<td>náta-ra</td>
<td>náta-ka</td>
<td>ná-ŋ</td>
<td>ŋ =</td>
<td>ŋ-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2pl</td>
<td>ƙƙ̣</td>
<td>ƙƙ̣-ra</td>
<td>ƙƙ̣-ka</td>
<td>ƙƙ̣-kh</td>
<td>ƙƙ̣ =</td>
<td>ƙƙ̣-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3pl</td>
<td>ƙƙ̣</td>
<td>ƙƙ̣-ra</td>
<td>ƙƙ̣-ka</td>
<td>ƙƙ̣-kh</td>
<td>ƙƙ̣ =</td>
<td>ƙƙ̣-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1. Pronominals

Remarks on the table: first, the difference between 1sg and 1pl is purely tonal, as is the distinction between 2sg and 3ms in the clitic and possessive prefix.
Secondly, the sibilant in the third person pronouns is voiceless in non-nominative cases. The voicelessness could be explained as a result of a regular devoicing process preceding a voiceless stop in case of the dative -kñ and instrumental -ka (see section 3.1). However, devoicing between two vowels in the accusative is inexplicable. Therefore, a non-nominative form ãs / ãf may be posited next to the form for the nominative.

Thirdly, the last syllable ta of the first person pronouns and the second person singular is omitted when the dative case is suffixed. I have no explanation why -ta is omitted with the dative case -kñ and not with the accusative case -kra. A possible factor is that the accusative case marking is not obligatory (section 9.2.2), whereas the dative marking is obligatorily present. Bender (2000: 146; 200) already remarked that -ta in 1sg/pl and 2sg is possibly an old copula. The tone pattern supports this analysis because disyllabic nouns never end in tone 2. The other pronouns have tone patterns also found with nouns, whereas the pronouns with -ta do not fit.

Furthermore, the forms for 2pl and 3pl are also used as honorifics. Example (1) was uttered by an informant to a kõmtõ traditional leader.

(1) yis-ara  ñt = see-bástà  kaari  sáántà (...) 
      dist.m-acc  2pl = see.nv-while  toward  front.loc

túúrë-ra  háy-s-m-bàbb  ñtí  göntfi
      land-acc  hear-caus-irr-father  2pl  simil

fō̄ot-ñ-bàbb  ky = å
      become-irr-father  exist = 3ms.q

‘When you (polite) consider this, will there be someone like you (polite) in the future, who will ... govern the land?’

In texts, shorter forms of pronouns have been observed, without final vowel and lacking case markers. In (2) and (3), the pronouns are syntactically objects, but they are not suffixed with the accusative markers. In (4), the pronouns are in a coordinate construction and subject.
No investigation has been done on the differences between normal and shortened forms. These forms could be short just because of elision in connected speech, or they could constitute a separate set with its own distribution and semantics.

In addition to the pronouns given in table 1, two vocatives are attested (5), which are distinguished for gender. They can be used e.g. to call a person over a distance or, if not at a distance, to call a friend.

(5) a. **ŋ-na**
   1-VOC.M
   ‘hey you (m)’

b. **ŋ-nya**
   1-VOC.F
   ‘hey you (f)’

Vocatives consisting of names or titles are optionally marked by the form of the stance suffix. Moreover, a small group of kinship terms has a special vocative tone pattern. The vocative is discussed in section 5.3.4.
6.1.2 Guraferda pronouns

Some pronouns in the Guraferda variant are markedly different from the pronouns in table 1. These pronouns may be of interest for historical-comparative research and are therefore presented here. (Tone marking is only partly indicated, i.e. absence of tone marks means that the tone is not known in this section.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(6)</th>
<th>Nom.</th>
<th>Accusative</th>
<th>Dative subj. clitic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1sg</td>
<td>yín</td>
<td>yínan(a) (yinn)</td>
<td>yíŋη n=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2sg</td>
<td>yeta</td>
<td>yetana</td>
<td>yetn a=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3ms</td>
<td>ás</td>
<td>ásána</td>
<td>áskn á=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3fs</td>
<td>íf</td>
<td>ífána</td>
<td>ífkí f=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1pl</td>
<td>yín</td>
<td>yínán(a) (yín̂n)</td>
<td>yíŋn n=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2pl</td>
<td>ítí</td>
<td>ítína</td>
<td>ítkí t(í)=</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3pl</td>
<td>íní</td>
<td>ínína</td>
<td>íníkí t(í)=</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first person pronoun forms in the Guraferda variant resemble the Diizi pronouns yinu (1sg), íni (1pl) as given in (Beachy 2005:53), rather than those in Sheko. In addition, the Guraferda 3pl form íní resembles neither the Sheko nor the Diizi 3pl form, which is ñtí for both languages\(^ {15}\).

The accusative marker in Guraferda Sheko is -ana (7a). For first person, shorter forms are attested, probably because of haploglottology (7b). Note the plural marker on the Imperative, which is -nt, as opposed to Sheko -ft.

(7) a. ás-ána íní = k’yan-ase
    3MS-ACC 3PL = beat-DECL
    ‘They hit him’

b. yín-án jéy-aša k’é-nt
    1PL-ACC forget-NEG remain-PL-ADDR
    ‘Don’t forget us!’

---

\(^{15}\) The Diizi set of verbal person suffixes contains an n element for most persons, e.g. 3pl -ntip (and allomorphs), but it is at present not clear whether / how to relate these forms. The Guraferda 3pl form íní may also possibly relate to a feminine demonstrative, as the origin of other third person pronouns is often related to demonstratives (e.g. Bender (2000:4)).
The dative case marker is -kn or -k'n. The glottal element is preserved in the first person, while the 2sg person apparently only preserved the -n (8).

(8)  yet-n  n = ts'af-aka  yeta  yi?n  
     2SG-DAT  1SG = write(Amh)-COND  2SG  1SG-DAT

a = ts'af-en-ky-a
2SG = write-put-exist-Q

‘If I write you, will you write me?’

6.1.3    Enlivening quotative construction
In some texts, there is a sudden switch to first person, for example in (9) where the dog, which is disguised as a sheep, is first referred to by 3ms há = (second line) and subsequently by 1sg = n (third line). This use of the first person is to dramatize or enliven part of a text. The presence of the verb ge ‘say’ points towards an analysis as quotative construction.16 ge ‘say’ is also present in example (10)-(11).

(9)  yi' = zünkù  te-k-e  ge-t = í  bōy-kōb-ta
     3FS = sheep  COP-REAL-STI  say-ss = 3FS  drive-take-ss

kōōk̖̃-tā  sāw-b-tā  há = wūwūwūw
road-LOC  arrive.NV-REL-LOC  3MS = IDEO

ge-ta  if-ēra  wōōts' = n  ge-n
     say-ss  3FS-ACC  bite = 1SG  say-D5

‘she drove (the dog), saying: “It is a sheep,” and when she reached the road, he barked and wanted to bite her,...’

---

16 A normal quotative clause is different. Cf. yeta-ra n = wōōts' = m-a há = ge-á (2SG-ACC 1SG = bite-put-IRR-STI 3MS = say-D5) ‘he said: “I will bite you.” ’ or n = wōōts' = há = ge-á (1SG = bite-STI 3MS = say-D5) ‘he said: “Let me bite.” ’
(10) k‘ork’örö  k̀-ǹtà  k‘ork’örö  
corrugated.iron  exist-COND  corrugated.iron  
ha = kōb-téé-tə  ha = t̪w̪j  bātā  dinga  
2SG = take-go,NAV-SS  2SG = wood.DEF.M on.LOC  round  
mismārī  ?án-tə = a  k’yár-á-m  
nail  put-SS = 2SG  beat-PUT-IRR  
há = kēes-n̪  gé-k-bàástá  há = ?ás-k̪h̪  j̪jkk-ń̪-f̪  
3MS = go.out-1SG? say-exist?-WHILE  3MS = 3MS-DAT  claw-DEF-M  
āāt-ārā  k’ē=n  gé-m-ó  
hold-NEG  remain = 1SG  say-IRR-STL.CONT  
há = fāytt-u-t̪ = á  bāngár-á-m  
3MS = be.weak-SS = 3MS  return-PUT-IRR  
‘If there are corrugated iron sheets, you bring them and nail them 
round on the tree. While he (the badger) thinks he can ascend, his 
claws say ‘I can’t hold’- he will be defeated and will return.’  

(11) kōōk-n̪-s  tf’ór-n̪-k’ē=n  ge-ǹ  fāādu  
road-DEF-M  finish-NEG2-remain = 1SG  say-DS  hunger  
fīl-ra  fādù-s-ǹ  
3PL-ACC  be.hungry-CAUS-DS  
‘the road was endless and they got hungry;’ (Lit: the road said ‘I 
am not ending’; hunger hungered them.)  

6.2 Possessive pronouns  
The last column in table 1 above shows the possessive affixes. 
These are commonly prefixed. They refer to the possessor.  

(12) yī-naanu-ra  dūūf=f-k-ə  
3FS.POSS-elder.brother-ACC  hit = 3FS-REAL-STI  
‘She hit her brother.’  

Suffixation of the first person pronoun possessive takes place in 
vocative expressions (13).  

(13) bāb-m-ō  
father-1SG.POSS-ADDR  
‘Oh my father’
Body parts and some other nouns usually do not prefix a possessive pronominal. Instead, a dative personal pronoun is used to denote the possessor. The difference between constructions with a possessive prefix and a personal pronoun is discussed in section 9.3.

(14) na-ŋ āšū jən-ŋə k-ə
1SG-DAT leg break = 3MS-REAL-STI

‘My leg is broken.’

There is no independent possessive pronoun form, but to express ‘mine’, ‘yours’ etc. the nominalizer bāāb ‘father’ / bē ‘mother’ is used after the dative pronoun.

(15) kəmpūtərĩ ye-kh-bāāb tə
computer 2SG-DAT-father COP.Q

‘Is the computer yours?’

(16) yə-nə na-ŋ-bey
DIST-F 1SG-DAT-mother

‘That one (f) is mine.’

6.3 Reflexivity and ‘oneself’

To express reflexivity Sheko makes use of a personal pronoun. The pronoun is often accompanied by an intensifying noun phrase with gəri ‘head’ and the appropriate possessive prefix. gəri ‘head’ is not a reflexive pronoun itself. Evidence for this is the obligatory occurrence of an accusative personal pronoun, next to the intensifying gəri ‘head’ in examples (17) and (18).

(17) ha-gəri yəta-ra ha=k’uṭs’u-kə
2SG.PESS-head 2SG-ACC 2SG = cut-REAL-STI

‘You cut yourself.’

(18) bāābə há-gəri jı-kh gyābtə yīs-tə
father 3MS.PESS-head 3FS-DAT front.yard DIST.M-LOC

ās-a gūt̪-t̪=á ḥub-mə
3MS-ACC hang-SS = 3MS die-DS

‘...the father hung himself there on her front yard and died,...’
gārī 'head' is not necessary to express reflexivity, but without it a sentence may be ambiguous between a reflexive and non-reflexive reading. Sentence (19) can signify that the subject hangs himself or that he hangs somebody or something else.

(19)  há = ?ás-a  gūtū-k-ə
      3MS = 3MS-ACC  hang-REAL-STI
      ‘he hung himself’ / ‘he hung him/it’

A possessive reflexive is illustrated in (20):

(20)  t’ūrēfə  um-tə  ifl-kə  gārī-k’ə-bāb  ëtū  um-tə
dowry(Amh)  eat-ss  3PL-DAT_head-in-father  cow  eat-ss
      ‘... and ate the dowry and ate their own cow and ...’

The noun gārī ‘head’, modified by the appropriate possessive prefix, occurs in non-reflexive contexts as well. Examples are given in (21)-(24).

(21)  nata  n-ɡārī-k’erə  n- = ëgk-ñtə  énə
to  1SG = 1SG.Poss-head-ENCL  1SG = call-COND  later.today

      há = yēk’-k’yán-á-m-ə
      3MS = come.nv-beat-put-IRR-STI
      ‘Even as I myself called, it would rain the same day.’

(22)  ifl-ɡārī  if = bāɡu- sās-k-ə  tə-ñ
to  3PL.Poss-head  3PL = work-go.out.CAUS-REL  COP-DS
      ‘it was what they made and produced themselves...’

(23)  umt’a  yī = kàtsu  sās-k-ñtə  yī-ɡārī  tə
to  3FS = cook  arrive.CAUS-COND  3FS.Poss-head  just

      um-tə  ās-k-ñtə  to  am-peeʃ-tə  āt-ñ
eat-ss  3MS-DAT just  put-spend.day-SS  give-DS

      ‘... when she cooked food and brought it out she only ate herself and gave only to him (the father).’
The ‘intensifying’ gári ‘head’ is also used in contexts with a reciprocal reading. The verb is marked by the middle for reciprocity (see section 12.3.3).

(24) ha-geri arà-k’a hààs-tà
\hspace{1cm} 2SG.POSS-head thought-IN PROX.M-LOC
\hspace{1cm} \eta = háy-á-m-ə 
\hspace{1cm} 1SG = spend.night-put-IRR-STI
\hspace{1cm} ha = ge-ətə 
\hspace{1cm} 2SG = say-COND
‘if you think by yourself “I’ll spend the night here”, ...’

(25) ánk’à ñg-geri ñf = tsh’adh-kl-k-ə
\hspace{1cm} each.other 3PL.POSS-head 3PL = fght.MIDD-exist-REAL-STI
‘They fought among themselves’, ‘they themselves fought each other.’

(26) utf-gorí utf = tʉs-ʉs-h-kí
\hspace{1cm} 2PL.POSS-head 2PL = know-CAUS-MIDD-exist[Q]
‘Do you know each other?’, ‘Did you introduce yourselves to each other?’
7 Nominal and verbal modifiers

This chapter describes modifiers of nouns and verbs, namely demonstratives, adjectives, numerals, quantifiers and adverbs. Relative clauses are subsumed under complex clauses in section 11.4.

7.1 Demonstratives
This section treats basic, locational and directional demonstratives and the manner deictic together. The basic distinction is between proximal (‘this’, ‘here’) and distal (‘that’, ‘there’), which are neutral with respect to elevation. In addition, elevation plays a role (‘up there’, ‘downwards’, etc.). The elevational deictics are adverbial but may semantically modify the noun. The manner deictic is adverbial as well. Furthermore, the non-deictic use of the basic demonstratives in temporal clauses and in anaphoric/ cataphoric referencing is exemplified.

7.1.1 Basic demonstratives
The basic distinction for locational deictics is between proximal hàà ‘this’ and distal yì ‘that’. The demonstratives are inflected for gender. There is one form -z for the default gender (m), which refers to masculine as well as plural referents; the feminine form is -nì.

(1) PROX DIST
M hààz yìz
F hàànì yìnì

The demonstratives occur as free pronominal forms, but also as suffixes. If they are suffixed, the initial consonant is dropped (2). Impressionistically, suffixation is found mostly with the more grammaticalised (non-spatial) uses of the demonstratives, see section 7.1.2 immediately below. If not deictic spatial, the proximal occurs in some subordinate verb forms, and the distal is important in anaphoric/ cataphoric reference and indefinite specific reference.
(2)  -làz  ~  -làs  ~  -âs  ~  -làmì
     -iz  ~  -îs  ~  -înì

The next examples show the proximal and distal demonstrative forms used independently (3)-(6) as well as modifying nouns (7)-(9).

(3)  yí-z  yír-tô  há=ge-îtâ  ...
     DIST-M  what-COP  3MS = say-COND
     ‘What this says is that...’

(4)  yí-nì  jìk’în-be
     DIST-F  be.short.F.DEF-REL.mother
     ‘This is a short one (f).’

(5)  há=nata  gask-òb  hààs  sâg-ô
     3MS = 1SG  insult-REL  PROX-M  see-STI
     ‘Let who insulted me look at that.’

(6)  hàà-ní-o
     PROX-F-STLADDR
     ‘What about this one?’ (Context: commentary of a player on his good shot in a game of marbles.)

(7)  gôosù  hàà-z  wut=á-k-ô
     calabash  PROX-M  fall = 3MS-REAL-STI
     ‘This calabash has fallen.’

(8)  túùn  hà-ní  3éyògà-n-be  hàày  tø-k-ô
     spring  PROX-F  good.F-DEF-REL.mother  water  COP-REAL-STI
     ‘This spring is (gives) good water.’
(9) yīs-khä aði-k‘à é-kā
DIST.M-DAT footprint-IN there-LCT
faad-k‘à-bābā h-iʃ yīs-ārā k‘ōdām-rū-s
body-IN-father wood.DEF-M DIST.M-ACC.CONT? qodama-DEF-M
yīs hā=gishū-kōb-t=ā kē-sā-mə
DIST.M 3MS=pull-take-SS =3MS go.out-CAUS-put-IRR-STI
‘After that, the qodama ointment pulls this wood which is there in
the body and takes it out.’

When two items are set off against each other with respect to
proximity, often the locational demonstrative é-kā ‘over there’
is used with a distal suffix instead of only the basic distal
demonstrative yīz (10)-(11).

(10) hā-z kōōbu ta-k é-k-i-ż kūṭši te-kə
PROX-M cock COP-REAL there-LCT-DIST-M chicken COP-REAL-STI
‘This is a cock. Those there are hens.’

(11) dēygə hà-nl ... dēygə é-k-i-nl ...
girl PROX-F girl there-LCT-DIST-F
‘this girl... that girl over there...’

A demonstrative used deictically may be accompanied by a
gesture such as pointing with a hand, or pursed lips and head
slightly lifted in the pointing direction.

7.1.2 Non-deictic use of basic demonstratives
First the uses of the proximal are described and then the uses of
the distal.

The proximal occurs in the following verb form: following a
relative clause marked by -(ā)b, the masculine proximal
demonstrative -āəs and the general locative case marker -tā are
suffixed. This form is used in stories to describe a setting or
background for the main storyline events. It is frequently
translated as ‘while’ or ‘when’. Therefore, the whole of
-(ā)b-āəs-tā REL-PROX.M-LOC is glossed WHILE for ease of
understanding and to avoid clumsy glossing. -bās-tā WHILE has
an allomorph -bās-tə with a short vowel.
(12) í’g yŏk’a ōrā-ta yí = tee-kootu-ki-bàástà 3PS INTJ garden-LOC 3PS = go.NV-wait-exist-WHILE
    há = zūyô-ara bààñ-gyô-ta 3MS = sheep.f.DEF-ACC slaughter-chew-SS
    ‘while she went and was waiting in the garden, he slaughtered and ate the ewe and ...’

(13) yí = k’aab-k-bàástà áź sàw-ta 3PS = pour-exist?-WHILE 3MS arrive.NV-SS
    ‘while she poured, he arrived and...’

(14) há = ?áz-’k’a āṅgā zěrkî hàáy-ta 3MS = 3MS-IN much day spend.night-SS
    há = ki-bástà yí = bārkây bààz-?um-tee-ki-t = f 3MS = exist-WHILE 3PS = monkey search-eat-go.NV-exist-SS = 3PS
    hás-ta sàk-ñ PROX.M-LOC arrive-DS
    ‘when he had spent a long time in it (a pit), a monkey foraging for food reached the place...’

A few instances have been noticed where the distal suffix -i’s is used instead of the proximal.

(15) sagn’ ?yats’n há = sàw-abhàástà ás-kh’ táāgí nine moon 3MS = arrive.NV-REL.WHILE 3MS-DAT beer
    ifí = k’ig-k-áb-is-ta sar = á-k ifí = gée-m-ñ 3PL = drink-exist?-REL-DIST.M-LOC be.hot = 3MS-REAL 3PL = say-IRR-STI
    ‘While the ninth month arrives, when they drink its beer, they say: 
    "It is hot."’

NB. The locative case -tà may also be suffixed directly to a relative clause, without intervening demonstrative. I analyse -tà in the context of ‘while’-clauses as the locative case marker (and -ààs as demonstrative) analogous to other temporal adverbal clauses which employ relative clauses followed by locational noun phrases, as treated in section 11.5.1.

As for the distal demonstrative, in the time frame it denotes a sequence, i.e. that a certain event or state is over and a new one begins.
 Furthermore, the distal is used to refer anaphorically. The anaphoric reference can be associative (17). The distal can also refer to the previous in general (18).

(17) ístu ky-á-k-ə ... ſá̱ ſís
wood exist = 3MS-REAL-STI wood.DEF.M DIST.M
śi = sáškū-t = śi tēŋi śi = k’yar-áb-ís
3PL = arrive.CAUS-SS = 3PL tree.sp 3PL = beat-REL-DIST.M
áš-kə śi = kāf-tū-t = śi dēb-́t-áb
3MS-WITH 3PL = cover-PASS-SS = 3PL bury-PASS-REL
‘There is a tree... They brought this tree and the tengi (bark) which they beat (was) what they were covered in and buried.’

(18) jā́ jōk-t-́-n-bā́ bəákə əš-t-́-n-bā́
maize farm-PASS-IRR-father taro plant-PASS-IRR-father
káši yān-t-́-n-bā́ bę́-ər = á sə̱-ntə-ee
yam plant.yam-PASS-IRR-father DIST.M-ACC = 3MS see-COND-STI
‘...maize must be cultivated, taro must be planted, yam must be planted. Regarding this,...

The distal can refer to indefinite specifics (19) and generics (20).

(19) mizë gë-́-t-́-áb-yı̄s nāŋ mākā
best.man(Amh) say-PASS-REL-DIST.M 1PL-DAT best.man
tə-k-ə
cop-REAL-STI
‘The one called mize is for us maka.’ (Context: talking about best men and mediators in marriage customs.)
(20) gômfar yîs hâák'âstâ hâ=gângû-kl-k-ê
gomfa DISt.M now 3MS = Ily-exist-REAL-STI
‘this gômfar bird is flying around now.’ (Context: reference to the
species, not to a specific bird.)

In addition, the distal is used in first-mentions, i.e. it refers
catatrophically. The following examples come from the
beginnings of two texts.

(21) hâák'âstâ m=mââk-â-bââb-is ûnà hâs-kh
now 1SG = tell-IRR-father-DIST.M long.ago PROX.M-DAT
gâtsù márff kâáy ki-b-tâ hââkîm
start needle lack exist-REL-LOC doctor
t'uús-t-êrë ki-b-tâ hâ=gômfar-ka
know-PASS-NEG.STI exist-REL-LOC 3MS = gômfar-WITH
yâp-tû-kl-b k'âdâmâ ge-t'û-b-is
find-PASS-exist-REL qodama say-PASS-REL-DIST.M
áâs-?ââs-t=á è-tû-t=á hâ=ýâáb
PLUR-how-COP = 3MS do,NV-PASS-SS = 3MS 3MS = man
fây-kîy yî=ge-b-îs-îrâ yî=ýâdîgh
be,healthy-exist[?] 3FS = say-REL-DIST.M-ACC 3FS = Badign
oot'î-n m=mââk-â-m-ê ki-b-is
ask-DIS.1SG 1SG = tell-PUT-IRR-STI exist-REL-DIST.M
‘What I will tell now, “long ago when there were no injections, when
a doctor was not known, how did this which is called qodama which
is found by a gômfar bird heal people?” Badign asked; I will tell that.’

(22) yôbâhîs wîngêli âs-kh gû'â k'oy
Yohanis gospel(Amgh) 3MS-DAT rest one
fyââdî kâdû bâtâ-bââb-is n=mââk-â-m
number three on.LOC-father-DIST.M 1SG = tell-PUT-IRR
‘I will talk about the gospel of John, chapter 1 verse 3.’

This use of the distal in Sheko could be related to a marker -is
in Benchnon, which is glossed TOPIC, the role of which remains
unexplained (see e.g. Rapold (2006:512) example 130, and
Appendix 1, text 1).
Since the functions of *yīs* are diverse, there are some examples where two demonstratives occur in the same clause. In example (23), the first *yīs* modifies the noun *kōög̱* ‘farm, field’ and the second is suffixed to the whole clause. In example (24), the proximal and distal are even used together.

(23)  

\[
\text{kōōg̱ yīs há=}kō̱̱-t-úb-ís-ee \quad \text{tūrētā-kē} \\
\text{farm DIST-M 3MS = farm-PASS-REL-DIST-M-STI Tureta-DAT} \\
\text{há=}kō̱̱-t-ā-m-ā \\
3MS = farm-PASS-put-IRR-STI
\]

‘As for those fields which were farmed, for Tureta would be farmed.’

(24)  

\[
\text{hāz yī-s kētā sām=}á-k \\
\text{PROX.M DIST-M all remain = 3MS-REAL}
\]

‘All this is gone.’ (Context: Sentence is said after describing the use of *saad*, a well where cows used to drink mineral water. The well was ritually cleaned every year, but has fallen into disuse.)

The distal shares the function of anaphoric reference with the definiteness-generator marking (see section 5.2.2). While the definiteness-generator marking occurs on (head) nouns, the referring distal occurs on NPs and relative clauses.

### 7.1.3 Locational demonstratives

The locational demonstratives are given in (25). Of the four locational demonstratives, *sō* ‘up there’ is morphologically simple. For *akā* ‘here’ it is not clear whether it is one simple word or whether the dative case -kē is part of the word. *wō*- ‘down there’ occurs with -kā and the locative case marker -tā. ē- ‘there’ occurs only with -kā in my data. The suffix -kā is restricted to these locational demonstratives. It is glossed lct for ‘locative suffix’.

(25)  

\[
\text{akā ‘here’} \\
\text{ē-kā ‘there’} \\
\text{wō-kā ‘down there’} \\
\text{sō ‘up there’}
\]
The locational demonstratives may occur independently or modifying a head noun. The following examples show the independent use.

(26) āts akh
    give here
    ‘Give here!’

(27) akh hàà-z-tà yøg
    here PROX-M-LOC come
    ‘Come here!’

(28) káñú é-ká bar-ø
    garbage there-LCT throw.away-STI
    ‘Throw the garbage over there.’

(29) yeta fin-tø ha=?é-k-is-tà sak-ø
    2SG descend-SS 2SG = there-LCT-DIST.M-LOC arrive-STI
    ‘you go down and arrive over there.’

(30) yí=teë-bààstà wò-ká órá-tà téé-ki-ñ
    3FS = go.NV-WHILE down.there-LCT garden-LOC go.NV-exist-DS
    ‘While she went, (he said:) “go and be down there in the garden; ...”’

(31) wò-tà há=ñf-t-t-ë-m-ø
    down.there-LOC 3MS = find-PASS-put-IRR-STI
    ‘It will be found down there.’

(32) nyäàs-t=a ñëng-ûs-t=a só ki-ee
    give.birth-SS = 2SG? be.big-CAUS-SS = 2SG up.there exist-STI
    ‘...settle up there, giving birth and increasing.’ (Context: the Sheko live in the hills rather than in the lowlands.)

The examples (33)-(35) illustrate the locational demonstratives ëká and akh modifying a noun. In this function, they prototypically follow the noun and carry a basic demonstrative suffix. (In)visibility does not play a role in the use of the locational demonstratives.
(33) kóóká é-k-is dōngi-ka bóytà-ka
valley there-LCT-DIST.M Donzhi-COOR Boyta-COOR
kyākā tə-k-ə
border COP-REAL-STI
‘That river over there (located at the lowest point of the valley) is the border between Donzhi and Boyta.’ (Context: Donji and Boyta are two qebeles, small administrative areas, near Sheko-town.)

(34) bây é-k-i-nl iti-tə
woman there-LCT-DIST-F who-COP.[q]
‘Who is that woman over there?’

(35) iy akh-ááš-tà
house here-PROX.M-LOC
‘this house over here’

The combination éká akh ‘hither and thither’ occurs in literal (36) and figurative sense (37).

(36) um-ni-s-a f̱i = é-k-ákñ úkúrì
food-DEF-M-ACC 3PL = there-LCT-here equal(Amh)
bèskù-ki-bástá
divide-exist-WHILE.CNTD
‘while they were dividing the food equally here and there...’

(37) é-ká akh gê-t-áb
there-LCT here SAY-PASS-REL
út-år = ﬄ-k-k-ə
like-NEG = 3PL-exist-REAL-STI
‘they don’t like to gossip/ mutter’

The elevational demonstratives só ‘up there’ and wọ- ‘down there’ do not occur following a noun but only preceding it (38)-(39).

(38) ﬄ wọ-ká hāāy geeza-tà sàk-ň
3PL down.there-LCT water middle?-LOC arrive-DS
‘they arrived down there at the middle of the lake...’
(39) só íntʃʊ-k’a há=sàmʊ-k-ə
up.there wood-in 3MS=remain-REAL-STI
‘It is left behind up there in the trees.’

Next to its use in the spatial domain, wóta is used to refer to a non-specific time in the future. Other forms, e.g. wóká, cannot be used for time reference.

(40) wó-tà n=ye-kʰ māāk-ā-m-ə
down.there-LOC 1SG=2SG-DAT tell-put-IRR-STI
‘I will tell you someday.’

The locational demonstratives are supplemented by directional adverbs (41). Some sentential examples are provided for each of them.

(41) wó- ‘down there’ tóórá ‘downward’
só ‘up there’ ábsí ‘upward’
(é-ká ‘there’) kaari ‘toward’

(42) ... két=a kóbtʃ’ú-bär-ŋ há=wó-ká
all=2SG make.roofbeam-throw.away-DS 3MS=down.there-LCT
ábsí kēēs-tée-tə há-fátə há=sāk-ŋ əjíntə
upward go.out-go.NV-SS 3MS.POSS-ON.LOC 3MS=arrive-PURP MOTIVE
há=səs-ərə gāydu-s-ŋ há=sām-ə-m
3MS=3MS-ACC problem-CAUS-DS 3MS=remain-put-IRR
‘...you make all the roofbeams; it will cause him problems to climb from down upwards and reach on it (a beehive); he will remain.’

(43) kyān-s tóórá áz-k’a tīt-n
dog.DEF-M downward 3MS-IN look-DS
‘The dog looked down into it...’

(44) íntʃʊ kaari fyàáyi yí=ki-m yí=ge-tə
wood toward frog.F.DEF 3FS=exist-IRR 3FS=say-SS
yí=baás-kí-baadə́ fyàáyi kááy
3FS=want-exist-WHILE frog.F.DEF be.not
‘...while she searched saying ‘the little frog will be in the tree’ the little frog was not there.’
(45) támú-kh ḷaari t‘āāgēnu tamu-kh ḷaari dādū
ten-DAT toward two ten-DAT toward child
fyadi ḷi=t‘uus-k-is kāāy-ē
count 3PL = know-exist-DIST.M be.not-STI
‘towards ten, twenty they didn't know a child's age (number) anymore.’

(46) ...ūštā tuũrũ batā ḷaari bāās-kī-bāāstā
down.LOC land on.LOC toward search-exist-WHILE
‘while he searched the ground’

Furthermore, there are two locational nouns which point out the level of elevation (47). In ḷōf the base Ṽō- is followed by an unknown element ḷi (cf. Ḽō-kā ‘down there’). ḷayk̑a is made up of two elements, the last of which is the inessive case marker -k̑a.

(47) Ḽōf ‘down’
ḥayk̑a ‘up’

(48) dīmts’-kī hāyk’-ka Ḽōf-ka
sound-DAT up.in-COOR low-COOR
‘the up and down of sound (i.e. tone)’

(49) Ḹî hāyk̑a īntšu-kh ġōrt-k̑a
3FS up.in wood-DAT head-IN
kēēs-ē ... yī=qī-bāāstā kafā ḷayk̑a ās-kī
go.out-ss 3FS = exist-WHILE bird up.in
bušt̑-ka-kī-b ḷī-ēra k̑yaaaf = ā-k
3MS.DAT nest.WITH?-exist-REL 3FS-ACC kick = 3MS-REAL
‘She climbed up to the top of the tree and (...) while she was there a bird which had its nest up there kicked her.’

For completeness, three nouns denoting location with respect to elevational information are given in (50).

(50) saákũ ‘ravine, downward slope’
ḡérā ‘hill, upward slope’
ǭn ‘plain, more or less even location’
7.1.4 Manner deictic

The manner deictic is yē(ē) ‘like this/ that’. Its vowel may be long or short.

(51) tūús-ār = a-ki-b-ljḥtā
     ha = nata-ra
     yē

     know-NEG = 2SG-exist-REL-MOTIVE
     2SG = 1SG-ACC
     like this

gēe-ḵ-ē

     say-REAL-STI

     ‘You spoke to me like this because you don’t know.’

The form of the manner deictic may be based on the distal (yī-), and/ or the verb eg ‘to do’, more specifically the non-velar stem ee-. This suggestion is based on the way in which Wolaitta expresses ‘like that’: a distal followed by a converb form of the verb z antioxidant ‘do’ or the verb han- ‘happen, be(come)’ (Azeb Amha p.c.), as illustrated in (52)-(53).

(52) yaá-t-ádā wottá

     there-do-CNV
     put:2SG.IMP

     ‘set (it) like this’

(53) yaá-n-ádā ṭūṭtā

     there-happen-CNV sit:2SG.IMP

     ‘sit like this’

The use of the manner deictic in Sheko is further illustrated in example (54)-(56). The first two examples show the adverbial use of yēē; the third example shows that yēē can also be used to quantify a noun.

(54) éés-kh-āstā kōōs-tē umt’ā gāār-m-bāāb

     honey-DAT-3MS.COP?
     divine-SS
     food ripen-IRR-father

     ŋ-kōōs-tē umt’ā mūr-ň-bāāb ŋ = kōōs-tē

     1PL-divine-SS
     food ripen(tuber)-IRR-father
     1PL = divine-SS

     yē ta = ŋ ŋ = kīy-k

     like this COP = 1PL
     1PL = exist-REAL

     ‘we were divinating for honey and we were divinating for grains to ripen and for tubers to ripen, like this we lived.’
(55) kār-kā há=-tě-k-bàdstā̱ ás-kn̄ gōrī

forest-IN 3MS = go-exist-REAL-WHILE 3MS-DAT head

yēē yēē gé-te há = ?án-t=á ás-kn̄ haay

like-this like-this say-ss 3MS = put-ss = 3MS 3MS-DAT ear

k’ōy tōrā tū-r-ḳa̱ ás-kn̄ haay k’ōy

one downward land-IN 3MS-DAT ear one

ábšā sā-k’ā yēē ṭ=á án-ki-t=á īn-ā-m

upward sky-IN like-this COP = 3MS put-exist-ss = 3MS go-put-IRR

‘while he goes through the forest, he puts his head like this 17, with
one ear downward to the ground and one ear upward to the sky,
putting (his head) like this he goes.’

(56) yēē éts’ú yí=sàw-ta̱ yí=gāår-ḵ̃o

like-this moon 3FS = arrive.NV-ss 3FS = bear.fruit-REAL-STI

í fs = gee-m-ə

3PL = say-IRR-STI

‘they would say: “she reached so many months and has become
ripe.”’

The manner demonstrative can be used to resume a discourse
after a diversion, as in (57)-(58).

(57) yēē kĩ-h yī-bey-ka yī-bàāb-ka

like-this exist-ds 3FS.POSS-mother-COOR 3FS.POSS-father-COOR

bóyṣ̌ Bọ̣̌ ṃ̣̌ ṇ̣̌ ṭ̣̌ ā
dowry eat-COND

‘it being like that, if her mother and father accept (eat) the dowry,...’

(58) yēē kĩ-a-a ʒaba burgi wón-ḳ̣̌ k

like-this exist-IMPLC-STD Zheba Burzh down.there-LCT

sām = a koỵ̣̌ nab yēē-ḳ egitā

remain = 3MS? Koỵ̣̌ nab come.NV-REAL Egita

‘Thus it was. The Jēba Burzh stayed down there; Koỵ̣̌ nab came, to
Egita.’

The form yēēstā̱ is often used just before the culmination of a
story. It probably consists of yēē ‘like this’ with an elative,

17 The storyteller held his head sideways, realised it could not be recorded and added
an explanation of yēē yēē in words.
extra high tone, and an ‘emphasizing part’ containing the copula element *-ta* (see section 15.5.1). Here are two examples:

(59)  
\[ \text{yēēsta} \quad \text{bààs-feef-t} = \text{fīl} \]
like_this,ELAT-3MS.COP? want-spend.day-SS = 3PL
\[ \text{bāy-ī-s-n-ka} \quad \text{bāāb-ū-s-n-ka} \quad \text{bēēthtā} \]
mother-f-PL-DAT-COOR father-m-PL-DAT-COOR middle
\[ \text{yī-dād-n-s-ora} \quad \text{fyayn-a} \quad \text{yaafu-tə} \]
3PL.POSS-child-DEF-M-ACC frog.F,DEF-ACC find-SS
‘...they searched all day like this and among the females and the males they found her friend the little frog...’

(60)  
\[ \text{dōr-tə} \quad \text{dōr-tə} \quad \text{yēē-sta} \]
run-SS run-SS like_this,ELAT-3MS.COP?
\[ \text{dōr-s-ūs-n-tabeef-tə} \quad \text{fīl} = \text{sāāk’-u-k’ā} \]
run-CAUS-CAUS-MIDD-go.spend.day-SS 3PL = ravine-IN
\[ \text{wutu-tə} \quad \text{fīl} = \text{sub-k-ə} \]
fall-SS 3PL = die-REAL-STI
‘ran and ran and kept on chasing each other like this and they fell into a ravine and died.’

N.B. Sheko has also a similitative case marker *gōntfi*, which is discussed in section 9.2.7.

(61)  
\[ \text{hāāk’astā} \quad \text{hā-z} \quad \text{gōntfi} \quad \text{té-rée} \]
now PROX-M SIMIL COP-NEG.STI
‘Now it is not like this.’

### 7.2 Adjectives

Adjectives are derived from verbs, or sometimes from another base, by definiteness-gender marking, as shown in (62).

(62)  
\[ \text{k’og} \quad \text{‘be strong’} \]
a.  
\[ \text{k’ōg-ə} \]
be.strong-DEF-M
‘strong (m), the strong one’
b. \textit{kō < y > 3-ā}
\textit{be.strong < F > -DEF}

'\textit{strong (f), the strong one}'

The analysis of derivation by definiteness-gender marking may be unexpected, but it is supported by the masculine-feminine alternations, which are the same as for nouns. Note that the verb is not derived from the adjective by an inchoative suffix, but the verb is unmarked for any derivation and the adjective is morphologically complex. Section 7.2.1 describes adjectives as a lexical category. For more discussion and a possible analysis of adjectives as a type of relative clauses, see section 5.2.3.

Most adjectives have a corresponding verb, which denotes a state or change of state (63). The derivation is partly idiosyncratic in the sense that the tonal pattern of the adjective (44, 41, 33 or 31) is not predictable from the lexical tone of the verb, although pattern 44 always occurs on adjectives derived from a H verb stem with only one exception. For a full list of adjectives and verbs with their tonal patterns, see section 4.7.

(63) \textit{ffk} ‘be old’ \textit{ffkins} (4.4) ‘old’
\textit{gááf} ‘be good’ \textit{gééf} (4.1) ‘good’
\textit{kór} ‘be dry’ \textit{kóns} (3.1) ‘dry’
\textit{sub} ‘be red’ \textit{súnns} (3.3) ‘red’
\textit{k’ōs} ‘be strong, hard’ \textit{k’ōns} (3.1) ‘strong’

The adjective ‘\textit{yáátns}’ ‘big’ has no corresponding verb (cf. \textit{ángūt} ‘increase, be big’. Two adjectives correspond to an adverb:

(64) \textit{kóta} ‘little, few’ \textit{kótns} ‘little’
\textit{k’árā} ‘freshly (nearly ripe maize), \textit{k’árns} ‘new’

newly’

The derivation of \textit{k’oys-n-s} ‘other, different, special’ is probably from \textit{k’oy} ‘one’ plus causative -s.
(65)  k’ois-̀s-s-̀b  ýiśi-l-k’a  úśtā
other-DEF-M-REL  artefact-IN  down.LOC

ān-tū-t = ā   há = bōs-t-ā-m
put-PASS-SS = 3MS  3MS = filter-PASS-put-IRR
‘...it will be put in another jug on the ground and it will be filtered.’

The adjective can be suffixed by the relative clause marker  -̀b (~-̀b), or  ābe (~-ābe) for feminine as illustrated in (66). For details on  -̀b see section 11.4.

(66)  a.  k’ōg-̀s-l-̀āb
be.strong-DEF-M-REL
‘strong (m), the strong one’

b.  k’ō <y> ʒ-ā-be
be.strong <F>-DEF-REL.mother
‘strong (f), the strong one’

The grammatical rules concerning adjectives and greater distributional possibilities of the adjectives in (66) as against simple adjectives are outlined in section 7.2.1. Section 7.2.2 offers a list of adjectives, with comments on the semantics of adjectives, following Dixon (2004).

7.2.1 Adjectives as a lexical category
Aklilu (1988:66) stated: ‘Sheko adjectives do not stand alone. They are derived form verbs of becoming by the suffixation of the definite marker  n and the gender marker... ’. While adjectives can stand on their own and function as head of a noun phrase, most adjectives do have a corresponding verb. Since adjectives are derived with gender-definiteness marking which typically occurs with nouns, the question arises whether they are not simply nouns. Although on the surface nouns and adjectives may look similar, adjectives are distinguished from nouns by at least two criteria:

1. Adjectives are morphologically definite, and always overtly marked for gender, since they are derived by definiteness-gender marking. Nouns, although having inherent gender, are not obligatorily marked by an overt gender marker. In other words, nouns can occur
without the definiteness-gender marking and adjectives cannot.

2. Adjectives and nouns differ in the way they indicate plurality. Nouns take the suffix -s to indicate plurality (section 5.4.1). Adjectives reduplicate the initial CV of the stem or the complete stem. The reduplicated part is glossed PLUR (following section 3.3 on reduplication). Example (67) illustrates this for the adjectives derived from the verb sub ‘become red’ and from the adverb kóta ‘little, few’.

   (67)  masculine                  feminine
         sùb-m-s                sù<y>b-m
          be.red-DEF-M        be.red<y>-DEF
        sù-sùb-m-s         sù-sùyb-m
          PLUR-be.red-DEF-M   PLUR-be.red.F-DEF
  ~ sùb-sùb-m-s      ~ sùyb-sùyb-m
         kó-t-ñ-s           kó<y>t-ñ
          little-DEF-M      little<y>-DEF
        kó-kó-t-ñ-s        kó-kóyt-ñ
          PLUR-little-DEF-M  PLUR-little,F-DEF
  ~ kót-kó-t-ñ-s   ~ kóyt-kóyt-ñ

A third difference is that adjectives may be suffixed by -b, which marks relative clauses.

Adjectives can be used attributively, modifying a noun in a noun phrase (68). When used attributively, they occur following the noun. They cannot precede the head noun. Adjectives can also be used predicatively, or more precise, they function as the copula complement of a copula sentence. Sentence (69a) shows a noun in copula complement position and (b) an adjective.

   (68)  geyk'-ñ sùyb-ñ syaaf=f
         goat,F-DEF red.F-DEF bear.young = 3FS[Q]

   ‘Has the red goat borne young?’
(69) a. dād-n-s  ḥā̀-z  āstāmār-n-s
child-DEF-M  PROX.m  teacher(Amh)-DEF-M
(tə-k-ə)
COP-REAL-STI
‘This guy is the teacher.’

b. dād-n-s  ḥā̀z  jīk-n-s  (tə-k-ə)
child-DEF-M  PROX.m  be.short-DEF-M  COP-REAL-STI
‘This guy is short.’

(70)  umt’ā  k’ār-n-s  tə ...
food  freshly-DEF-M  COP
‘is it raw food which...’

The predicate of an intransitive sentence is a verb form and therefore the adjective is excluded in this function.

(71)  ás-kh  áàb  jīk = á-k-ə
3MS-DAT  fruit  be.sweet = 3MS-REAL-STI
‘Its fruit is/ was sweet.’

An adjective can function as the head of an NP. In this function, it can be modified by e.g. possessive pronouns, numerals, and relative clauses, just like any noun. This is indicated in (72). The adjective can be modified by an intensifying ideophone as well (73). Note that the ideophone occurs before the adjective. Ideophones modifying verbs likewise occur before the verb.

(72)  ā-k’ār-n-s-a  na-ŋ  ats-ə
1SG.POSS-new-DEF-M-ACC  1SG-DAT  give-STI
‘Give me my new one(s)!’

(73)  doddo  sūb-ŋ-s
IDEO  be.red-DEF-M
‘very bright red’

As previously noted in Aklilu (1988:67), adjectives can be modified by the relative clause marker/ complementizer -əb (~əb), or -əbe (~əbe) for feminine. Impressionistically, these
relativised forms are more frequent than the simple adjective as described above.

(74) dād-ñ-s há-bààb jil-ñ-s-àb-àra nà gōmà
child-DEF-M 3MS.POSS-father be.short-DEF-M-REL-ACC 1PL.equal
tə-k-ə há=ge há=ge-t'ù-k-ə
COP-REAL-STI 3MS=say 3MS=say-PASS-REAL-STI

‘“The child says to his short father: ‘We are gōmà.’ ” it is said.’
(Proverb. People are gōmà when born within three months from each other. They can insult each other without consequences and are seen as equals.)

(75) báy k'oys-ñ-be há=bōy-sù-kōb-yəg-ñ
wife other.F-DEF.REL.mother 3MS=wed-take-come-DS

‘...and he wedded another wife and brought her...’

Plurality of referents is usually not indicated for modified adjectives (76), similar to relative clauses which only distinguish third person singular feminine from the rest. However, it is possible to use reduplication, exactly like indicated in (67) above for simple adjectives. An example is given in (77). Akilulu (1988:67) has some relativised adjectives with the plural marking (-u)-s, which is used for nouns, but my informants rejected any such forms.

(76) jád-ñ-s-àb-àra na-ñ åts-ə
be.long-DEF-M-REL-ACC 1SG-DAT give-STI
‘Give me the long one(s)!’

(77) umrà kā-kāät-ñ-s-àb-kà zàr-à sàm-àb
food PLUR.be.ripe-DEF-M-REL-DAT spill-NML2? remain-REL
ås-àra ås-k'à zàr-s-ə há=ge-ñ
PROX.M-ACC 3MS-IN spill-CAUS-STI 3MS=say-DS

“Drop these left-overs of cooked food which remain in it,” said he;...’

In contrast to simple adjectives, which only follow the head noun, the ‘relativised adjectives’ can both precede (78) and follow (79)-(80) the head noun, like relatives.
(78)  jād-n-s-ðb  sàây  jī-ð  há=wsk′-k-ð  
be.long-DEF-M-REL  fable  3PL-ACC  3MS = be.tired,CAUS-REAL-STI  
‘The long story tired them.’

(79)  tūúð  kör-n-s-ðb  bità  há-k′aðn-s  
land  be.dry-DEF-M-REL  on.LOC  3MS.POSS-slave,DEF-M  
há = tuun-kl-b-tana  
3MS = lead-exist-REL-RESULT  
‘He leads his servant through the desert land and...’ (from a song)

(80)  hä-gəri  tʃäərû  ṭyáát-n-s-ðb  tə-k-ð  
3MS.POSS-head  medicine  big-DEF-M-REL  COP-REAL-STI  
‘he himself is a big medicine.’ (Context: refers to the gomtā bird from which a medicine is extracted.)

Here are examples of relativised adjectives functioning as head and as copula complement respectively:

(81)  jī=k′ay-t=á  kót-n-s-ðb  tàftù-t=á  
3PL = rise-SS = 3MS  little-DEF-M-REL  pat-SS = 3MS  
‘they awoke and the small one patted (the beehive) and...

(82)  tūún  hàà-n-l  ʒēén-be  
spring  prox-f  be.good,F.DEF-REL,mother  
‘This spring is a good one!

For parameter of comparison, I have only (relative) verbs in my examples, and some relativised adjectives. Compare (83a) and (b) as well as (84) and (85) with each other. It is not clear from my data whether ‘simple’ adjectives (i.e. without -ðb) are ungrammatical in this context.

(83)  a.  gurma  gaana-kh  jād-n-s-ðb  tə-k-ð  
Gurma  Gaana-DAT  be.long-DEF-M-REL  COP-REAL-STI  

b.  gurma  gaana-kh  jād-ðb  tə-k-ð  
Gurma  Gaana-DAT  be.long-REL  COP-REAL-STI  
‘Gurma is longer than Gaana.’
7.2.2  Semantic notes on adjectives

The group of adjectives in my corpus consists of some 40 members. As the Sheko group of adjectives is medium-sized, we expect next to the core semantic types of DIMENSION, AGE, VALUE and COLOR, also the types PHYSICAL PROPERTY, HUMAN PROPENSITY and SPEED. The types AGE, VALUE and COLOR are small groups, DIMENSION is a somewhat larger group with six members (adjectives are in masculine form here):

(86)  AGE  ūkšīs  ‘old’
      VALUE  ẓééḥʃ ‘good’ \( \sim \) ẓágāʃ
      ūsēńʃ ‘bad’
      COLOR  gōōtšs ‘white’
           ts’āāns ‘black’
           sūbšs ‘red’
           ṭʃ’īřʃ ‘green, unripe, raw’
      DIMENSION  hāškšs ‘wide’
              ts’ūbšs ‘narrow’
              ṭyáāṭšs ‘big’
              kōṭšs ‘little’
              ṭʃáḍšs ‘tall’ \( \sim \) fāḍšs
              ūkššs ‘short’

The largest group is formed by PHYSICAL PROPERTY and HUMAN PROPENSITY, see (87). Other notions in these categories tend to be expressed with verbal forms.

\( ^{18} \) kōṭšs ‘little’ come closest to the antonym ‘young’ with respect to age (of human beings). k’ाřšs ‘fresh, raw, new’ was also mentioned as antonym.
The formation of adjectives by adding the definite-gender marking to the verb stem is hardly productive other than with the adjectives listed here. There might be some more HUMAN PROPENSITY verbs of which speakers accept the adjective derivation. Therefore, it seems justified to speak of a semi-closed class of adjectives.

There are no adjectives for SPEED. Concepts for SPEED are expressed through an adverb or ideophone.

As for the relative order of adjectives, this is not relevant for Sheko, because people hardly ever use two adjectives in the same phrase. In recorded texts, even the use of one adjective is rare. In elicitation, people are hard pressed to produce sentences with two adjectives (let alone more); and some
informants cannot or will not give judgements on sentences with many adjectives either. (The only three sequences for which my elicitation data give a hint are age < physical property, color < age and dimension < age, as in yááb šfknš šapkš ‘a slim old man’ or ōti šuybš šikń ‘an old red cow’.)

To summarize, we can say that adjectives in Sheko are a semi-closed class, derived by the definiteness-gender marking which otherwise mainly occurs with nouns. Lexically, there are no separate adjective roots. That the derived forms are different from nouns is shown by e.g. the different strategy for indicating plurality. The place of attributively used adjectives is after the head noun, in contrast to relative clauses which occur at either side of the head noun. Adjectives can also function as head of an NP. Furthermore, adjectives are frequently suffixed by the relative marker/ nominalizer -əb (-əbe). This extended form takes on the characteristics of relative clauses and can occur both before and after the head noun.

To give a characterization of adjectives, Dixon (2004) has set up two parameters. The primary division is between verb-like adjectives, which can function as intransitive predicate and take some or all of the processes applicable to intransitive verbs on the one hand, and non-verb-like adjectives, which can function as copula complement on the other hand. Furthermore, there is a distinction between noun-like adjectives, which take some or all of the processes applicable to nouns when they function within the NP, and non-noun-like adjectives, which do not take any of these processes (Dixon 2004:14-15).

Adjectives in Sheko are derived from verbs, may take the same relative clause marker/ nominalizer as relative verb forms and are modified by ideophones in the same way as verbs. The corresponding verb can function as intransitive predicate, but the derived adjective functions as copula complement. Since the derivation of adjectives in Sheko is by means of the definiteness-gender marking, they are noun-like. They can function as head of an NP, but do not take the same plural formation as nouns. The noun-like-ness can account for the use
as copula complement as well. Thus, Sheko adjectives are both verb-like and noun-like.

7.3 Numerals
Numerals are distinguished from quantifiers like kéta ‘all’ (section 7.4) by their position vis-à-vis case marking: given the fact that case markers attach to the right end of the noun phrase, numerals can be said to be ‘inside’ the NP and quantifiers ‘outside’ the NP, as shown in (88a,b).

(88) a. kyänü kāddù-ra há = wuš-k-ə
dog three-ACC 3MS = kill-REAL-STI
‘he killed three dogs’

b. kyänü-ra kéta há = wuš-k-ə
dog-ACC all 3MS = kill-REAL-STI
‘he killed all dogs’

A numeral undergoes a tone change when it is modified by another numeral (shown in the first section below). A numeral can be made definite as well (89), and have a possessive prefix, as shown in (90), although in specific contexts only. In these respects, numerals resemble nouns. Numerals are however unlike nouns in that their basic function is to modify (quantify) a head noun.

(89) ás-kə t’āag-ə-s dādū wutu-t=á há = jān-htà
3MS-DAT two-DEF-M child fall-SS = 3MS 3MS = break-COND
‘Its second: if a child falls and breaks something,...’ (Context: talking about the uses of a medicine called qodama.)

The numeral k’oy ‘one’ occurs with a possessive prefix in the following context:

(90) ha-k’oy ha = tóg-á
2sg.Poss-one 2sg = go-put([q])
‘Do you go on your own/ alone?’
7.3.1 Cardinal numbers

Sheko has a decimal numerical system. The cardinal numbers are the following:

(91) \[
\begin{array}{ccc}
1 & k’oy & 6 & yākū \\
2 & t’āāgñ & 7 & tūbsú \\
3 & kādū & 8 & zeed \\
4 & kūbfñ & 9 & sagñ \\
5 & ūtšù & 10 & tāmù \\
& 100 & bāārā (k’oy bāārā)
\end{array}
\]

The word for 1000, jǐ, is borrowed from Amharic.

From twenty onwards, tens, hundreds and thousands are preceded by a modifier and undergo tone changes following the rule for nouns preceded by a modifier (see section 9.1). Tone 4 changes to tone 2 and tone 3 changes to tone 1.

(92) \[
\begin{array}{ccc}
20 & t’āāgñ tamu & 100 & k’oy bāārā \\
30 & kādū tamu & 300 & kādū bāārā \\
50 & ūtšù tamu & 500 & ūtšù bāārā \\
90 & sagñ tamu & 900 & sagñ bāārā \\
& 1000 & k’oy jǐ
\end{array}
\]

When adding units to a decimal, in careful speech the conjunction -ka ‘and’ is suffixed to both elements, although the last one, suffixed to the single unit, is optional. In quick counting both -ka’s are dropped, as shown in example (93). In longer composite numbers -ka ‘and’ is used after hundreds and tens, and optionally after thousands. After the last number -ka is always optional, as illustrated in (94).

(93) \[
\begin{array}{ccc}
11 & tāmù(-ka) k’oy(-ka) \\
12 & tāmù(-ka) t’āāgñ(-ka) \\
15 & tāmù(-ka) ūtšù(-ka) \\
21 & t’āāgñ tamu(-ka) k’oy(-ka) \\
95 & sagñ tamu(-ka) ūtšù(-ka)
\end{array}
\]

(94) \[
\begin{array}{ccc}
654 & yākū bāārā-ka ūtšù tamu-ka kūbfñ(-ka) \\
839 & zeed bāārā-ka kādū tamu-ka sagñ(-ka) \\
830 & zeed bāārā-ka kādū tamu(-ka)
\end{array}
\]
7125 tūbsū jī(-ka) k’oy bārà-kā t’āāghī tamu-ka
ūtsū(-ka)
7120 tūbsū jī(-ka) k’oy bārà-kā t’āāghī tamu(-ka)

7.3.2 ‘Ordinal’ numbers
Sheko has no morphological means to derive ordinal numbers, but makes use of other constructions, such as possessive constructions and nominalization.

Ordinal numbers are frequently preceded by a possessive noun phrase (the dative case in Sheko also marks possession, see section 9.3). This noun phrase refers to the set to which the referent of the cardinal expression belongs. The noun phrase often consists only of an anaphoric expression, while the set is not described explicitly.

(95) yīś àś-khā k’oy
DIST.M 3MS-DAT one
‘This is the (its) first.’ (Context: explaining ways to prevent a badger from taking honey.)

(96) àś-khā támū ṭyats’n sāw-bààstà taağ = ā-k-ə
3MS-DAT ten moon arrive.NV-WHILE be.cold = 3MS-REAL-STI
ği = gēē-m-ə
3PL = SAY-IRR-STI
‘when the tenth month arrives, they say: “It has cooled down.” ’

(97) fāykḥ noog-h-s şūʔā t’āāghī tamu àś-kh
life word-DEF-M rest two ten 3MS-DAT
fyāādā k’oy-tà ky-àāb-ə n = ṭīff-kh māāk-ā-m-ə
number one-LOC exist-REL-ACC 1SG = 2PL-DAT tell.put-IRR-STI
‘I will tell you what is in the gospel (of John), chapter twenty, its first verse.’

The numeral itself can have definiteness-gender marking (98), or be nominalized by bāāb ‘father’ (99). Furthermore, bāāb ‘father’ is attested to nominalize the numeral plus locative case marker (100). This latter manner is reminiscent of the way Benchon forms cardinal numerals, namely by a verbless,
headless relative clause in which the numeral has locative case (Rapold 2006:415).

(98)  
\[\text{yis} \quad \text{ás-kh} \quad \text{k’oy} \quad \text{to-k-ə} \quad \text{ás-kh} \quad \text{t’āāg-ǎ-s} \]
\[\text{DIST.M} \quad \text{3MS-DAT} \quad \text{one} \quad \text{COP-REAL-STI} \quad \text{3MS-DAT} \quad \text{two-DEF-M}\]
\[\text{dādū} \quad \text{wutu-t-ě=á} \quad \text{há=jan-nta} \]
\[\text{child} \quad \text{fall-ss = 3MS} \quad \text{3MS = break-COND}\]

‘This was its first. Its second: if a child falls and breaks something,…’
(Context: talking about the uses of a medicine called *godama*.)

(99)  
\[\text{úti-ka} \quad \text{yí=} \text{yatju-tee-k-àb} \quad \text{ás-kh} \]
\[\text{love-WITH} \quad \text{3FS = hide-go.NV-exist?REL} \quad \text{3MS-DAT}\]
\[\text{t’āāgh-bàb} \quad \text{út-fr=f-ki-t=fí} \]
\[\text{two-father} \quad \text{love-NEG = 3RS-exist-ss = 3FS}\]
\[\text{yí=giddi-ka} \quad \text{giš-tú-tee-k-àb} \]
\[\text{3FS = duty(Amh)-WITH} \quad \text{pull-PASS-go.NV-exist-REL}\]

‘One who goes into hiding out of love; second, one who does not love but goes being kidnapped by force,…’
(Context: enumerating the ways a girl could get married.)

(100)  
\[\text{ás-kh} \quad \text{kādu-tà-bàbàb} / \quad \text{kādu-tà-bàbàb} \quad \text{dàdù} \]
\[\text{3MS-DAT} \quad \text{three-LOC-father} \quad \text{three-LOC-father} \quad \text{child}\]

‘its third one’/ ‘third child’

Compare *kādu-tà-bàbàb* ‘third’ in (100) with the non-numeral expressions in (101) and (102), which also contain a locative (or inessive) case.

(101)  
\[\text{újìta-bàb} \quad \text{bèrgù-kà} \]
\[\text{down-LOC-father} \quad \text{year-IN}\]

‘last year’

(102)  
\[\text{ādi-kà-bàb} / \quad \text{tʃ’orì-tà-bàbdàdù} \quad \text{n=òskù-k-ə} \]
\[\text{footprint-IN-father} \quad \text{end-LOC-father} \quad \text{child} \quad \text{1SG = call-REAL-STI}\]

‘I call the next / last child.’

In one example in my corpus, the numeral is followed immediately by the relative clause marker.
Finally, t'āāgh in example (104) and támú-ka t'āāgh-ka in example (105) contain no marking to signal that the number is ordinal.

(104) t'āāgh ás-ka  ha = daan-t = â  
      two    3MS-WITH  2SG = be.together-ss = 2SG
      ha = nōn-ki-h  ñ = yaaf-htâ  baânnâ  ha-batâ  
      2SG = talk-exist-DS  1SG = find-COND  matter  2SG.POSS-on.LOC
sāā-m-ê  
      arrive.NV-IRR-STI
      ‘if I find you talking with him a second time, you’ll be in problem.’

(105) hâk'âstâ  k'oy  t'āāgh  gê-t'û-tê  támú-ka  
      now  one  two  say-PASS-SS  ten-COOR
      t'āāgh-ka  ets'n  bêngi  ha = fâdû-t'û-kl-k-ê  
      two-COOR  moon  year  3MS = count-PASS-exist-REAL-STI
      ‘now, “one, two,…” being said, twelve months is being counted a year.’

To express an approximation, kaârì ‘until’ follows the numeral.

(106)  t'āāgh tamu-kh  kaârì  dâdû  fyadi  
      two  ten-DAT  until  child  number
      ñû = t'ûus-k-îs  kâây-ê  
      3PL = know-exist-DIST.M  be.not-STI
      ‘towards twenty, they didn’t know the age of a child.’

### 7.3.3 Uses of the numeral ‘one’

The numeral one functions as an indefinite pronoun roughly meaning ‘a certain’. k'oy ‘one’ as indefinite pronoun follows the noun it modifies (107)-(108). Sentence (109) is from the beginning of a story and (110) start a new cycle in other
stories, introducing a new participant. k’øy as a number, i.e. attributive, usually precedes the head noun (111).

(107) k’øy ka, k’øy yi, k’øy yaaf-ā
3PL = place arriveNV-ss = 3PL house one find-DS
‘... they reached a place and found a house; ...’

(108) ás-kā haay k’øy tóór̂á tūr-k’ā ás-kā
3MS-DAT ear one downward land-IN 3MS-DAT
haay k’øy ábsi sā-k’ā yēē t=ā
ear one upward sky-IN like.this COP = 3MS
án-ki-t=ā in-ā-m
put-exist-ss = 3MS go-put-IRR
‘one ear down to the ground and one/ the other ear up to the sky, putting (his head) like this he goes.’

(109) án-ńú k’øy-ka báádū k’øy-ka
elder.brother one-COOR younger.sibling one-COOR
k’øy = daan-t ...
3PL = be.together-ss
‘An elder and a younger brother were living together...’

(110) yááb k’øy yəg-ā
man one come-DS
‘a certain man came;...’

(111) k’øy ?yaana šub=á-k-ā
one pot die = 3MS-REAL-STI
‘One pot broke.’ (Lit: ...died.)

k’øy can be nominalized by bāáb ‘father’/ bē ‘mother’, as in (112). It refers to an indefinite, specific participant; compare k’o-bāáb in (113), which refers back to someone (indefinite) who asked for milk, with yááb ‘man, someone’ in (114).
(112) **k’oy** bàràrà zùnkù-khà bastn-tà k’o-bey
one hundred sheep-DAT middle-LOC one-mother

**kááy-htà**
be.not-COND

‘if one among a hundred sheep is lost,...’ (NB. use of feminine gender here may be related to smallness (‘lamb’) gender (‘ewe’) or possibly to endearment.)

(113) **súkú** ás-khì kum-kà an-t=á wóntí
rope 3MS-DAT neck-IN put-SS = 3MS grass

**an-t=á** k’o-bààb-khì há = ?ats-à-m
put-SS = 3MS one-father-DAT 3MS = give-put-IRR

‘... and would put a handle around its neck and put grass (around it) and give it to that person.’ (Context: describes the way a Sheko gave away milk in a gourd; grass could signal that the milk is of good quality.)

(114) **yááb-khì** há = ?ats-à-m
man-DAT 3MS = give-put-IRR

‘he will give it to somebody.’

The expression **k’obààb** ... **k’obààb** stands for ‘the one... the other’ or ‘one... another’. (The form is **k’oy-bààb** in (115).) According to one informant, it is possible to contract **k’obaab** to **k’oob**, but in my corpus I have no examples.

(115) **bálàbáti** k’oý-bààb-ka k’oý-bààb-ka
trad.leader(Amh) one-father-COOR one-father-COOR

**há = tɔ’adh-kì-k**
3MS = fight.MIDD-exist-REAL

‘...one traditional leader would fight with another.’

(116) **k’obààb** ük’-nh s kòb-m k’obààb
one.father milk-DEF-M take-DS one.father

**éez-ñ-s** kòb-m
honey-DEF-M take-DS

‘one took the milk, the other took the honey; ...’
Finally, *k'oy k'oy* literally ‘one one’ can quantify NPs, as in (118). It is not clear whether *k'oy k'oy* can also be adverbial. In (119), *nóogú* ‘word, language’ may be understood.

(117) k’o-bàb ás-kh ááb baru-k-ə ge-tə
    one-father 3MS-DAT eye be.blind-REAL-3STI say-SS

há=kóókú-ta woog-ə k’o-bàb kə̱r-k’ə
    3MS=road-LOC sit-DS one-father forest-IN

Țyatj-ə
    hide-DS

‘the one sat down on the road pretending he was blind, the other hid in the forest;...’

(118) yááb k’oy k’oy to yəg-ə
    man one one just come-DS

‘Only some people came;...’

(119) k’oy k’oy n=siis-ki-k-ə
    one one 1SG=hear-exist-REAL-3STI

‘I hear/ understand a little.’

### 7.4 Quantifiers

Sheko has the following quantifiers:

(120) kétə ‘all’
p’útʃ’ə ‘many, much’
āngə ‘much’
k’oy k’oy ‘some, several, a little bit’ (*k’oy* ‘one’)
gúrdə ‘only’
to ‘only’ (glossed just)
kóta ‘a little, few’

Some quantifiers have the same meaning but a different distribution. For instance, *p’útʃ’ə* quantifies entities, whereas *āngə* quantifies events. Accordingly, *p’útʃ’ə* modifies the NP *kújumble* ‘ant(s)’ in (121) and *āngə* modifies the relativized verb in (122).
(121) toora  kl-b-kh  éd-kā  kūjīnbe
hole  exist-REL-DAT  mouth-IN  ant.mother

p'úu̱já  n = see-k-ô
many  1SG = see.NV-REAL-STI

‘I saw many ants at the holes opening.’

(122) āngā  m = bâq̱-âb  ljīntā  nata
much  1SG = work-REL  MOTIVE  1SG

há = wosk'ú-k-ô
3MS = be.tired.CAUS-REAL-STI

‘I feel tired from working much.’

The difference between to ‘just’ (123)-(124) and guurú ‘only’ (125)-(126) is not so clear. However, to differs from the other quantifiers in that it cannot be nominalized. It may be a particle rather than a true quantifier.

(123) fyáánú  bay-ka  bàábù-ka  to  kl-h
frog  mother-COOD  father-COOD  just  exist-DS

‘there were just a father and a mother frog;...’

(124) umt̪a  ýì = kâtsù-sâsk-âtá  yf-garî  to  um-tô
food  3FS = cook-arrive.CAUS-COND  3FS.POSS-head  just  eat-SS

‘when she cooked food, she only ate herself...’

(125) fèrâ  án-an-kl-b-ljīntā  t'épâ  guurú
horn  put-NEG.1SG-exist-REL-MOTIVE  carry.INF  only

n = t'ép'ú-kl-h
1SG = carry-exist-DS

‘because I have not put horns, I only carry loads;...’

(126) háák'åstā  mändérí-kh  fî = kââs-kl-b  dàwâs
now  village(Ambh)-IN  3PL = play-exist-REL  children

këta  gôôrâ-ka  guurú  fî = nôn-kl-k-ô
all  Amharic-WITH  only  3PL = talk-exist-REAL-STI

‘Now all the children who play in the neighborhood talk only in Amharic.’
Here are illustrative sentences for the other quantifiers. kétā ‘all’ is exemplified in (127)-(129). Its opposite ‘no one’ can be expressed by k’oy ‘one’ plus a negated verb (130).

(127) őti kétā há=fár-tǜ-kə
       cattle all 3MS = snatch-PASS-REAL-STI
       ‘All the cattle were raided.’

(128) há-mèèd-ás-tā kétā gyānū
       3MS.POSS-plain(Amh)-PROX.M-LOC all coffee
       aš-t=á-kə
       plant-PASS = 3MS-REAL-STI
       ‘On all its field coffee has been planted.’ (Context: refers to an area around a well which was in the past inundated for part of the year.)

(129) ŋ-dàdû-ka ŋ-ʔàáp’u-ka kétā
       1SG.POSS-child-COOR 1SG.POSS-nephew-COOR all
       ŋ-turù-k’ā há=ki-htà
       1PL.POSS-land-IN 3MS = exist-COND
       ‘if all my children and sister's children are in our land,...’

(130) a. k’oy k’erà tēe-r=á-k’y-á-mə
       one.ELAT.INCL go.NV-NEG = 3MS-remain-put-IRR-STI
       ‘Not even one will go.’

       b. k’oy yaab yēe-r=á-k’y-á-mə
       one man come.NV-NEG = 3MS-remain-put-IRR-STI
       ‘Nobody will come.’ (‘A man will not come’.)

k'oy k'oy literally ‘one one’ can quantify NPs, as in (131). It is not clear whether k’oy k’oy can also be adverbial. In (132), nóógu ‘word, language’ may be understood.

(131) yááb k’oy k’oy to yàg-ń
       man one one just come-DS
       ‘Only some people came;...’

(132) k’oy k’oy ŋ=síis-kól-kə
       one one 1SG = hear-exist-REAL-STI
       ‘I hear/ understand a little’
kóta ‘a little, few’

(133) \[ \begin{align*} \text{gé} & \equiv \text{ṅ} & \text{ṅ = kóta} & \text{or-ə} & \text{há = ge-ň} \\
\text{say} & \equiv 1\text{SG} & \text{1SG = little} & \text{cry.animal-STI} & \text{3MS = say-DS} \end{align*} \]

‘Hey, let me Bray a little,” he (the donkey) said;’

(134) \[ \begin{align*} \text{kóta} & \text{ āts-ēr} = \text{a-k’y-ā} \\
\text{little} & \text{ give-NÉG} = \text{2SG-remain-put.Q} \end{align*} \]

‘Won’t you give a little?’

Quantifiers are not within the NP. This can be seen in (135)-(136), where the quantifiers kétā ‘all’ and guúrú ‘only’ occur after the case marking.

(135) \[ \begin{align*} \text{náta-ra} & \text{kétā} & \text{wúgu-bārū-ta} \\
1\text{PL-ACC} & \text{all} & \text{kill-throw.away-SS} \end{align*} \]

‘he will finish us all off…’

(136) \[ \begin{align*} \text{n-naanu-won-ŋ-ka} & \text{n-nini-won-ŋ-ka} \\
1\text{SG.POSS-elder.brother-ASS-DAT-COOR} & 1\text{SG.POSS-elder.sister-ASS-DAT-COOR} \end{align*} \]

\[ \begin{align*} \text{guúrú} & \text{ fji = begu-k-ə} \\
\text{only} & \text{ 3PL = pay-REAL-STI} \end{align*} \]

‘They paid only to my elder brothers and sisters.’

Furthermore, all quantifiers (except to ‘only’) can be nominalized by bāab ‘father’/ bé ‘mother’. This is illustrated for some quantifiers below.

(137) \[ \begin{align*} \text{kétā-bàab} & \text{ fðòtú-kl-b} & \text{noogû ás-ka} \\
\text{all-father} & \text{ become-exist-REL thing} & \text{3MS-WITH} \end{align*} \]

\[ \begin{align*} \text{t = á} & \text{ fðòtú-kl-k} \\
\text{COP = 3MS} & \text{ become-exist-REAL} \end{align*} \]

‘all things which exist, exist through him.’
7.5 Adverbs
In this section, adverbs of time and manner are presented. In general, adverbs modify a verb or verb phrase.

Sheko adverbs share some properties with ideophones: both modify verbs and some of each occur with the verb gé ‘say’. For the sake of semantic coherence, adverbs relating to distance and elevation are discussed in section 7.1.3 on demonstratives. Adverbs relating to time are presented together with some nouns and nominal expressions referring to time.

7.5.1 Time adverbs
Time adverbs relative to the moment of speech include the following:

(140) háák'åstà ‘now’ (< haak’ä ‘so then’ + -åstà 3MS.LOC?)
    kätja ‘yet, already’
    má ‘earlier today’
    gōnà ‘yesterday’
    ūndérkh ‘day before yesterday’ (-kh dative?)
    ūnà ‘in the past, long ago’
énà ‘later today’
byārī ‘tomorrow’
jīmà ‘day after tomorrow’
jīfā ‘two days after tomorrow’
jīnīn ‘in the future’

A week is referred to by the compound form tūbsūhaykā (from tūbsū ‘seven’ and haay ‘to spend the night’) or by gābā ‘market’. Other time expressions refer to the time of day:

(141) gōotā ‘midnight’
zhūmātā ‘before dawn’
sāātītā ‘morning’
zaakh ‘noon, afternoon’
gyāāmū ‘evening’

Here are some time adverbs nominalized with bāāb ‘father’:

(142) ūnā-bāāb-kān gōrtā
long.ago-father-DAT head-LOC
‘more than before’ (‘above the past one’)

(143) sāātītā-bāāb-ērā tf’or-f-tā ā
morning-father-ACC be.finished-CAUS-PASS-3MS.Q
‘Is the one of the morning finished?’

Time adverbs can occur in combination with demonstratives (144)-(145). It is not clear whether the adverbs of time are modified by demonstratives, or whether the use of demonstratives here must be linked to the way Sheko forms ‘ordinal’ expressions (146), cf. section 7.3.2 on ‘ordinal’ numbers.

(144) bārkāy-o yōg = ŋ nI = énā hās-arā
monkey-STLADDR come = 1PL 1PL = later.today PROX,M-INCL
na-ŋ iy-tā tā-g-ə
1SG-DAT house-LOC go-STI
‘Hey monkey, come, let’s go to my house today (immediately).’
(145) háák’ástà m-mäák-ń-bàáb-is únà hàs-kñ
now 1SG-tell-IRR-father-DIST.M long.ago PROX.M-DAT
gätsù máráñf kááy ki-b-tà
start needle be.not exist-REL-LOC
‘What I will tell (is what happened) long ago in the beginning when there were no injections,…’

(146) áskñ byáññ-bàáb-tà
3MS-DAT tomorrow-father-LOC
‘the next morning…’

There are two nouns for ‘day’ in the language: bókn ‘day’ (glossed time), and zirkñ ~ zérkn ‘day’. The use of bókn and zirkñ in stories gives the impression that zirkñ is used for a specific day or time (147)-(148), while bókn is used for a non-specific day or period of time without a particular duration (149).

(147) yi=byáású bàay-ñ k’ay-tø yi=zérkn
3PS=crocodile wife-F-DEF rise-SS 3PS=day
k’øy (...) ge-ñ
one say-DS
‘The crocodile’s wife rose and one day she said: … ’

(148) zérkn k’øy oot’ì bàáb ééná bàáb dàdû-kñ
day one Ooxi father wealth father child-DAT
há=mâák-ñ há=déég-ñ̂-əra gilșu-kòb-tø
3MS=tell-DS 3MS=child.F-DEF-ACC pull-take-SS
‘On a certain day, the father of Ooxi told the rich man’s son; he abducted the girl and…’

(149) boorì bey-ka boorì bàáb-ka k’øy bokñ
Boori mother-COOR Boori father-CAOR child time
gäbä-k’à ji=têe-k-ə
market-IN 3PL=go.NV-REAL-STI
‘The father and mother of Boori went to market one day.’

The position of k’øy ‘one’ correlates with the semantics of zirkñ and bókn: zirkñ is typically followed by the modifier, (five
occurrences against one), while bókn is preceded by the modifier (unfortunately just a single occurrence). Recall that k’oy ‘one’ yields a specific reading when it follows a head noun, cf. yááb k’oy yəğn ‘a certain man came’ vs. k’oy yaab yəğn ‘a man came’ (section 7.3.3). Furthermore, bókn is used for a long period in example (150) and it is used in néfabokn ‘always’ (153).

(150) yí = kôyg-n wúfa bokn  fn = tûm-kli-bəastə
3FS = bring-DS IDEO time 3PL = eat-exist-WHILE
she brought it; while they ate it for a long time,...

The following examples support the above explanation.

(151) má hâmûs zîrkñ/ bokn ta-k-ə
earlier.today Thursday(Amh) day time COP-REAL-STI
‘Today is Thursday.’

(152) gônà rôb zîrkñ/ bokn ta-k-ə
yesterday Wednesday day time COP-REAL-STI
‘Yesterday was Wednesday/ a Wednesday.’ (?)

néfa ‘always’ usually occurs in combination with bókn ‘time’ (153). Asking for the opposite, I obtained the form k’oy bokn-əstə one time-3MS.COP? ‘a single day’; in combination with negation the meaning becomes ‘not a single day, never’ (154).

(153) néf-bokn əstə ñ = tag-əb timḥirţy
always-time 3MS.COP? 1SG = go-REL lesson house
hâák’əstə əsə-ka ta-k-ə
now close-INF-WITH COP-REAL-STI
‘The school I always went to is now closed.’

(154) k’oy bokn-əstə yëe-rə
one time-PROX.M.LOC come.NV-NEG
‘(she) didn’t come a single day’

7.5.2 Manner adverbs
Manner adverbs are listed in (155) and (156). The manner adverbs listed in (156) have a 1.2 tone pattern, which is not
found with nouns, numerals or other modifiers, except some ideophones, cf. (157).

(155) syàttä ‘quietly’
    nēsā ‘firmly’
    moyi ‘quickly’ (time, speed)'
    zōōtā ‘crookedly’
    níkí ‘right, correct’ (< Amh. likk)

(156) òôza ‘balancing, in equilibrium’
    dätja ‘right, correct’
    dinga ‘round, in a circle’
    gåma ‘truly, truthfully’
    kòòha ‘quietly (slipping off from a gathering)’
    ñòtta ‘at a great distance’
    ñàga ‘straightly’

(157) zùngàra ‘turn halfway’ (with gé ‘say’)

A few manner adverbs are illustrated in sentential context.

(158) ìsì-s-årä  nēssā  t = a
    beehive.DEF-M-ACC  firmly.ELAT  COP = 2SG
    ha = tś'yaâts'-n-ɓààɓ  tə-k-ə
    2SG = tie-IRR-father  COP-REAL-SS
    ‘you have to tie the beehive very firmly.’

(159) ha-gàttʃ-ra  nēsā  gé-tə  tɔr
    2SG.POSS-stick-ACC  firmly  say-SS  stick.into.ground
    ‘plant your stick firmly in the ground!’

(160) ha = yòwɔk‘a  hayk‘a  fààkà-k‘a  jëèi-n-s-årä
    2SG = INTJ  up.IN  beehive.half-IN  stone-DEF-M-ACC
    òòza  án-tə
    balancing  put-SS
    ‘well, you put the stone balancing on the upper half of the beehive
    and, well, you come down;...’
(161) *k’ôrk’ôrô ha=kôb-téê-tô ha=ʔihj bâtà*  
Corrugated iron  2SG = take-go.NV-ss  2SG = wood.DEF.M ON.LOC  
*dînga mismârl ân-t=a k’yár-a-m*  
Round  nail  put-ss = 2SG  beat-put-IRR  
‘you take the corrugated iron sheets and nail them round on the tree.’

(162) *if-ì-kh bastà isì-əra ɔgàa sosku-tə*  
3PL-DAT middle beehive-ACC straight sleep.CAUS-ss  
‘he laid down the beehive straightly between them…’

Adverbs can be nominalized by *bääb* ‘father’/ *bë* ‘mother’, as is evident from (163) (cf. (162) above) and (164)-(165).

(163) *ɔgàa-bààb sosku-tə*  
Straight-father  sleep.CAUS-ss  
‘he laid down the straight one’

(164) *gàma-bààb-a nà-ŋ maak-ə*  
Truly-father-ACC  1PL-DAT tell-STI  
‘Tell us the truth.’

(165) *gàma ha=maakh*  
Truly  2SG = tell[œ]  
‘Did you tell it truthfully?/ ‘really?’


8 Ideophones and interjections

This chapter describes ideophones, which are divided into intensifying and predicative ideophones; and interjections, grouped into expressive, conative and phatic interjections as well as greetings.

8.1 Ideophones

Ideophones are marked words that vividly depict sensory events (Dingemanse 2009). They are marked among others by special phonotactics and morphological structure. They may have a different syntactic status in different languages, but have in common that they “evolve sensory perceptions” or feelings in a more direct, expressive way than a paraphrase would.

The list of ideophones in Sheko that I compiled is just the tip of the iceberg. Unfortunately, the tone of ideophones is unknown in most cases. Following Amha (2001), ideophones in Sheko can be divided into two groups, based on the constructions in which they occur: the first group consists of “intensifying ideophones” which have a strong collocation with an adjective or verb (or verbs). The second group, called “predicate ideophones”, consists of ideophones which occur with the verb gé ‘say’ to form a predicate.

Before describing the syntactic properties of each group, some recurring (morpho-)phonological structures are discussed.

8.1.1 Prosodical and morphological markedness

In contrast to other vocabulary in Sheko, ideophones contain a lot of geminated consonants. Furthermore, consonants may be lengthened a great deal to add intensity (1). In the example sentences the ideophones are glossed IDEO, while the free translation indicates the meaning.

(1) a. dód::o sub-m-s

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IDEO</th>
<th>be.red-DEF-M</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>‘very red’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In addition, there are several patterns of reduplication. These
are listed below. They occur with intensifying as well as with
predicative ideophones (with gé ‘say’).

1. Ideophones that reduplicate the whole.

(2) gawagawa ‘be damp, becoming dry’ (with gé ‘say’)
3ik’n3ik’n ‘very green/blue’
wiinisiwinis ‘be soft and smooth (hair that is easily
combed)’
burgurburguf ‘be slippery, refuse to break in pieces
(e.g. of taro)’ (with gé ‘say’)

2. Ideophones that reduplicate the whole but drop an a. The
last consonant of the first syllable is often lengthened as
indicated in example (1) above.

(3) gitgita ‘very tired’
bíbirá ‘quick (running)’
feit’feit’a ‘very tender (meat)’
irk’irk’a ‘be damp, becoming wet’ (with gé ‘say’)
zerp’zerp’a ‘rough (hair that is difficult to comb)’

3. Ideophones consisting of one syllable which may be repeated
quite often, see (4). Some ideophones consist of two syllables,
but they typically repeat the first syllable often (5), unlike the
ideophones under point 2. The (perceived) word boundaries in
the examples below may be due to the CV-structure (closed
syllables).

(4) kakaka ‘become red-hot on the fire’
papapa ‘rippling water’
duș duș duș ‘running/walking of a heavy animal’

(5) kub kub kuba ‘fall, bounce (of something heavy)’
kor kor kora ‘fall, bounce (of something light)’
So far, the only ideophone that reduplicates the last syllable is **bek’p’ak’p’ak’** ‘very white’.

4. Ideophones with an alternating vowel.

(6) **dirk’adark’a** ‘breaking into pieces, crumbling easily (of injera), patched/scattered (of color)’

**kindarkondar** ‘contaminate, fall sick’ (with gé ‘say’)

**zendazanda** ‘stretching to the utmost (muscles)’

5. The fifth process of reduplication is also found with other word categories, see section 3.3.2. The initial CV is reduplicated.

(7) **ʃə-ʃonkù  gé-tə  ts’af-ə**

**PLUR-IDEO** **say-ss** **write-sti**

‘Write quickly.’

(8) **dà-dàfa  gé-ə**

**PLUR-IDEO** **say-sti**

‘slowly/carefully’

8.1.2 **Intensifying ideophones**

This group of ideophones is characterised by a strong collocation to an adjective or verb. For instance, color ideophones intensify an adjective (9) or verb (10) denoting color. The color ideophones are listed here:

(9) **ideophone** **adjective**

**bek’p’ak’p’ak’** **gōōts’ñs** ‘white’

**ziizi** **ts’āāns** ‘black’

**doddo** **sūbñs** ‘red’

**3ik’n3ik’n** **tj’úrñj** ‘green’

Syntactically, an ideophone modifying an adjective occurs preceding the adjective.
Some variation in color ideophones has been found. For ‘white’ as e.g. a new sheet of paper, **bek’a** is also attested:

(11) **bek’a**  
IDEO  
3MS = be.white-REAL-STI  
‘It is very white.’

In Guraferda, the ideophones for ‘white’ and ‘black’ are **buk’abuk’a** and **ziliziya** respectively, and for ‘red’ it is **joojoo’a**, as is illustrated by the following riddle:

(12) **kär-k’à**  
forest-IN  
1SG = IDEO  
become.red-exist-SS  
**joojoo’á**  
**subu-ki-tà**  
**óm-t-seń-kis**  
eat-PASS-NEG.1SG-exist.DEM.M  
**ots’ú**  
serti(Amh)  
‘I am very red in the forest and I am a serti plant that is not eaten.’ (Answer: a huge plant which resembles eemu (another type of serti plant) and has bright red fruits which are inedible.)

Other intensifying ideophones always occur in collocation with a verb. They precede the verb (Sheko is strictly verb-final). Here is a list of ideophones and verbs:
(13) **ideophone**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ideophone</th>
<th>verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ojōj</td>
<td>tīt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sīrsīra</td>
<td>ays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gitgita</td>
<td>wosk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fetfet'āa</td>
<td>ṣūb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faakfaaka</td>
<td>ḳapm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jippa</td>
<td>udg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keka</td>
<td>ḳuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k'ap'p'āa</td>
<td>kob</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k'ats'a</td>
<td>aat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some ideophones likewise denoting intensity are apparently not restricted to one verb, but may occur with a set of verbs and in this respect look more like normal adverbs.

(14) **ideophone**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ideophone</th>
<th>verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>jīp'ā</td>
<td>o'y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gīfa</td>
<td>tōy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wuʃa</td>
<td>nōŋ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Intensifying ideophones cannot be nominalized by bāāb ‘father’/ bē ‘mother’.


The ideophones listed in (16) are like intensifying ideophones in being collocated with a verb and occurring without gē ‘say’. However, they share some properties with predicative ideophones. Semantically, they are manner ideophones and they can (more or less easily) be nominalized (17). Note in particular the tonal minimal pair of ideophones ts'ārts'āra
‘pour with a thin straight flow of liquid’ vs. ts’ařts’ářra ‘scream hysterically’.

(16) k’ááb ‘pour’ ts’ařts’árra ‘pour with a thin straight flow’
kyaw ‘shout, bark’ ts’ařts’árra ‘scream hysterically’
door ‘run’ birbirra ‘run quickly (light)’
sár ‘to be hot’ bukbukbuk ‘be ablaze (of fire)’
sár ‘to be hot’ tf’iigt’iiga ‘be hot and stingy (e.g. your tongue)’
tʃ’it’ ‘stretch’ zendzanda ‘stretch to the utmost (muscles)’
mook ‘break off’ dirk’adark’a ‘crumble easily (of sorghum injera)’

(17) ts’ařts’árra-bààb, dirk’adark’a-bààb
IDEO-father IDEO-father
‘One who screams hysterically, one which crumbles easily’

8.1.3 Predicative ideophones
Ideophones which occur with gé ‘to say’ occur as predicate, as shown in examples (18)-(20). The verb carries inflection like any other verb. The examples show that in this way the ideophones are well integrated into the clause structure of Sheko. Semantically, predicative ideophones denote manner and the ideophone, not the verb, carries the meaning of the predicate. (In contrast, intensifying ideophones can be described as ‘more of V’, where the verb carries most of the meaning.)

(18) ga₃₄d-k’a n=kòb-tee-b-tà yí=kindarkondor
mineral.well-IN 1SG = take-go.NV-REL-LOC 3FS = IEO
ge-צ=צ yí=wutu-ʃub-entence m=bàaʃ-k
say-SS = 3FS 3FS = fall-die-DS 1SG = slaughter-REAL

‘When I brought her (a cow) to the water, she got contaminated/fell ill and died; I slaughtered her.’ (line from a well-known story)
(19) ás-kān  ēd-kān  yī = bār-ān  twētweē
3MS-DAT  mouth-IN  3FS = throw-DS  IDEO
áš-kān  foōrī-kān  há = gē-bāstā
3MS-DAT  throat-IN  3MS = say-while
‘... she threw [the hot pebble] in his mouth, and while it said twetwee in his throat (while his throat burned)...’

(20) yāb-m-s  kōskōj  há = ge-ān  fāādū  if-āra
grass-DEF-M  IDEO  3MS = say-DS  hunger  3FS-ACC
hā = fāād-ūs-āb-dīntā  hīī  yī = ge-ān
3MS = be.hungry-CAUS-REL-MOTIVE  IDEO  3FS = say-DS
‘The grass said ‘koshkosh’ (the wind rustled through the grass); and because she (a calf) was hungry she mooed...’

The construction with gē ‘say’ can also be used to adverbialize properties (21). In addition, some ‘say’-items lack the typical vividness and have no special phonetic properties displayed in ideophones. In these cases, it is difficult to draw the line between adverbs and ideophones. For example, dafa and fook in examples (22)-(23) would not be good candidates for ideophones, except for the occurrence of gē ‘say’. gābbā gē ‘to bow down’ (24), is not very expressive either, but it does still have a geminated consonant. Some ideophones may be in the process of ‘normalization’, i.e. their shape adjusts to that of common vocabulary. To put it another way, they are more descriptive and less evocative. Furthermore, in example (25), the usual reduplication is not present. Especially in the case of reduplication, a speaker can choose how expressive he wants to be by varying the number of reduplications.

(21) jīkū  gā-tē  k’īits’
shortly  say-ss  tie.cattle
‘tie close up, tether with a short line’

(22) dafa  gē
IDEO  say
‘Be careful! Slowly!’
(23) fúok’ há=na-ð ge-k-ð
IDEO 3MS = 1SG-DAT say-REAL-STI
‘I suddenly remembered it.’ (Lit: It said ‘fook’ to me.)

(24) yí=títitu gábbá ge-t=í hááy k’ísh-kl-bààstà
3FS = vulture IDEO say-3SS = 3SS water drink-exist-WHILE
‘while Vulture, bowing down, was drinking water,...’

(25) há=je?ú-n-j-ðra áár’ú-k-bààstà há=je?ú-n-j
3MS = stone-DEF-M-ACC hold-exist-WHILE 3MS = stone-DEF-M
burgúj gé-t=á yòwk’a ás-ðra k’ýár-n
IDEO IDEO say-3SS = 3MS INTJ 3MS-ACC beat-DS
‘When he clutches the stone, the stone slips and well, hits him...’

Some ideophones occur with and without gé ‘to say’ (26). In (27), the last line of a well-known children’s song contains a verbless clause, which is the culmination of the song. In (28), the verb gé ‘to say’ is left out; the verb t’er ‘roll, roll over’ matches semantically with the ideophone.

(26) jónkú yøg ~ jónkú gé-tø yøg
quickly come quickly say-3SS come
‘come quickly!’

(27) wòybi tèèr-ñt-oo köskökøj kújú-kà
Bako swell-COND-STLADDR IDEO tree.SP-IN
‘What if the Bako river floods? [moving through the leaves] in the kushu tree.’

(28) íf =sákú-kà t’èrk-üs-bär-üb-tà
3PL = ravine-IN move.forward-CAUS-throw.away-REL-LOC
yí=yànti bèy kúb kúb kúbá t’èr-n
3FS = fox-mother IDEO IDEO IDEO roll-DS
‘when they threw them down the slope, the mother of the fox rolled down with heavy thuds;...’
also possible: kúb kúb kúba getø t’èrn

The list below records other members of the group of ideophones occurring regularly with gé ‘to say’.
(29) naap’naap’a gé ‘carefully, nimbly (stepping)’
irk’irk’a gé ‘be damp (getting wet)’
gawagawa gé ‘be damp (getting dry)’
burgušburguš gé ‘be slippery, slimy, hard to grip; refuse to break in pieces (e.g. of taro)’
konguškonguš gé ‘hopscotch’
k’ink’in gé ‘be lukewarm, not cold, not hot’
išuş gé ‘be warmed up’
burra gé ‘tumble head over heel’
gont’a gé ‘be blunt (of knife)’
t’j’iil (gé) ‘be silent’
taaa gé/ fer ‘sound (of horn)” (cf. fer ‘blow’)
tabja gé ‘be thin (of drinks)”
yiifa gé ‘be bent down’
berera gé ‘orange colored’
busuş gé ‘beige/sand colored’
duş duş duş gé ‘walk/run heavily’
kor kor kora gé/ t’er ‘roll down (bouncing) lightly’

(cf. t’er ‘roll over’)

8.2 Interjections

Ameka (1992, 2006) classifies interjections into three groups. “Expressive interjections” reflect the mental state and emotions of the speaker. “Conative interjections” are used to request something from the hearer. It can be a request for attention, a verbal response, or an action. “Phatic interjections” support the process of communication. One can think of muttering assenting noises to encourage a speaker to continue telling; as well as formulaic utterances in greetings and leave-taking which establish contact, although the latter may be morphologically complex and have inflecting forms, in contrast to prototypical interjections.

8.2.1 List of interjections

This section includes some of the more common interjections in Sheko. Class membership is not absolute, i.e. an interjection may belong to more than one category. Some expressive interjections are listed in (30). The last two are terms of address used as interjunctional phrases.
(30) **waah** conveys pain
**yfia** conveys distress (see (31) below)
**o** conveys surprise, be taken aback
**ata** conveys surprise, disbelief
**bəaʔa** conveys rejection (tongue may be protruded)
**əy** conveys anger
**wətəo** conveys astonishment or bewilderment
also (wo)wowowow
**yəʔo/ kəyə** lit. ‘oh god!’; functions more like ‘really’
**mɓəɓəbo** lit. ‘oh my father’, conveys sympathy or understanding of the situation, but can also be used (ironically?) for the reverse. Gf. bəɓən bəɓən

(31) **yfia** ə = gee-tə  nata  tʃɨ-ʃtə  ky = á
        INTJ  1SG = say-SS  1SG  IDEO-3MS.COP?  exist = 3MS?

**há = kəes-ə**
3MS = go.out-put.Q
‘Voicing my sadness, me staying quiet - would it appear?’

The following interjections are classified as conative:

(32) **haʔ** command to take/hold something
**wəʔ** warning not to do something (for children)
**yáee** asks for attention (at start of conversation)
**baʔ** ‘go out of my way’ cf. baːt ‘turn away’

Also, verb forms of sifis ‘to listen’ are used expressively or conatively. The imperative sifis ‘listen!’ used at the end of an utterance, i.e. ‘mark my words’, conveys that the speaker considers important what he just said; and also asks for acceptance of the interlocutor. An interrogative form is used to demand attention, typically as a tag at the end of a sentence:

(33) **məndərl-ʔə**  ha = ki-ə  sisi = á
    village-IN  2SG = exist-STI  listen = 2SG.Q

‘You should stay in the neighborhood. Do you hear/understand?’

Furthermore, calls for animals are included under conative ideophones (tone not indicated):
(34) **bitbitbit** call for chicken  
    **kutʃkutʃkutʃ** call to chase away chicken (Gf.)  
    **rrru /rururu** call for a cat  
    **ru k’yaas** call to chase away a cat (*k’yaas* ‘to leave’)  
    **kiskis** call to chase away goats  
    **sst ~ ust** incentive for a dog to be on the alert

The items in (35) belong to the group of phatic interjections.

(35) **woy** response to a call (same as in Amharic), also possible: **hâáh**  
    **âhee** ‘yes’ (Gf. **yee**)  
    **âʔáá** ‘no’  
    ha... ha... conveys consent, understanding, attention (especially used a lot during storytelling; also expected from children after **iya**-imperatives, section 10.2.2)  
    **noor** ‘be welcome, join us’, said when a newcomer approaches a group of people (< Amh.)  
    **hânts’e** said when someone sneezes  
    **gé** Imperative of ‘say’, introduces a request (see (36) below)  
    **bate** (Gf.) introduces polite request  
    **yok’a** ‘well’, used as filler phrase, or may signal conclusion  
    **hâáh** conveys that the speaker did not understand, request to repeat. Also used to respond to **yáee** when at a distance.  
    **yee** conveys that the speaker has been understood (especially common at the end of a conversation at a distance) ‘OK, fine, I heard you’ (Gf. ‘yes’)

---

19 In the Guraferda variant: **koobu** ‘cock’, **koybun** ‘chicken’. In the Sheko variant **kutʃi** has become the word denoting ‘chicken’. In Sheko the conative calls for chicken are less used.
Finally, there is a special call to signal that ótfí ‘mushrooms’ have been found in the forest. People will try to locate the place where the call came from and go there with a basket to get a share.

(37) ótfí kūkúú kūkúú

8.2.2 Greetings

Example (38) lists some possibilities to start greeting someone. The greetings in (b) and (c) can be modified for person, to address a plural addressee or to continue greeting by asking about third persons.

(38) \begin{align*}
\text{question} & \quad \text{answer} \\
\text{a.} & \quad \text{3ázi-tà} \quad \text{3ázà} \\
& \quad \text{good-COP.Q} \quad \text{good} \\
& \quad \text{‘Is it well?’} \\
\text{b.} & \quad \text{3ázì = a-kl} \quad \text{3ázà} \\
& \quad \text{good = 2SG-exist[Q]} \quad \text{good} \\
& \quad \text{‘Are you well?’} \\
\text{c.} & \quad \text{ha = karbu-kl} \quad \eta = \text{karbu-k-ø} \\
& \quad \text{2SG = be.strong-exist[Q]} \quad \text{1SG = be.strong-REAL-STI} \\
& \quad \text{‘Are you strong?’} \quad \text{‘I am strong.’} \\
\text{d.} & \quad \text{fåyki-tà} \quad \eta = \text{kl-k-ø} \\
& \quad \text{life-COP.Q} \quad \text{life} \quad \text{1SG = exist-REAL-STI} \\
& \quad \text{‘Is it life/healthy?’} \quad \text{‘I am alive/ healthy.’}
\end{align*}

The following greeting and its answer is probably a calque from Amharic Ŭndet nàw? - allān.
(39)  áás-tə  n = kya
    how-cop[sg]  1sg = exist?
    ‘How is it?’  ‘I am there.’

Here are greetings which refer to the time of day:

(40)  a.  žážá  hàày = à
        good  spend.night = 2sg.q
    ‘did you spend the night well?’ (greeting in the morning)

    b.  žáž = a  féej
        good = 2sg  spend.day[q]
    ‘did you spend the day well?’ (greeting in the afternoon)

Leave-taking expressions are illustrated in (41). The return answer can be žážá, žéénjə or àmín.

(41)  a.  žáž  ki-ee
        good  exist-sti
    ‘stay well’

    b.  žážá  fēēj  /  žážá  hàày
        good  spend.day  good  spend.night
    ‘have a nice day’ / ‘goodnight’

    c.  žážá  tóg-ə
        good  go-sti
    ‘Have a nice visit/go in peace.’

    d.  žážá  bángár-ə
        good  return-sti
    ‘return well’
9 The noun phrase

Chapter 9 discusses three topics with regard to the noun phrase. First, word order in the noun phrase is treated. The unmarked order appears to be head - modifier, as opposed to the order modifier - head, in which the head is tonally marked. Secondly, case marking is treated. Lastly, possessive constructions are treated comparing their syntactic and semantic properties.

9.1 Noun phrase and word order

Sheko predominantly follows an SOV typology, as described in section 10.9. The language is verb-final, main clauses follow dependent clauses and most affixes are suffixal. But at the level of the noun phrase, the language partly deviates from this pattern.

Of the various modifiers, some occur in a fixed position in relation to the head noun, while others may both precede or follow the head noun. Possessor affixes always precede the head noun, except in a few terms of address. Numerals and relative clauses occur on either side of the head noun, as well as demonstratives, although the preferred place for demonstratives is following the head noun. Adjectives must follow the head noun, unless they are marked by the relative clause marker. If a noun is used as a modifier, it precedes the head noun, e.g. in noun-noun compounds.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Modifier</th>
<th>preceding head</th>
<th>following head</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adjective</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demonstrative</td>
<td>few</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numeral</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relative clause</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘relativised’ adjective</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possessive</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>few</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modifying noun</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1. Position of modifiers

When the head noun is followed by a modifier, there are no tonal or other changes in the construction. This is illustrated for numerals (1a), demonstratives (b), and relative clauses (c).
When a modifier precedes the head noun it is modifying, the tonal pattern on the head noun changes. This modifier can be a possessor prefix, numeral, relative clause, adjective with relative clause marker, or modifying noun. The following table shows the tonal changes in disyllabic nouns for all six tonal patterns. The numbers in brackets indicate the tone level of the two syllables of the noun. Tone 4 is replaced by tone 2 and all other tones are replaced by tone 1. Note that four of the six contrastive patterns are neutralized by this replacement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun in isolation</th>
<th>pre-modified noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wûrâ (44) ‘fly whisk’</td>
<td>há-wura (22) ‘his fly whisk’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dûmâ (41) ‘amulet’</td>
<td>há-dumâ (21) ‘his amulet’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gâñû (33) ‘stick’</td>
<td>há-gâñû (11) ‘his stick’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ôtî (31) ‘cow’</td>
<td>há-ôtî (11) ‘his cow’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>batjû (21) ‘bed’</td>
<td>há-batjû (11) ‘his bed’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bôbî (13) ‘sorghum sp.’</td>
<td>há-bôbî (11) ‘his sorghum’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2. Tone on pre-modified nouns

Below, the tonal modification in head nouns is illustrated for numerals, demonstratives, relative clauses and modifying nouns. In example (2a), the numeral t’âûgû ‘two’ precedes the head noun ðyâsî ‘moon, month’, and the tone pattern on the head noun changes. Likewise, in (2b) a relative clause precedes umtû ‘food’; in (2c) a demonstrative precedes koosû ‘traditional
practice, wisdom’ and in (2d) the head dādū is preceded by a noun.

(2) a.  yī=yōw’ka  t’āāgī  ṭyats’n-kā  ādi-k’ā
   3PS = well  two  moon-DAT  footprint-IN

   kāst’ =l-k-ə  gē-t’-h
   cut.straight.PASS = 3PS-REAL-STEM  say-PASS-DS
   ‘well, after two months she is said to be ritually clean’ (Lit: ‘…it is said: “She has been cut” ’)

b.  kyāz  ūm-kl-b  ēmt’ā
   king  eat-exist-REFL  food
   ‘food which a king eats’

c.  kaari  sáántà  yīs  kōsù-ra
   until  front.LOC  DIST.M  divination-ACC

   ītə  māāk-o
   who.COP  tell-STL ADDR
   ‘who will tell this traditional practice in the future?’

d.  kōmtū  dādū
   chief  child
   ‘son of a/ the chief’

An interesting case in discussing modifiers in Sheko is the adjective. The adjective is formed by adding definiteness-gender marking to an adjectival verb stem (see section 7.2.1). Example (3) illustrates the adjective ‘red’ derived from the verb sūb ‘be red’. These adjectives can only appear following a head noun; they are not allowed to precede a head noun (4)-(5).

(3) a.  sūb-m-s  b.  sūy-b-ə
   red-DEF-M  red-F-DEF
   ‘red (m)’  ‘red (f)’

(4) a.  ḫēmā  sūb-m-s
   cloth  red-DEF-M
   ‘red cloth’

b.  *sūb-m-s  ḫēmā
(5) a. dādū tēyf-m bādīgħ yf=gē-t’u-k-ə
   child little-F-DEF Badign 3FS = say-PASS-REAL-STI
   ‘the plump girl is called Badign’

b. *tēyf-m dādū bādīgħ yf=gē-t’u-k-ə

Remarkably, the relative clause marker - ámb ~ - ámb can be suffixed to the adjective. When this morpheme is present the relativized adjective can appear preceding and following the head noun, just like relative clauses (6).

(6) a. há-dàws-kh gōrī-k’ā hāāy
   3MS.POSS-children-DAT head-IN water
   k’ēéts-n-s- ámb k’aabu-ta fāy-sū-ta
   be.cold-DEF-M-REL pour-SS be.saved-CAUS-SS
   ‘poured cold water on his children’s heads and saved them and...’

b. ás-kh ʒéé-h-j ámb noogū án-n-bàāb-ís
   3MS-DAT good-DEF-M-REL thing put-IRR-father-DIST.M
   bàsū-s-kl-b tā-k-ə
   want-CAUS-exist-REL COP-REAL-STI
   ‘It is necessary to arrange good things for him.’

Case markers are suffixed to the rightmost element of the NP:

(7) [yāb-m-s nata tā-k-ə gē-b]-əra
   man-DEF-M 1SG COP-REAL-STI say-REL-ACC
   wūg-ūb yis
   kill-REL DIST.M
   ‘the one who killed [the man who said “It’s me”]’

(8) haak’āstā [koos-n-s hàās]-əra
    now divination-DEF-M PROX.M-ACC
    òōt’jú-sís-ér=fíl-kl-k-ə
    ask-hear-NEG = 3PL-exist-REAL-STI
    ‘Nowadays they don’t ask after [this traditional wisdom].’
(9) [báakù-tà åŋ-t'-àb yìs]-k'à hāāy åŋ-t'ù-tà
firestones-LOC put-PASS-REL DIST,M-IN water put-PASS-SS
‘in [this (thing) which has been put on the firestones] water is put...

By virtue of the tonal behaviour of modified NPs, it is possible to formally distinguish between an NP with a modifier (10a)-(11a) and two NPs (10b)-(11b), or decide to which NP a modifier belongs (12a,b). Thus, in (12a) the modifier fík'ùsòb ‘old’ modifies géék'ù ‘goat’, whereas in (12b) ‘old’ modifies yááb ‘man’, which in the example has tone 2 because the modifier precedes it. For completeness, (12c,d) give alternative sentences with a different word order.

(10) a. nûütsù ñ'ara wuçìbè öyt-ù tø-k ø
hyena 3FS-ACC kill-REL.mother cow,F-DEF COP-REAL-STI
‘It was [the cow which the hyena killed].’

b. nûütsù ñ'ara wuçìbè öyt-ù tø-k ø
hyena 3FS-ACC kill-REL.mother cow,F-DEF COP-REAL-STI
‘[The one which the hyena killed] was [the cow].’

(11) a. gûrmā zyàåmà datà in=á-k ø
Gurma in-law near.LOC go =3MS-REAL-STI
‘He has gone to Gurma’s in-law(s)’

b. gûrmā zyàåmà datà in=á-k ø
Gurma in-law near.LOC go =3MS-REAL-STI
‘Gurma has gone to an in-law/ in-laws’

(12) a. géék'ù fík'-ù-sòb yááb-ka
goat be.old-DEF-M-REL man-WITH
fós’ù-t' =á-k ø
skin-PASS =3MS-REAL-STI
‘The old goat was skinned by the man.’

b. géék'ù fík'-ù-sòb yaab-ka
goat be.old-DEF-M-REL man-WITH
fós’ù-t' =á-k ø
skin-PASS =3MS-REAL-STI
‘The goat was skinned by the old man.’
c. ífk’-á-s-áb  geek’ù  yááb-ka
    be.old-DEF-M-REL  goat  man-WITH

fós kul-t’-ák-ə
    skin-PASS = 3MS-REAL-STI

‘The old goat was skinned by the man.’

d.  géék’ù  yááb  ífk’-á-s-áb-ka
    goat  man  be.old-DEF-M-REL- WITH

fós kul-t’-ák-ə
    skin-PASS = 3MS-REAL-STI

‘The goat was skinned by the old man.’

From the perspective of the noun phrase, the unmarked order is head - modifier. In contrast, the order modifier - head is marked by a tonal permutation. The unmarked order on NP level is thus contrary to the order on clause level, which is clearly head-final. Sheko could thus be subsumed under type D2 in Heine’s classification, i.e. SOV languages with head-initial NP’s (Heine 1976). However, as we saw, the order of head and modifiers in the Sheko NP is rather free, and both orders are frequently attested. Therefore, it might not make much sense to classify the NP in Sheko as either head-initial or head-final. In the Omotic family, which is known at large as verb-final, languages differ with respect to flexibility in constituent order on the clause level as well as basic order on the NP level (Dimmendaal (2008); cf. his comments on interaction of constituent order with other subsytems of grammar and its value for language typology).

9.2 Case
In Sheko, case is a property of the noun phrase. The case marker attaches to the rightmost constituent of the noun phrase. The case markers of Sheko are enumerated in table 3:
The nominative case is unmarked. The case system in Sheko is thus different from (nominative-absolutive) marked nominative-systems such as found in some other branches of Omotic. E.g. Wolaitta (Lamberti and Sottile 1997) and Benchnon (Rapold 2006) have a marked nominative system.

There is no segmental genitive case, but in juxtaposition the head noun has a special tone pattern, as all head nouns which are preceded by a modifier (see section 9.1). Other possessive phrases have a dative case. The analysis of -kà as dative in possessive expressions is discussed in section 9.2.3.

Furthermore, the dative patterns with oblique rather than core cases. The dative is marked obligatorily, whereas accusative is not obligatory marked (and nominative unmarked); in addition, dative-marked roles in relative clauses use the resumptive pronoun strategy and cannot use the gap strategy, whereas the gap strategy is preferred for accusative-marked roles (section 11.4.4).

The similitative and motive are not proper case markers: they are less clearly suffixal than the case markers and their morphological structure is also different from the other cases. Especially the make-up of ẽʃtə is of interest in the view of subordinate clause marking. This is discussed in section 9.2.8, cf. section 11.3 on adverbial clauses.
The next subsections discuss the case markers. In describing their range of use I make informal use of roles, without claiming that these roles are a reality for Sheko speakers.

9.2.1 Nominative
The nominative in Sheko is the unmarked form of the noun. It is the form used in isolation, and the form on which the other cases are built by adding a suffix. Syntactically, the nominative is the prototypical subject case. The typical semantic function of the nominative is Actor (Agent-like roles), such as in (13)-(14). Since the language has a passive, Undergoers can also be in the nominative. Furthermore, Experiencers may be in the nominative, although others are accusative. Experiencer verbs are discussed in section 12.4.

(13) kōobbú ‘cock’; kōobb-ëm-s ‘the cock’

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{há = ge-t = á} & & \text{kōobb-ëm-s} & & \text{tūt-ëm-ëra} \\
3MS = say-SS & & 3MS & & \text{cock-DEF-M} & & \text{vulture-DEF-ACC}
\end{align*}
\]

\text{zēɛr-ën}
advise-DS
‘the cock advised the vulture, saying ...’

(14) ūdú ‘ensete, false banana’

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ūdú} & & \text{ts'ëg = àk-ë} \\
ensete & & \text{bear.fruit.banana} = 3MS\text{-REAL-STI}
\end{align*}
\]

‘The ensete bears fruit.’

9.2.2 Accusative
The accusative marker is -ëra ~ -ara (15a). Around Tepi and in Guraferda the basic form is -ana. The first vowel of the accusative marker is dropped following a vowel (15b). The accusative optionally changes to -a after s (15c) and after the nominalizer -bàmb ‘father’.

(15) a. dēyyni  yi-fyáâyó-ëra  kòb-ën
\[
\begin{align*}
girl.F\text{-DEF} & & 3FS\text{.POSS-frog.F-DEF-ACC} & & \text{take-SS}
\end{align*}
\]
‘The girl took the frog and...’
b.  **kútši-ra**  há = buuts’u-k-ə
    chicken-ACC  3MS = pluck-REAL-STI

    ‘He plucked a chicken’

c.  **yí = ás-a**  gask-ə
    3FS = 3MS-ACC  insult-Ds

    ‘…and she insulted him;…’

Accusative marking is not obligatory. It occurs on definite as
well as indefinite noun phrases (15a, b above). impressionistically, accusative marking occurs more frequently
with definite noun phrases, but definiteness is not a sufficient
condition, see e.g. úk’īs ‘the milk’ without accusative in (16).
Other factors such as discourse recoverability may play a role
in triggering accusative marking. When the object precedes the
subject (OSV order), the object is nearly always marked (17).

16.  **dád-ə-s**  ük’-ə-s  gōōs-ka  há = kōb-ə
    child-DEF-M  milk-DEF-M  gourd-WITH  3MS = take-Ds

    ‘the boy would take the milk in a gourd;…’

17.  há = gōōs-ə-s-əra  yááb-ə-s  dufu-t = á
    3MS = snake-DEF-M-ACC  man-DEF-M  hit-SS = 3MS

    wuů-ə
    kill-DS

    ‘the man hit the snake and killed it;…’

Syntactically, the accusative is the prototypical object case.
Semantically, Undergoer roles are typically marked by the
accusative, such as the Patient in (17) above. It is possible to
have two accusative-marked constituents in one clause, when
the verb is causative (18). Experiencers of causative
experiencer verbs may be in the accusative case as well (19).

18.  **ši-əra  li-ə-s-əra  há-dir-su-k-ə**
    3FS-ACC  house-DEF-M-ACC  3MS = sweep-CAUS-REAL-STI

    ‘He had her sweep the house.’

19.  **nata-ra  wosk’ = a-k-ə**
    1SG-ACC  be.tired.CAUS = 3MS-REAL-STI

    ‘I am tired.’ (Lit: It tired me.)
The short form -(ə)ra of the inclusive marker k’arə ‘also, even’ is formally similar to the accusative marker. See section 9.6.2.

9.2.3 ‘Genitive’ and dative
In Sheko, there is a large overlap between ‘genitive’ and dative, in form and also in function, although the core role of the dative is Recipient/ Benefactive. A typical genitive and dative relation are given in (20). This overlap between ‘genitive’ and dative calls for a closer look at the marking of genitival relations.

(20) a. ás-khā āšū
   3MS-‘GEN’? leg
   ‘his leg’

b. kābī ás-khā ats-ə
   axe  3MS-DAT give-STI
   ‘give the axe to him’

Sheko has various constructions which express a genitival (or associative) relation between two noun phrases in Sheko. First, two NPs can be juxtaposed (21a). The head is marked tonally since it is preceded by a modifier (see section 9.1). Secondly, the marker -kh can be suffixed to the modifier (i.e. the possessor), as in (21b). This marker is formally identical to the dative case marker -kē, as in the existential possessive construction in (22).

(21) a. ōtī baatji
    cow  skin
    ‘cow hide’

b. ōtī-khā baatji
   COW-DAT skin
   ‘skin of a cow, cow hide’

(22) gurma-khā gyănū ky=ā-k-ə
    Gurma-DAT coffee exist = 3MS-REAL-STI
    ‘There is coffee to Gurma.’ i.e. ‘Gurma has coffee.’
These three constructions differ syntactically and semantically. In (21a), the emphasis lies on the whole (here, the possessor), whereas in (21b) the emphasis lies on the part (here, the possessed) and the construction is typically used for inalienable possession. The question rises whether this construction has a ‘genuine’ genitive marker or contains a possessor which is marked by a dative. The only difference with the dative NP in (22) is that in the latter the subject NP and dative NP can occur in any order in the sentence, while the construction in (21b) has a fixed order NP-κn NP. Note that the construction used with inalienable possession is segmentally marked while the construction used with alienable possession is not. This is the reverse of how inalienable and alienable possession are coded cross-linguistically (Payne 1997:105). The reversal in markedness has been recognized by Claudi and Serzisko (1985:134) for Diizi, and they claimed that Diizi employs ‘possessor promotion’. If that is the case, the dative would be a logical choice for the possessor NP.  

Apart from the above, constructions like that in (22) are widespread in the world’s languages, showing that the dative in general is used to express possession (Heine 1997; Heine and Kuteva 2002:103ff). Furthermore, Rapold (2006:484f) mentions a possible (and possibly older) variant of the dative case -n in Benchnon, namely k*n. Hayward and Tsuge (1998) suggest *-n as dative/ benefactive for South Omotic languages. Therefore, it is reasonable to analyse -k*n as a dative case marker.

While in Sheko the dative is also used in marking genitival relationships, this is not so in the other Majoid languages. Examples (23) and (24) show for Diizi that -kn is used in genitival relations with body parts (similar to Sheko), but that there is a marker -is for dative (unlike Sheko).

---

20 For comments on the notions of ‘inalienability’ and ‘possessor promotion’ see section 9.3. To make myself clear, I do not claim that the NP NP and NP -kn NP constructions in Sheko mark (in)alienability. They emphasize the whole (initial NP) and the part (last NP) respectively. See further section 9.3.

21 In Sheko, there are traces of -k*n, most notably in the Guraferda variant. See section 6.1.2.
(23)  **iti-kṣa**  **geši-ga**  **a-wu-ṇa**
\(\text{you,pl-gen}\)  \(\text{head-in}\)  \(3\text{sm-enter-past/pres.q}\)

‘Do you understand?’ (cited from Beachy 2005:72)

(24)  **saagu dadi  yesuš  yecz-is  ụw-kọ-gu**
\(\text{God}\)  \(\text{child}\)  \(\text{yohls-dat}\)  \(\text{die-perf-3sm}\)

‘God’s child, Jesus, has died for (on behalf of) you.’ (Beachy 2005:69)

Nayi too has -**kņ** for (inalienable) genitival constructions and -**f** ~ -**f** for dative (Aklilu 1997:603f). A sibilant is widespread in North Omotic for dative/ benefactive case marking (Hayward and Tsuge 1998:31).

Possessive constructions are further discussed in section 9.3.

**9.2.4 Dative**

The dative marker is -**kņ**, except for first person pronouns, which suffix -**i**.

(25)  a.  **iti-kņa**  b.  **ná-i**
\(\text{2pl-dat}\)  \(\text{1pl-dat}\)

‘for you (pl)’  ‘for us’

The core roles marked by the dative are Recipient and Benefactive. Some examples are given below.

(26)  **iʒ  əs-kņa  ük’u  hàayy  yí=ʔatsu-bàstə**
\(\text{3fs}\)  \(\text{3sm-dat}\)  \(\text{milk}\)  \(\text{water}\)  \(\text{3fs = give-while}\)

‘while she gave milk to him’ (Note: ‘milk water’ i.e. liquid, not curds.)

(27)  **yĩ’f=ṇ  ṇ=ye-kņa  mit’ũ-o**
\(\text{what = 1sg}\)  \(\text{1sg = 2sg-dat}\)  \(\text{witness-stladdr}\)

‘What could I say in favour of you?’
(28) bōndũ ụn-khụ ụnghà ụngha-khụ
Bandu 3PL-DAT be.good-REL place-IN
ụn = bi-m-ẹ
3PL = exist-IRR-STI
‘The Bandu live at the place which is convenient for them’

(29) ụn-ụkụ-on-khụ ụngha-khụ
3PL.POSS-grandfather-ASS-DAT help-exist-REL
‘those who help their grandparents’

The dative in (30) is ambiguous between ‘tell to me’ and ‘tell for me, in my stead’.

(30) na-ŋ maak-ọ
1SG-DAT tell-STI
‘tell me’/‘tell for me’

The interlocutor may be referred to by a dative-marked phrase as well as by an accusative marked phrase. Example (31) gives an example of both in the same story. Impressionistically, the accusative is used when the relation is asymmetric and the one talked to is conceptualised as a Patient, as in the last line of (31) where the father warns his daughter.

(31) há = mārtā-khụ ụngha = kụ há = ge-ŋ ...
3MS = Marta-DAT peace 2SG = exist[ŋ] 3MS = say-OS
há-dëgh-ọra ...
3MS.POSS-child.f.DEF-ACC 3MS = say-OS
‘[her friend] said to Marta: “How are you?” (and while they talked, her father saw them together and he got angry and) he said his daughter: (“If I see you a second time with him, you will have a problem!”)’

The dative case also marks the Possessor when possession is expressed with an existential predicate (32) and in possessive constructions emphasizing the part (33). Since some locative and temporal adverbial clauses use body parts, the construction is used frequently (34). See section 9.3 for a discussion on possessive constructions.
9.2.5 Inessive and locative

Cases locating referents in the spatial domain are -k’ā, glossed IN for inessive, and -tā, glossed LOC for locative.

In order to illustrate the semantics of both case markers, they are contrasted first in examples with a stative interpretation (35)-(37). The inessive -k’ā involves contact and/ or containment in the space denoted by the noun phrase, whereas the more general locative -tā does not involve contact or containment. It rather expresses a space in the proximity of and/ or around the denoted place.

(35) a. iy-k’ā kī=jīl-k-ø
    house-IN exist=3PL-REAL-STI
    ‘They are in the house’ (Context: speaker knows that the referents are inside the house.)

b. iy-tā kī=jīl-k-ø
    house-LOC exist=3PL-REAL-STI
    ‘They are home’ (Context: speaker doesn’t know the exact location, the referents can be somewhere around the house.)

(36) a. íntfū t’úúm-kh gōrī-k’ā
    wood mountain-DAT head-IN
    ‘The tree is on top of the mountain.’
b.  gībù  t’úm-kh  gōṛi-tā
   cloud  mountain-DAT  head-LOC
   ‘The cloud is above the mountain.’

(37)  a.  kārbān iy-kh  sījū-k’ā  (tā-k-ə)
   fence  house-DAT  side-IN  COP-REAL-STI
   ‘The fence is around the farm.’

b.  yāb-ṁ-s  tāāmū-kh  sīj-tā  (tā-k-ə)
   man-DEF-M  fire-DAT  side-LOC  COP-REAL-STI
   ‘The man is near the fire.’

In example (38), -tā and k’ā are on words referring to the same place/ space, i.e. the forest. The first word, áztā ‘in it’, is used with respect to a badger. It is not known where the badger is all the time, he might just frequent the place where the beehive is. The second kārkāk’ā ‘in the forest’ is used with respect to the location of a beehive, which is situated within the forest.

(38)  utsā  áz-tā  ky-āa-b  kārkā-k’ā  isn-ēnā
   badger  3MS-LOC  exist-REL  forest-IN  beehive-ACC
   ha = kārr-ṁtā
   2SG = build-COND
   ‘if you build a beehive in a forest where a badger lives,...’

Secondly, -k’ā and -tā are contrasted with motion predicates. In (39), the case markers create opposite directions of movement in combination with the other elements in the sentence. In (40), the difference is not so big, but the (a) example makes immediately clear that the inside of the house is concerned, whereas in (b) this is less evident.

(39)  a.  ñtʃu-k’ā  há = yēe-k-k-ə
   wood-IN  3MS = come.NV-exist-REAL-STI
   ‘He is coming from (from in) the wood.’

b.  ñtʃu-tā  há = yēe-k-k-ə
   wood-LOC  3MS = come.NV-exist-REAL-STI
   ‘He is coming to the wood.’
(40) a.  ḳî-y-k’ā  Ḳà-yàr-d = á-k-ə
    house-IN  enter = 3MS-REAL-STI
    ‘He entered into the house’

b.  ḳî-y-tà  Ḳà-yàr-d = á-k-ə
    house-LOC  enter = 3MS-REAL-STI
    ‘He entered the house (the compound?)’

In the following pair of sentences, the directional contrast is lost, but the notions of ‘contact/containment’ of -k’ā IN versus ‘vicinity’ of -tà LOC remain. In (41), person A follows person B, taking the same path. He walks thus literally in the others’ footsteps. In (42), a dog looks behind him, i.e. in the direction of his footprints, to a beehive that he caused to fall.

(41)  ás-kàn  ṣē-dí-k’ā  bangar-tə
    3MS-DAT  footprint-INS  return-INS
    ‘he returned after him and’ (Lit: (he) returned in his footsteps.)

(42)  āz  ṣē-dí-tà  bangar-tə  .GetInstance
    3MS  footprint-LOC  return-INS  beehive-INS
    há = tfftú-kí-bān-tà  GetInstance  GetInstance  beehive-exist-father  beehive-exist-father
    mūúrú  két-àašt  zi-w’n-yèé-tə
    all(Amh)  all-3MS.COP?  chase-come.NV-INS
    ‘While he turned/looked back and watched the beehive, all the beehive bees came chasing him…’

However, there are also some idiosyncrasies when it comes to motion to or from a place. ḡabā ‘market’ always suffixes -k’ā, even in case one merely indicates the event of going to town on market day, without intending to enter the field where the market is held (43). ḡetakristyan ‘church’ is preferably used with -tà, even if the event entails entering the church compound and the church (44). Compare also (45).

(43)  ḡabā-k’ā  ḡa ‘tág-á
    market-IN  2SG = go-put[Q]
    ‘Will you go to the market?’
Example (39) illustrated how motion to and from a place were indicated by respectively locative -tä and inessive -kä. Since gäbä ‘market’ always occurs with -kä, motion ‘to’ and ‘from’ are expressed with other means. This is illustrated in (46). When only the case marker is present, direction to the market is understood (a). When a medial verb is employed the referent is in the first clause presented as being at the market and thus logically cannot return to it, so that the second clause must be interpreted as returning from being at the market (b).

(46) a. gäbä-kä bangar=f-k-ä
    market-IN return = 3FS-REAL-STI
    She returned to the market.

b. gäbä-kä ki-tä bangar=f-k-ä
    market-IN exist-SS return = 3FS-REAL-STI
    She returned from the market.

In order to express ‘here’, example (47) uses both -kä and häs-tä, meaning something like ‘here in the city (as opposed to in the countryside)’. But if one uses ‘here’ in the sense of ‘at this very spot’, one can use häzkä, with the inessive case, as in sentence (48). In contrast, ‘(up) there’ goes well together with the more general locative case -tä (49).

(47) kätäm-kä häs-tä na-ŋ gülbaŋ
    city(Amh)-IN PROX.M-LOC 1SG-DAT strength
    ti’ór-árá
    finish-NEG

    ‘Here in the city my strength doesn’t run out.’
Furthermore, there are several words denoting locations, which almost always suffix a case marker, to the point where the case marker becomes an inherent part of the word. The following is meant to enumerate such words, while also illustrating part of the Sheko material culture.

Sheko houses are traditionally situated with their door crosswise to the slope, and the dung outlet at the side where the hill slopes down, so that the manure can flow towards the home garden (örätà), which is situated mainly downwards from the house. The place in front of the house is flat and part of it (gyäbr‘à) is kept free from grass to use as a threshing ground and place for drying coffee and grain. There is an open space with an outside fireplace at the back side of the house (kándätà). In addition, the following words denoting places have the same final syllable -tä:

(50)  
gejtä  ‘lower part of field’
édätä  ‘upper part of field’
gámätä  ‘other side, far side, bank of river’
újtä  ‘on the ground, down’
buta  ‘outside’

Some of these words are presented in context in the examples (51)-(52).
(51)  yeta ængùt’ = a-k-ø gáámτá kées-ø  
2sg grow.PASS = 2sg-REAL-STI far.side.LOC go.out-STI  
so ki-ee  
up.there exist-STI
‘You are grown up. Go to the other shore and live up there.’

(52)  fšn-às-tà úʃtà wut = á-k  
beehive-PROX.M-LOC down.LOC fall = 3MS-REAL  
‘... the beehive fell to the ground.’

Likewise, k’ank’à ‘under, below’ and hayk’à ‘up’ do not occur without the inessive case marker -k’à.

(53)  kěta-báb-khì k’ank’à ñjì-ra an-àb  
all-father-DAT under-IN 3PL-ACC put-REL  
‘what put(th) them below all others’

(54)  í3 hayk’à ñtfù-khì góri-k’à kées-tø  
3fs up-IN wood-DAT head-IN go.out-SS  
‘She climbed up to the top of the tree and...’

Place names often include a locational case marker as well. (Tone is not indicated.)

(55)  boyta, durita, gizmreta, komata, samǝrtǝ  
badik’a, bardik’a, faǝk’a, gayziyk’a, fajak’a

Other nouns form locational expressions when suffixed by a locational case marker. These nouns are mostly body part nouns. (56) lists locative and temporal expressions based on body part nouns together with two other nouns which function structurally the same, forming a locative expression, although a lexical source is not available.22

---

22 Mulugeta (2008:56) likewise notes that some relational nouns in Dime have no simple counterpart while their last vowel is analysable as a locative case. Cf. also Rapold (2006, section 10.5) for similar words in Benchon.
(56) **locational expressions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ãdã-k’ã</td>
<td>behind, after</td>
<td>ãdã footprints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bōw-k’ã</td>
<td>in, under</td>
<td>bōw belly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōr-k’ã</td>
<td>on top of</td>
<td>gōr head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gōr-tà</td>
<td>above</td>
<td>gōr head</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūj-tà</td>
<td>near, close to</td>
<td>ūj side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sáán.tà</td>
<td>before, in front of</td>
<td>san forehead</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>da.tà</td>
<td>close to, near</td>
<td>?dáán be together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ba.tà</td>
<td>on, about</td>
<td>?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that in the case of gōr ‘head’, there are two possibilities: gōr-k’ã ‘on top of’ with the inessive and gōr-tà ‘above’ with the locative case, which correspond to the difference found with stative verbs in denoting contact vs. vicinity. In other instances, such as batà ‘on’ there is no variation and the contact/ vicinity parameter does not seem to play a role. In (57), a board has to be hammered firmly onto a beehive, thus implying contact; nevertheless -tà is used.

(57) ha=ʔisĩ-h̀ éd batà mismãri-ka k’yár-á-ŋ

2SG = beehive-DATmouth on.LOC nail-WITH beat-put-IRR

‘and hammer it with nails on the opening of the beehive’

The usual way of expressing motion to a person is with datà.

(58) yì=yáb-ù-s datà téé-kl-bàstà

3FS = man-m-PL near.LOC go.NV-exist-WHILE

‘while she was going to her family, …’

Locational expressions metaphorically function in the temporal domain. A few examples are given in (59) and (60), where the (a) clauses are locational and the (b,c) clauses are temporal. Section 11.5.1 on adverbial clauses provides more information on the use of -k’ã and -tà case in the formation of locational and temporal clauses.

(59) a. ùjtà woog-ft-ɔ

down.LOC sit-PL.ADDR-STI

‘sit down on the ground’ (said to children)
b.  úšťʼ-b̥̄ḁ̄b sâmínt
down.LOC-father week
‘last week’

(60) a.  ās-ḵ̪ ţ̄dī-ḵ̪ḁ̄ bangar-t̳̄
3MS-DAT footstep-IN return-SS
‘After him he returned and...’ (Lit: (he) returned in his footsteps.)

b.  yis-ḵ̪̄ ţ̄dī-ḵ̪ḁ̄ tāmū
DIST.M-DAT footprint-IN fire

hā = ?ūn-t̳̄t̳̄o
3MS = ignite-PASS-SS
‘after that, the fire was lit and...’

c.  yis-t̳̄ yī = tee-t̳̄ = i
DIST.M-LOC 3FS = go.NV-SS = 3FS
‘then she went and...’

Lastly, noun phrases with the inessive case -ḵ̪a may be used to refer to places where a specific activity takes place. The speaker of (61) is not literally going into a goat, but going to the place where the goats are herded. Another common expression is bagā-ḵ̪a ‘at work’ (62). The examples referring to gàbā ‘market’ above may be connected with this use of the inessive case. Alternatively, the nouns may be used non-literally.

(61)  gèḵ̪̄-ḵ̪a ŋ = ?ūn-á-m̥ɔ ŋ = ḵ̪̄-ḵ̪̄
goat-IN 1SG = go-put-IRR-STI exist-REAL-STI
‘I am on the point of going to the goats.’

(62)  bagā-ḵ̪a ás-ka ŋ = kȳ̥m̥-m̥
work-IN 3MS-WITH 1SG = meet-DS
‘I met him at work;...’

9.2.6 Instrument and coordination
The morpheme -ka marks Instrumental roles as well as Comitative and coordination. It is glossed with as a cover term for Instrumental and Comitative roles and odor where it occurs in coordination.
The role of Instrument is marked by -\textit{ka}. Here are some examples:

(63) \text{būṭ̂-n-s} \quad \text{karā-ka} \quad \text{hā = k’ūd-ūt’-ā-m-∅} \\
\text{wound-DEF-M} \quad \text{leaf-WITH} \quad \text{3MS = cover-PASS-put-IRR-STI} \\
‘The wound is covered with leaves.’

(64) \text{āṣū-ka} \quad \text{hā = tee-k-∅} \\
\text{leg-WITH} \quad \text{3MS = go.NV-REAL-STI} \\
‘He went on foot.’

(65) \text{zēgū-ka} \quad \text{yī = kāḥs-ki-k-∅} \\
\text{ox-WITH} \quad \text{3FS = play-exist-REAL-STI} \\
‘She plays with the oxen.’ (Context: commentary of men who saw a woman ploughing.)

(66) \text{hās-kā bāngār-ee} \quad \text{ha-kyākā-ka} \quad \text{ki-ee} \\
\text{3MS-IN} \quad \text{return-STI} \quad \text{2SG.PSS-border-WITH} \quad \text{exist-STI} \\
‘Return from here. Abide by your border.’ (Context: idiomatic phrases for a ritual to ward off sickness.)

In passivization, when the object is raised to subject position, the original subject may be expressed in an Instrumental phrase marked by -\textit{ka}, as in (67).

(67) \text{gēk’u} \quad \text{fūk-ń-s-∅} \quad \text{yaab-ū-s-ka} \\
\text{goat} \quad \text{be.old-DEF-M-REL} \quad \text{man-m-PL-WITH} \\
\text{hā = fākūs-t’ū-k-∅} \\
\text{3MS = split.CAUS-PASS-REAL-STI} \\
‘The goat was dissected by the old men.’

The role of causee may be marked by -\textit{ka}, as in (68). However, the causee may also be marked with accusative case (69).

(68) \text{əftu} \quad \text{beyns} \quad \text{dādū-ka} \quad \text{kōm-s} \\
\text{drinking mother.DEF.M} \quad \text{child-WITH} \quad \text{chief.DEF-M} \\
\text{hā = gāsk-ūs-k-∅} \\
\text{3MS = insult-CAUS-REAL-STI} \\
‘The drunkard had the chief insulted by a child.’
(69) yi-baabif-ora gyänũ há = ?its-us-k-ə
3fs.poss-father 3fs.acc coffee 3ms = cook-caus-real-sti
‘Her father had her make coffee.’

The sister role of Comitative is also marked by -ka (70)-(72). Instrument and Comitative are only marked once, whereas in coordination, the marker usually occurs on all of the coordinated noun phrases (see below).

(70) déyg-ñ yí-fyaäyñ-ora kòb-tə
child.f-def 3fs.poss-frog.f.def-acc take-ss
yí-kyää-s-ka daan-tə yí = bangar-k-ə
3fs.poss-dog.def.m-with be.together-ss 3fs = return-real-sti
‘The girl took her little frog and returned together with her dog.’

(71) ás-ka ń = daan-ki-ñtë ńáta-ra
3ms.with 1pl = be.together-exist-cond 1pl.acc
kéta wúgu-baru-tə
tall kill.throw.away-ss
‘If we stay with him, he will finish us all off...’

(72) há = ?ūūth-s-ora kaw-ñ-s-ka dàn-sù-tə
3ms = rat.def-m.acc fat-def-m-with be.together-caus-ss
há = bòd-kòb-tə há = dòd-r-ñ
3ms = carry-take-ss 3m = run-ds
‘... be seized the rat together with the fat and flew away;...’

The morpheme -ka also coordinates noun phrases. If there are two NPs, usually the coordination is marked on both of them, as in (73)-(75), but not always (76).

(73) tíítũ-ka úūth-ka gyäbt’a aas-ñ
vulture-coor rat-coor yard stand-ds
‘Vulture and Rat stood still in the front yard;...’
(74) yīs-ee     náánú-ka     báádù-ka
    DIST.M-STI   elder.brother-COOR   younger.sibling-COOR

īfī = daan-t = īfī
    3PL = be.together-ss = 3PL
koynāb-ka  3ababuṛź-ka
    Koynab-COOR   Jebra.Burzh-COOR

‘As for that, the elder brother and younger brother were together
and they, Koynab and Jebra Burzh, …’

(75) īfī-dādū-ka   īfī-ka   daan-tə
    3PL.POSS-child-COOR  3PL-COOR  be.together-ss
kóók̂rī  k’oy-tà   důbà
    place  one-LOC   gather.NMLZ
ki = īfī-k
    exist = 3PL-REAL

‘…their children and they being together were gathered in one
place.’

(76) baṭṭa-ka   deebṭīh   hā = sāsk-ā-m
    anger-COOR   beating    3MS = arrive.caus-put-IRR

‘It caused irritation and fighting.’

The coordinator may be present (77) or absent (78) on the last
of a series of more than two NPs.

(77) duk’ūf-ka  bērbēr-mīt’ī-ka  bīsbīrl-ka
    garlic-COOR   pepper(Amb)-pepper-COOR   basilicum-COOR
ts’artī-ka   uṛĝ-ka   yīs  ān-t’u-t = ā
    rue-COOR    salt-COOR   DIST.M   put-PASS-ss = 3MS

‘… garlic and pepper and basilicum and rue and salt, this is added
and...’

(78) īfī = tūtū-ka  kōb-ī-m-s-ka  uuth-s
    3PL = vulture-COOR   cock-DEF-M-COOR   rat.DEF-M
daan-tə   īfī = yĕē-baštā
    be.together-ss   3PL-come.NV-WHILE

‘vulture and the cock and the rat were together and while they
came...’

Other case marking precedes the coordinator -ka (79)-(80).
However, there is probably no double marking of Instruments
which are coordinated, as in (81).
(79)  báy-l-s-h-ka  bááb-l-s-h-ka  bëeth tà
female-f-pl-dat-coor  male-m-pl-dat-coor  middle.loc
yí-fayn-a  yaafú-tə
3fs.poss-frog,f.def-acc  find-s
‘in the midst of the females and the males she found her little frog...’

(80)  yí = ddör-yē-tə  yí = simoon  p’et’ros-h-ka
3fs = run-come.nv-ss  3fs = simon  pextros-dat-coor
áš-ka  daan  ky-əb  yēsūs  tāmārī
3ms-with  together  exist-rel  jesus  education
dād-h-kh  yí = mākū-k-e
child-def[m]-dat  3fs = tell-real-sti
‘she came running and she told it to Simon Peter and to the disciple
of Jesus who was with him.’

(81)  byák’-n-ka  gyāsú-ka  n = tš’adh-ki-k
spear-coor  shield-coor  1.pl = fight.midd-exist-real
‘We were fighting with spear and shield.

Another coordinating marker is the inclusive marker k’ārā ~
k’arā ‘also, even’. It also occurs on two coordinated noun
phrases (82).

(82)  únà  gatsu  šokú-ka  góór-ța  téø+r-bàb
long.ago start  sheko-coor  amhara-coor  two-father
íñ = dáán-ki-bástə  wōfšštə  góór-ń-s-k’arə
3pl = together-exist-while  both.side.loc  Amhara-def-m-incl
šok’-ń-s-k’arə  faadú  gúrrú  íñ = kl-k
Sheko-def-m-incl  body  only  3pl = exist-real
‘In the beginning, long ago, when the Sheko and Amhara were living
together, both, the Amhara as well as the Sheko, were naked.’

In Dime, a formally similar instrumental case marker -ka is
attested with exactly the same distribution for Instrumental,
Comitative and Coordinative (Mulugeta 2008:51). In Maale,
the morpheme -na marks the same roles (Azeb 2001a:79).
9.2.7 Similative
The similative marks the reference point to whose characteristics/actions those of another referent are likened. Around Sheko town the form göntfi is used, in the Tepi variety gomà. The similative differs from the other cases which are short suffixes, and it might go back to a nominal form (goma) plus case marker -tû, cf. dative -tì in related Omotic languages, such as Nayi (Aklilu 1994a).

(83) yî-bààb göntfi té-ré yî = kl-k-ø
3FS.POSF-father like COP-NEG.STI 3FS = exist-REAL.STI
‘She is not like her father.’

(84) nû=té-t=n zegû göntfi féra
1SG = GO.NV-SS = 1SG ox like horn
mû=bêz-a-m-ø
1SG = sprout-put-IRR.STI
‘I will go and produce horns like the ox.’

(85) fhû úndî-kà ha = ?fhî-ara
wood.DEF.M.DAT bottom-IN 2SG = wood.DEF.M.ACC
kûbtî’-å-m iy kaf-tû-k-ûb gomà
make.roofbeam-put-IRR house build-PASS-exist-REL like
‘you can make roofbeams at the trunk of the tree, like in building a house.’

(86) kyãäz-h-s-o yeta göntfi kl-b
lord.DEF.M-STLADDR 2SG like exist-REL
iti ta-øn-o
who COP-KNOWN-STLADDR
‘Oh Lord, who is like you?’ (from a song)

9.2.8 Motive
The ‘motive’ marker èfîtà occurs on noun phrases denoting the point of reference of a comparative construction or a motive (‘for’, ‘about’), as well as on adverbial clauses, namely reason clauses and purpose clauses. The ‘motive’ marker èfîtà is

23 The speaker speaks the Tepi dialect. ùndî: Tepi variety. In Sheko use of ùndî is considered impertinent. ëṣû ‘foot, leg’ would be used in this context.
included here, although it is not a canonical case marker, neither in form nor in function. However, part of the form might be related to case markers.

Phonetically, Ḛfnta varies a little bit in pronunciation: ~ (y)jfnə ~ -yjfnə. The morphological make-up and its occurrence in reason and purpose clauses suggest that Ḛfnta consist of two morphemes. It formally differs from the other case markers. The first element, Ḛf(n), does not occur elsewhere in Sheko. However, Benchnon has a Benefactive marker Ḛfn, which next to Benefactives marks motives and the point of reference in a comparative construction (Rapold 2006:506). In contrast, the Sheko Ḛfnta does not mark Benefactives, but it does mark motives extensively (i.e. purpose clauses and reason clauses) as well as the point of reference, as is shown below.24 The second element -tə can be analysed as the locative case marker -tə or perhaps be related to the ta copula (.ta on pronouns). An equally possible analysis is to split Ḛfnta in -f(n) and the adverbial clause marker -ntə (see section 11.3).

Semantically, Ḛfnta, glossed motive for lack of a better cover term, marks the reference point in a comparative construction (87). In (88), it marks the reference point in relation to a state of affairs. Furthermore, it is found in the sense of ‘about’ (89). More abstractly, Ḛfnta marks a motive, as in (90).

(87) əti Ḛfntə zəgū há=3aa3-kə
      cow  MOTIVE ox  3MS=good-REAL-STIT
   ‘An ox is better than a cow.’

24 Looking for other possible sources of the first element ef(n), one could speculate about ye copulas in some Omotic languages; cf. Zargulla past copula ye ‘was’ (Azeb 2007) and Aari ye (Hayward 1990:462). Furthermore, Wolaitta employs a noun gisha ‘cause’ with a dative case marker in reason clauses (Lamberti & Sottile 1997:235).
(88) **néf-bokn**  
\( n = \text{woog-\text{-ab}} \)  
\( \text{éjhtà} \)  
\( n = \text{tee-t}=n \)  
always-time  
\( 1SG = \text{sit-REL} \)  
\( \text{MOTIVE} \)  
\( 1SG = \text{go.NV-SS} = 1SG \)

**k’oy bokn**  
\( n = \text{wut-\text{-ab}} \)  
\( \eta = \text{woog-\text{-ab-kù gárti} \)  
one time  
\( 1SG = \text{fall-REL} \)  
\( 1SG = \text{sit-REL-DAT} \)  
head.LOC

**ta-k-ø**  
\( tògá = \text{éjhtà} \)  
\( m = \text{mààkù-k-ø} \)

COP-REAL-STI  
\( \text{mud} \)  
\( \text{MOTIVE} \)  
\( 1SG = \text{tell-REAL-STI} \)

‘It is better to go and fall than to sit all the time. (Lit: from always sitting, my going and falling one time is above my sitting,) I told it with regard to the mud.’ (Context: refers to the muddy roads in rainy season.)

(89) **mátk-år=á-kì-b**  
**tòsà**  
**t’sádh yifhtà**  

tell.PASS-NEG = 3MS-exist-REL  
story  
war  
\( \text{MOTIVE} \)

**ta-k-ø**  
COP-REAL-STI

‘The story that was not told was about war.’

(90) **tûrû**  
**kyåkà**  
**yifntà**  
**há=ts’am-hì-kì-k**  
land  
border  
\( \text{MOTIVE} \)  
3MS = fight.MIDD-exist-REAL

‘He would fight because of/ about/ for land borders.’

As mentioned before, the ‘motive’ marker also occurs on adverbial clauses. First, it occurs in reason clauses, which are marked with the relative clause marker -àb (91). Characteristically, the word translated as ‘therefore’, used for example when reaching a conclusion in discourse, is made up of the distal demonstrative plus \( \text{éjhtà} \) (92). Secondly, it marks purpose clauses, which have the purpose marker -\( n \) (93). Reason and purpose clauses are further exemplified in section 11.5 on adverbial clauses.

(91) **k’ámù-ra**  
**há=útû-kì-b-lifntà**  
slave-ACC  
3MS = like-exist-REL-MOTIVE

**há=úm-s-kì-b-lifntà**  
**ás-kì bëndù**  
3MS = eat-CAUS-exist-REL-MOTIVE  
3MS-DAT Bandu

**kì=á-k-ø**  
exist = 3MS-REAL-STI

‘he has Bandu because he loves the servants and because he feeds them.’
(92) yīz-į́štā̀ ʂóku-ra ʃʃ = ʃe-tə ɡóóra-ka  
DIST.M-MOTIVE Sheko-ACC 3PL = forget-SS Amhara-WITH

gúrú ʃʃ = nɔn-ki-k-ə  
only 3PL = talk-exist-REAL-STI
‘Therefore they forget Sheko and talk only in Amharic.’

(93) yí-bèngi-ra  yí-nàšà-k  
3FS.POSS-year-ACC 3FS.POSS-husband-WITH

tyí = daan-tə  yí = tʃőr-ʃ-ń-į́štā̀  
3FS = be.together-SS 3FS = finish-CAUS-PURP-MOTIVE

yis kòòsù-ra  itə  māāk-o  
DIST.M divination-ACC who:COP tell-STL ADDR
‘who will tell this traditional practice ... so that she will finish her years together with her husband ...?’

9.3 Possessive constructions
This section compares possessive constructions in detail. For ease of reference the different constructions are labelled ‘attributive’ in case of juxtaposed nouns or noun phrases, and ‘case-marked’ or ‘ascension’ in case of the construction with the dative-marked possessor. Predicative possession is shortly mentioned here for the sake of comparison and semantic coherence; it is treated more extensively in the section on existential clauses.

NP NP  attributive (juxtaposed)  ʔtəl baatʃi ‘cow hide’
NP-dat NP  case-marked (ascension)  ʔtəl-kʰ báatʃi ‘skin of a cow’
eXistential  predicative (existential)  with ki ‘exist’

9.3.1 Attributive possession
In attributive possession, the possessor always precedes the possessum. Both can be expressed in an NP (94)-(95), or the possessor can be expressed anaphorically by a possessor prefix, as is shown in (96). The relation between the possessor and the possessum is not necessarily one of ownership, and one could also call this construction an associative or genitive construction.
The head of the NP is marked tonally, as is every head which is preceded by a modifier. It is of course possible to put more than two NPs together, in which case each modified head undergoes the change in tone. In example (97) the nouns bāāb ‘father’ and nānā ‘elder brother’ are modified.

Juxtaposed possessive noun phrases may use bāāb ‘father’ and bé ‘mother’ as the second element. bāāb/ bé form ‘possessor of’ nouns, which denote an owner or entity characterized by what is mentioned in the first element (see section 5.5.5). Some ‘possessor of’ nouns are illustrated in (98)-(100). bāāb ‘father’ and bé ‘mother’ also function as nominalizers, see section 5.5.6.

‘he snatched away Marta’s book and he...’

‘if a period of hunger arrives,...’

‘bringing out his spear and...’

‘Call the elder brother of the boys’ father.’

‘I’ll go to the owner of the wood and ask him.’

‘That one has flowers.’ (Lit: that is a mother of flower.)
(100) **gáydó bààb kí-tə**  
problem father exist-ss  
‘being a poor person,...’

### 9.3.2 Predicate possession

In Sheko, the predicate possessive clause best compares with an existential clause. Existentials make use of the verb kí ‘to be present, exist, live’, as in (101).

(101) **gyânû kí=á-k-ə**  
coffee exist = 3MS-REAL-STI  
‘There is coffee.’

In a possessive predicate, the possessor NP is in the dative case and the possessum NP occurs as the subject of the predicate ‘be present, exist’.

(102) **bağà yi-nàṣà-kh  kí-ńtà, ...**  
work 3FS.POSS-husband-DAT exist-COND  
‘If her husband has work,...’ (Lit: if there is work to her husband.)

In the predicative possession construction, only the possessum can be the grammatical subject. The subject cannot be marked for definiteness, as shown in example (103). The systematic absence of definiteness marking on the subject constituent is related to the type of construction and its function. Possessive predication typically asserts possession, in contrast to attributive possession which typically presupposes possession (Heine 1997:26).

(103) **gyân-n-s m-baad-h-s-kh  kí=á-k**  
coffee-DEF-M 1SG.POSS-younger.sibling-DEF-M-DAT exist = 3MS-REAL  
itn. ‘The coffee is to my brother’, i.e. ‘the coffee belongs to my brother.’

If one wants to present the possessor as the grammatical subject, it is possible to use a copula-construction, with which it is possible to have either the possessor (104) or the possessum (105) as subject. In this equational construction, the subject is easily marked as definite, hence it can refer to
known, topical referents. The copula complement, i.e. gyanu bāāb or mēngistikēbāāb involves an NP expressing a possessive relation. This type of NP is discussed in section 9.3.1 and 5.5.5.

(104)  m̓-baad-ǹ-s  gyānū bāāb  tə-k-ə  
1SG.POSS-sibling-DEF  coffee  father  COP-REAL-STI

‘My brother is a coffee-owner/ owns coffee’

(105)  gyān-ǹ-s  yīs  kêta  mēngist-kē-bāāb  
coffee-DEF-M  DIST.M  all  government-DAT-father  

tə-k-ə  25  COP-REAL-STI

‘All this coffee belongs to the government’ (Lit: ... is father of ‘to the government’.)

9.3.3  The case-marked construction and inalienability
The third construction which is used to express possession consists of the possessor NP with a dative case marker followed by the possessum NP. Body parts most often occur in the case-marked construction, as illustrated in the examples (106)-(109).

(106)  yī-nāswā-kə  áāb-a  sēc-r=f-k'y-ā-m  
3FS.POSS-husband-DAT  hand-IN  see-ACC  sec.NV-NEG = 3FS-remain-put-IRR

‘She didn’t see her husbands’ face.’ (Context: talking about old marriage customs.)

(107)  ye-kə  kūsū-k'ə  kī-b  gēbn  
2SG-DAT  hand-IN  exist-REL how.much[Q]

‘How much (money) do you have in hand?’

(108)  yī=ṣōz-kə  kum-n̓-s-əra  k̓'uts'ū-bār-ǹ  
3FS = snake-DAT  neck-DAT-M-ACC  cut-throw.away-DS

‘she cut off the neck of the snake’

25 Without -bāāb one gets a Benefactive/Recipient reading:

(104)  gyān-ǹ-s  yīs  kêta  mēngist-kē  tə-k-ə  
coffee-DEF-M  DIST.M  all  government-DAT  COP-REAL-STI

‘All this coffee is for the government’ (e.g. to be given as a form of taxes)
The case-marked construction is grammatically different from the predicative possession construction, in that the order possessor-possessum may not be reversed, as illustrated in (110b), cf. the grammaticality of the predicative (111b).

(111) a. \[ \text{name-kh} \quad \text{eki} \quad \text{ki} = \text{a-k-o} \]  
    Baasa-DAT money exist = 3MS-REAL-STI  
    ‘Baasa has money/ cattle.’ (Lit: to Baasa there is money.)

b. \[ \text{eki} \quad \text{name-kh} \quad \text{ki} = \text{a-k-o} \]  
    money Baasa-DAT exist = 3MS-REAL-STI  
    ‘Baasa has money/ cattle.’ (Lit: to Baasa there is money.)

There are basically two contexts in which body parts occur in attributive possessive noun phrases. The first context is where the body part is alienable, i.e. there is no part-whole relation between the possessor and the possessum, but a different one, e.g. a relation of ownership. Thus, the bone in (112) is not part of the body of the speaker, but it is an animal bone which the subject had given to the addressee to eat. Another example is (113), which tells about a tanned cow hide, not about the skin of a living cow.
(112) ṅ-uus-ñ-s-a  ats-o  yı=ge-ñ
1SG.POSS-bone-DEF-M-ACC  give-STI  3FS = say-DS
‘ “Give my bone,” she said...’

(113) öti  baatfí  án-ñ-kl-b  têngi  bâtq
cow  skin  put-NEG2-exist-REL  tree.sp  on.LOC

[ŋ]l = sōk’u-kl-b-ts
3PL = sleep-exist-REL-DIST.M
‘those who didn’t use a cow hide, what they were sleeping on was tenq.’

The second context in which an attributive construction is used is one which places emphasis on the possessor. Example (114) below makes this very clear: only clause (b) can follow (a) as an explanation, (c) cannot. It is of course possible to use a case-marked construction, but then again the semantics change (115).

(114) a. wósa  hàz  ṅ-kuṭṣu-ka  n = ts’afu-k-o
letter  PROX.M  1SG.POSS-hand-WITH  1SG = write-REAL-STI
‘I wrote this letter by my (own) hand.’

b. ts’ahafi-ñ-s  na-ŋ  ts’af-ar = á-kl-k-o
clerk-DEF-M  1SG.DAT  write-NEG = 3MS-exist-REAL-STI
‘The clerk didn’t write it for me.’

c. *ŋ-kömürê-ka  ts’af-en-kl-k-o
1SG.POSS-computer-WITH  write-NEG.1SG-exist-REAL-STI
‘I didn’t write it on the computer.’

(115) wósa  hàz  na-ŋ  kũṭṣu-ka  n = ts’afu-k-o
letter  PROX.M  1SG.DAT  hand-WITH  1SG = write-REAL-STI
‘I wrote this letter by (my) hand.’ (not on the computer)

Another example is given in (116).

(116) [ŋ]-gayd-n-s  ?yáát-ñ-s-ób  háा = foṭ-āb-əra
3PL.POSS-problem-DEF-M  big-DEF-M-REL  3MS = become-REAL-ACC
n-?aab-ka  n = see-k-o
1SG.POSS-eye-WITH  1SG = see.NV-REAL-STI
‘I saw with my own eyes that their problem is enormous.’
The two possessive constructions are contrasted in examples (117)-(118) as well. In (117), a possessor prefix and the noun for ‘head’ are used to form the intensifying noun phrase ha-gərî ‘yourself’. (More examples of ‘oneself’ are presented in section 6.3.) The idiomatic utterance in (118) is used as a warning for unruly children.

(117) ha-gərî kóót-ə
2SG.POSS-head watch-STI
‘Watch (it) yourself’ / ‘Look after it yourself’

(118) ye-kẖ gərî kóót
2SG-DAT head watch
‘Watch your head!’ (i.e. ‘Beware’)

In Sheko, as in many other languages, most spatial terms (locational nouns) are related to body parts. Spatial terms (locational noun phrases) occur in the case-marked construction.20 Examples are given in (119)-(121).

(119) kyāñ-s ás-kẖ gərî-ra ?yááná-kẖ
dog.DEF-M 3MS-DAT head-ACC pot-DAT
bōw-k’a tóórá há = wusuštə
belly-IN downward 3MS = enter-SS
‘The dog entered his head down in the pot and he...’

(120) téréj-ə-s-a tāmũ-kẖ sïš-tə tóót-ə
coffeepot-DEF-M-ACC fire-DAT side-LOC erect-STI
‘Put the coffee pot next to the fire’

---

20 Since spatial terms are often derived from body parts, it is plausible that a language treats both the same, but not necessarily so: Ewe distinguishes the two, treating spatial terms as ‘inalienable’ and body parts as ‘alienable’ (see Ameka (1996:810ff) for an explanation).
(121) āfi = ts’yaats’u-t = āfi  
tf’orj-àb-kà  
ādi-k’à

3PL = tie-SS = 3PL  
finish-CAUS-REL-DAT  
footprint-IN

p’ēē’tà  
búutsú-tà

thatch  
mow-ss

‘after they finish tying they cut the thatch and...’ (Lit: in the footprints to their finishing...)

Likewise, inherent parts of a location may be treated as a body part.

(122) hàazz kyaän-s  
kàtja wó-kà  
ježi-kà

PROX.M dog.DEF-M  
still up.there-LCT  
stone-DAT

kòp’arà-k’à  
hà = bàass-kë-k

open.space.in.forest.or.stone-IN  
3MS = want-exist-REAL

‘Here the dog is still searching over there at the rock’s crevices.’

Recapitulating, it appears that the construction with a case-marked possessor is the unmarked way to talk about possessed body parts, whereas the attributive construction with body parts puts emphasis on the possessor or indicates that the body part is alienable.

A similar situation with regard to body parts occurs in the other Majoid languages. For Diizin, a discussion arose in which Alan (1976) claimed that Diizin shows inalienable possession, whereas Claudi and Serzisko (1985) argued that the Diizin possessive constructions involving body part nouns represent the phenomenon of ‘possessor promotion’². However, the idea of possessor promotion or possessor ascension has come under attack itself. More precisely, the underlying assumption that an alienable (‘normal’) construction and an inalienable (‘promoted’) construction have the same meaning appears not to hold (Chappel and McGregor 1996:7). I have shown for

---

² Inalienable constructions are morphologically less marked than alienable constructions cross-linguistically. The ‘markedness’ of the inalienable construction in Diizin was one of the reasons why Claudi and Serzisko analysed it as possessor promotion (1985:134). However, their analysis of possessor promotion to a locative case is equally not in line with what one usually finds in languages: possessors are commonly “promoted to” a direct object or an indirect object, not to a locative, cf. (1985:141). The Diizin case marker in question is -kh. Beachy (2005) gives -ŋ as a genitive, not a locative, and -is as a dative case.
Sheko that the case-marked construction basically centralises the part (here, the possessed), in opposition to a possessive noun phrase, which more or less focuses on the whole (here, the possessor). Since the semantics are different, both constructions are equal and a speaker can describe a situation with regard to the whole or the part by choosing one or the other. In other words, discourse features play a role in the choice between the two constructions. The (in)alienability readings in the Majoid languages arise from the semantics of the constructions.

There are more Omotic languages that have two ways to form ‘genitive’ relations, one which employs juxtaposition and one which has a case marker. Interestingly, the Maale language (Azeb 2001a:63) has a construction NP\textsuperscript{ko} NP which contrasts with simple juxtaposition exactly in singling out the part.
10 Simple clauses

This chapter describes the verbal morphology of affirmative final (main) verb forms in Sheko, as well as copular and verbless sentences. Furthermore, word order of simple clauses is discussed. Non-final verbs such as medial verbs and dependent verbs are discussed in chapter 11. Morphology associated with verb derivation is discussed in chapter 12. Negation is treated in chapter 14. The CV-structure of verb roots is treated in section 2.5.2.

10.1 Overview of main verb morphology

The final (main) verb comprises the following elements: a subject clitic, a main verb stem, an expletive vowel -u for some verbs, an optional element denoting aspect, a modal marker and a stance marker. An example is given in (1). A main verb form forms a complete sentence by itself.

(1) ʃʃi = bɔɔ.ù -k'e -k -ə
    3pl. = work -remain -real -sti
    clitic = stem.expletive vowel -aspect -modal -stance
    ‘they have worked (and are not longer working)’

Most final verb forms fit the above pattern, but there are three paradigms in which the subject clitic follows the verb stem. These are the Realis, Obvious and Optative.

(2) gɑɑr =á -s -ə
    bear.fruit =3ms -opt -sti
    stem = clitic -modal -stance
    ‘may it bear fruit’

Starting from the right end, each structural slot is briefly presented here and discussed in detail in its respective section, beginning with stance markers and finishing with subject clitics as in (1).

Stance markers are discussed in section 10.2 below. A stance marker may be attached to the rightmost element of an utterance to indicate how the speaker relates to the utterance.
The direct stance marker -a makes an utterance more direct and less polite, while the indirect stance marker -a signals a certain distance between the speaker and the utterance, which is used for e.g. politeness and reported speech.

Modal markers are described in detail in section 10.3. After a short discussion of the system, it is shown that all paradigms can be grouped into three groups on the basis of the tone on the verb stem. Furthermore, the function of each modal marker is discussed. The following markers are presented in detail:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>label</th>
<th>marker</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imperative-Jussive</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optative</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>OPT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irrealis</td>
<td>-m</td>
<td>IRR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Realis</td>
<td>-k</td>
<td>REAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obvious</td>
<td>-kn</td>
<td>KNOWN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewpoint</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>VIEWP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implicative</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>IMPLC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The interrogative and negative are discussed elsewhere. Chapter 13 resumes the discussion of modal markers and sentence type, expanding on how the sentence types are distinguished, especially the strategy of 'subtractive' morphology for interrogatives.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>label</th>
<th>marker</th>
<th>gloss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>negative</td>
<td>-ara</td>
<td>NEG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrogative</td>
<td>-Ø</td>
<td>Q (sometimes intonation)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Section 10.4 treats the aspectual slot. There are two verbs denoting aspectual distinctions, such as k*î ‘exist, live’, marking Imperfective, k*ê ‘be left, remain’ marking Perfective, and a suffix -a (possibly from the verb ‘put’) which is restricted to Irrealis verb forms. These aspectual markers are suffixed to the main verb stem (incl. expletive vowel, if present), as shown with the verb ba³ ‘work’ in examples (3)-(4)).
(3) \( h\,a = \text{b\text{	extae}g\text{	extae}h\text{-}k\text{-}k\text{-}a} \)

3MS = work-exist-REAL-STI

‘he is/ was working’

(4) \( h\,a = \text{b\text{	extae}g\text{	extae}h\text{-}m\text{-}a} \)

3MS = work-put-IRR-STI

‘he will work’

Section 10.5 on verb stems concentrates on verb stem alternation, with reference to other Omotic languages. A small group of verb stems occurs with and without a velar element. This alternation is for the most part morphologically determined, although there are a few places where the velar stem can be associated with a stronger assertion and the non-velar stem with a weaker assertion, or no assertion.

The expletive vowel -\text{u}, which occurs after some verb stems, is obligatorily present in some forms, generally when a stop follows the verb stem. It copies the tone of the preceding verb stem. Synchronically, it does not have any discernible meaning or function. It is not epenthetic, since it occurs where clusters of consonants are possible. Furthermore, it occurs in stem derivation (chapter 12). It is not glossed separately in this thesis, but it is easily recognizable since there are no stems ending in -.CV.

Lastly, section 10.6 describes the forms of the subject clitic. Its function is described separately in chapter 15, because the placement of the subject clitic is dependent on information structure (salience, focus) and syntax.

10.2 Stance

A stance marker is used to indicate how the speaker relates to his utterance, i.e. it signals the presence or absence of distance between the speaker and his utterance, and may thereby convey the attitude of the speaker towards his utterance. Rapold (2006) has used the term mediativity for comparable markers in Benchnon.
In Sheko, there are indirect and direct stance markers. The indirect stance marker is -a, which signals a certain distance between the speaker and the utterance, and makes the utterance less direct. For instance, it may add a layer of politeness, and indicate the reporting of speech. For questions and vocative utterances, the indirect stance marker is -o. The direct stance marker is -ya ~ -a, which signals the absence of distance and makes the utterance more direct and less polite.

The stance markers may be phonetically lengthened. This is generally not indicated in the examples, except for the long form -ee of the indirect stance marker -a in some instances (schwa does not occur as a long vowel). Stance markers are glossed sti (stance marker, indirect) or std (stance marker, direct).

Stance markers are not obligatorily present, but they are common. I have not investigated which pragmatic factors trigger the occurrence of the stance markers in Sheko, but likely they correspond to the factors suggested by Rapold (2008): distance (spatial boundary); addressing a superior or crowd, speaking in an official situation (social boundaries); surprise, reported speech (cognitive boundaries); end of major text unit (textual boundary). The Sheko data suggest that another textual boundary exists, namely topic, i.e. a constituent which mentions what the sentence or paragraph is about. In example (5), a stance marker follows the topical constituent.

(5) ₁-kọọsê-ee  nàta  kọynâb  dàdù  tə-kə
1PL.POSS-tradition-sti 1PL Koynab child COP-REAL-STI
As for our tradition, we are the children of Koynab.

A stance marker appears at the rightmost end of a clause and attaches to all word categories except ideophones. Example (6) below illustrates this with a dependent verb (in a topic clause), a demonstrative and an interjection.

(6)  a.  ỳis-əra  hà=ǥ-ətə-ə
DIST,M-ACC  3MS =see-COND-STI
as regards this,...
b. *hàràz-o*
  PROX.M-STL.ADDR
  ‘What about this one?’

c. *haʔ-ə*
  [presentational]-STI
  ‘here it is, take it’

10.2.1 Indirect stance

The indirect stance marker -ə ~ -ee signals that there is a certain distance between the speaker and the utterance. Example (7) contrasts an Imperative with and without the indirect stance marker. Example (8) illustrates the use of the stance marker in reporting of speech. Included is the reporting of one’s own speech (8b).

(7) a. *yəg*
  come
  ‘Come!’

b. *yəg-ə*
  come-STI
  ‘Come!’ (less direct order as in (a), or shouting at a distance)

(8) a. *fín-ə*  *há=ge-ñ*
  descend-STI  3MS = say-DS
  ‘he said: “Descend!” …’

b. *kááy*  (...)  *kááy-ə*
  be.not  be.not-STI
  ‘It is not there. (…if someone continues searching…) It is not there (as I said).’

In the interrogative, the form of the indirect stance marker is -ə. The form -o is found on vocatives as well (section 5.3.4). Therefore, one can say that the stance marker -o is used to signal that there is expectation of (or opportunity for) a verbal response of the addressee.
In addition to politeness, the use of -o can convey other feelings. When (10) is compared to (11), the first is a simple inquiry, whereas the second is a more desperate question. Compare this to the rhetorical question in (12), which also is marked by an -o. In both questions, no answer is expected. It might be that the dramatic effect is caused by using -o, which explicitly signals that there is room for a response, while the context makes clear that actually there is no answer.

(10) ɣfɣɣ = n  eɣ-ɣ
      what = 1SG  do-put[ŋ]
 ‘What shall I do?’ (inquiring)

(11) ɣfɣɣ = n  eg-o
      what = 1SG  do-STLADDR
 ‘What shall I do?’ (confusion, helplessness)

(12) åbët  kyââz-ħ-s-o  yeta  göntfî
      INTJ(Amh)  lord-DEF-M-STLADDR  2SG  SIMIL
      kl-b  itî  to-kn-o
      exist-REL who  COP-KNOWN-STLADDR
 ‘Oh Lord, who is like you?’ (from a church song)

10.2.2  Direct stance
In contrast to the indirect stance marker, the second stance marker -a signals the absence of distance, i.e. the utterance is made more direct and/or less polite. In my corpus it occurs only with the Viewpoint (13), Implicative (14), Obvious (15), and with the imperative for children (examples (16)-(17) below). The direct stance marker has the form -ya in the latter two cases.
(13) t'oozi-kih-baab  to-s-a
Xoozi-DAT-father COP-VIEWP-STD
‘It is Xoozi’s, if I’m right.’

(14) jfi-ra  y1=kaam-a-m  n=ge-to  n=ji-ara
3PL-ACC  3SG = bring.up-put-IRR  1SG = say-SS  1SG = 3SG-ACC
koy-k'y-a-a
bring-remain-IMPLC-STD
‘Saying “She will raise them,” I brought her, (would you believe!)’
(Context: Said by a father after he discovers that the stepmother
does not raise the children as she should, and does not give them
food.)

(15) baak-na  n=fyaam-ki-kn-ya
yam-DEF-M  1SG = peel-exist-KNOWN-STD
‘But I am peeling the yams!’ (Context: father asked teenage daughter
to do something for him, but she refused.)

The imperative for children is only used for children and
younger siblings, i.e. when the person is younger in age and
familiar. It is used in order to persuade them to do something,
and to hold their attention. The indirect stance marker -ya
occurs with the non-final verbs in a clause chain, whereas the
last verb of the chain is a normal imperative (16). The children
addressed in (17) were expected to say haa, an expression of
consent and agreement, after every clause.

(16) ya-ta  gaam-ta  kees-tée-t-ya  absi  sókú
2SG  shore-LOC  go.out-go.NV-SS-STD  up  Sheko
footu-t-ya  myangü  úm-ó
become-SS-STD  spirit  eat-STI
‘Go to the other shore and become Sheko up there and eat a spirit
(i.e. become independent by establishing a contact with the spirit
world).’ (Context: elder brother sends younger brother away.)
(17) yá-ee
    (haa)

    hāāy-k’ā  téé-t-fí-ya
    water-IN  go.NV-SS-ADDR-STD
    fí = sís-ki  (-)
      2PL = listen-exist[ō]

    hāāy-k’ā  fí-kpheric̱ faad  bártʃ’ús-t-fí-ya
    water-IN  2PL-DAT body  wash-SS-ADDR-STD  (haa)

    fí-shēm-īn-s-ra  bártʃ’ús-t-fí-ya
      2PL.POSS-clothing-DEF-M-ACC  wash-SS-ADDR-STD  (haa)

... 

‘Listen, go to the water and - are you listening? - wash your bodies at the water and wash your clothes...’

10.3 Mood

Palmer (2001) notes that many languages combine ‘typical mood’ categories like declaratives and interrogatives with ‘typical modal system’ elements, like possibility and epistemicity. Realis and irrealis may function in the middle ground. The distinction between ‘mood’ and ‘modality’ (or ‘modal systems’) is often not maintained. Languages somehow view these domains as one, perhaps because they all have to do with the status of a proposition in some way or another (cf. Palmer 2001:160; Payne 1997:244). The Sheko modal system as presented below indeed involves about everything from sentence type to viewpoint marker. The Irrealis includes all ‘weaker’ modalities such as indicated in English by ‘could’ and ‘should’, whereas the opposite notion of strong assertion falls under Realis. Realis and Irrealis are in complementary distribution with Interrogative, Imperative-Jussive, Optative, Viewpoint etc. However, the language does make a distinction between modal marking and stance, (i.e. the relation between speaker and utterance, see section 10.2). The table below gives an overview of all the modal markers.
Interestingly, there are two paradigms which seem to have zero marking: the Imperative-Jussive and the Interrogative, but the two are different. While the Imperative is formed simply by the verb stem, the formation of the Interrogative employs ‘subtractive’ morphology. This point is taken up again in chapter 13 on interrogatives.

There are no morphemes which specifically (exclusively) mark declarative or imperative. These are distinguished by the presence or absence of some morphemes, viz. modal markers and subject clitics, and also partly by tone. Likewise, the interrogative distinguishes itself from declarative counterparts partly by a final intonational fall (this phonological clue may be absent) and partly by the absence of modal markers. A reason for the absence of modal markers in these two sentence types could be the following: imperative as well as interrogative are the types of utterance in which modal distinctions are least required. With an interrogative, one asks for information on a constituent or on the modal status of the proposition, instead of giving this information. With an imperative, one also does not evaluate a proposition but one gives a directive for the addressee to follow up. Both types of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>marker</th>
<th>tone on “L” stem</th>
<th>tone on “H” stem</th>
<th>gloss</th>
<th>stance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imperative sg &amp; Jussive</td>
<td>-Ø</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative pl</td>
<td>-Ø</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Optative</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>OPT</td>
<td>-ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Irrealis</td>
<td>-m</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>IRR</td>
<td>-ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>-ara</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>NEG</td>
<td>-ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Realis</td>
<td>-k</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>REAL</td>
<td>-ø</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obvious</td>
<td>-kn</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>KNOWN</td>
<td>-ya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viewpoint</td>
<td>-s</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>VIEWP</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implicative</td>
<td>-a</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>IMPLC</td>
<td>-a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>-Ø (intonation)</td>
<td>varies</td>
<td>varies</td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>-ø</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1. Modal markers.
utterance are directed at an addressee and a reaction of the addressee is expected.

Of course, there are many differences between imperative/jussives and interrogatives as well. The interrogative, asking for information, has corresponding ‘declaratives’ which can provide that information, while the imperative asks for action rather than a verbal response. Furthermore, there are various clues which make the distinction between the sentence types evident in actual speech. These clues are either not obligatorily present, e.g. an aspect marker or indirect stance marker (which varies between -о and -о), or not restricted to one sentence type, e.g. tonal height and the absence of subject clitics (absent in imperatives as well as negatives).

The next section gives an overview of paradigms from the point of view of tone on the verb stem. In sections 10.3.2 to 10.3.8, all final (main) paradigms except negative and interrogative are discussed and illustrated in turn. Section 10.3.9 demonstrates that the notion of imminence is expressed by a combination of Realis and Irrealis.

10.3.1 Overview of paradigms from a tonal point of view

On the basis of the tone of the verb stem, paradigms can be divided into three groups. The terminology that I use to distinguish these three shows the correlation between the categorization and mood. Note however that this correlation is not absolute and the groups are defined purely on the basis of tonal behaviour.

1. The Basic paradigms are the Imperative singular and Jussive. Verb stems classified as “H” have tone 4 and verb stems classified as “L” have tone 2.

2. In Non-Factual paradigms, verb stems classified as “H” have tone 4, while verb stems classified as “L” have tone 3. The Non-Factual paradigms include
   o Irrealis
   o negative
   o Imperative plural
   o Optative
Furthermore, Irrealis complement clauses and purpose clauses fall into this group.

3. Factual paradigms are paradigms in which “H” stems take tone 2 and “L” stems tone 1. These include
   - Realis
   - Obvious
   - Viewpoint
   - Implicative

In addition, conditional clauses (if-clauses), reason clauses and Realis complement clauses belong to this group.

Medial verbs do not have a mood marker, but the tone of the verb stem shows whether the final (main) verb is Factual or Non-Factual/Basic. In other words, the height of the tone on a medial verb stem corresponds with the tone height, representing the mood, of the final main verb.

The tone on verb stems in relative clauses has only been investigated cursorily. Tone on verb stems in relative clauses varies in height as well, depending on the context and/or the construction. In example (18), the tone on the stem fuur ‘trade’ is on level 1 (as with Factual paradigms), whereas in example (19) the tone on the stem k'êets’ ‘catch fire’ is on level 3 (as with Non-Factual paradigms). Both verb stems belong to lexical tone class “L”.

(18) tûûrû m=fûr-̀b-kh adi-k'â
land 1sg = trade-rel-dat footprint-in
‘after I will have bought land,…’

(19) tââmû ūn-t'û-t=â ângâ k'êets’û-bââstâ
fire ignite-pass-ss = 3ms much catch.fire-when
‘the fire is ignited and while it burns well,…’

10.3.2 Imperative-Jussive
The Imperative and Jussive paradigms are complementary. The Imperative is only for the second person and consists of the stem. A stance marker may be added. The Jussive comprises all other persons and is formed by a subject clitic, stem and
optional stance marker. Table 2 below shows the Imperative-Jussive for the two verb classes in Sheko with sifis ‘listen’ and kaas ‘show’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Jussive</th>
<th>Imp.</th>
<th>Jussive</th>
<th>Imp.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1sg</td>
<td>n-sifis</td>
<td>‘let me listen’</td>
<td>n-kaas</td>
<td>‘let me play’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1pl</td>
<td>n-sifis</td>
<td>‘let us listen’</td>
<td>n-kaas</td>
<td>‘let us play’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2sg</td>
<td>sifis</td>
<td>‘listen!’</td>
<td>kaas</td>
<td>‘play!’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2pl</td>
<td>sifis-ft</td>
<td>‘listen (pl)!’</td>
<td>kaaas-ft</td>
<td>‘play (pl)!’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3ms</td>
<td>h-a-sifis</td>
<td>‘let him listen’</td>
<td>h-a-kaas</td>
<td>‘let him play’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3fs</td>
<td>y-i-sifis</td>
<td>‘let her listen’</td>
<td>y-i-kaas</td>
<td>‘let her play’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3pl</td>
<td>i-fi-sifis</td>
<td>‘let them listen’</td>
<td>i-fi-kaas</td>
<td>‘let them play’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2. Imperative-Jussive.

The Imperative singular and the Jussive form the Basic paradigm. Note that the Imperative plural has tone 3 on a L verb stem, therefore the Imperative plural is taken as belonging to the Non-Factual paradigms. It is formed by the verb stem plus the plural addressee marker -ft. This is illustrated in (20).

(20) é-ká kaaas-ft
    there-LCT play-PLADOR
    ‘play over there’

In the Jussive, the indirect stance marker -ə is commonly present. (Stance markers are discussed in section 10.2.)

(21) i-fi' à há =?yard-ə
    house-IN 3MS = enter-STI
    ‘Let him enter the house.’
When a series of commands is expressed in medial clauses, the
first verb is a medial verb without a subject clitic. An example
is the first verb form in (23).

(23)  tée-ta  ye-kh  básñ-tà  ha=fárú-kl-h
      go,NV-SS  2SG-DAT  doorstep-LOC  2SG=clear.ground-exist-DS
      múri  mugara  kl-be  hà-yaaf-åtå
      pebble  ?  exist-REL.mother  2SG=find-COND
      yis-tà  ha=yëë-të
      DIST.M-LOC  2SG=come-SS

‘Go and clear the ground around your doorstep and when you find a
smooth(?)) pebble then come and...’

In addition, there is a special series of command for addressing
children, see section 10.2.2.

10.3.3 Irrealis

The Irrealis marker is -m. The Irrealis depicts situations as not
‘actual’, i.e. they are potential (24), hypothetical or
counterfactual (25), habitual (26) or generic (27). Some
languages also mark questions, imperatives and negatives as
irrealis (Palmer 2001:11, Payne 1997:245). However, these
sentence types all have their own marking in Sheko.

(24)  ?yáánà  m=fûûr-å-m-ø
      pot  1SG=trade-put-IRR-STI
      ‘I will buy a pot.’

(25)  dâd-ñ-s  má  hà=yëë-m-ø
      child-DEF-M  earlier.today  3MS=come.NV-IRR-STI
      ‘The boy would have come today.’
(26) ṭámú kôntäri hâ = ḥāṭk-ā-m
    ten 100.kg(Amh) 3MS = pick-PASS-put-IRR
    ‘It usually yields ten sacks of 100 kg.’ (Lit: ten kôntâri are picked.
    Context: talking about a plot of coffee in the forest.)

(27) gârgâ ñntšù-ra hâ = gý-á-m-ô
    termite wood-ACC 3MS = chew-IRR-ST1
    ‘Termites eat wood.’

Note that past habituals are also marked by Irrealis. Sentence
(28) tells about traditional marriage customs.

(28) yî = ḡyâ-r-s-ûb-kh gâtsû yî-ñâṣâ
    3FS = enter-CAUS-REL-DAT start 3FS.POSS-husband
    sëé-r = 1-k’y-á-m-ô
    see.NV-NEG = 3FS.remain-put-IRR-ST1
    ‘Before she married, she didn’t see her husband.’

Furthermore, the Irrealis marker -m implies a weak
commitment to the truth of the proposition, i.e. the situation
cannot be fully asserted. Any modal attitude can be captured
by it, such as epistemic (29), deontic (30) and circumstantial/
dispositional modality (31).

(29) ñntšù kârî fyááyn yî = ki-m yî = ge-tô
    wood toward frog.F.DEF 3FS = exist-IRR 3FS = say-SS
    yî = bââs-ki-bâástâ fyááyn kâáy
    3FS = want-exist-WHILE frog.F.DEF be.not
    ‘While she searched, saying “the frog will/ could/ might be in the
tree”, the frog was not there.’

(30) dâwâs-kh mátkû-kl-b hamsu-s ʒéëhj-èb
    children-DAT tell.PASS-REL parable-PL good-REL
    hâ = fôôtû-ki-m-ô
    3MS = become-exist-IRR-ST1
    ‘Parables told to children should be good.’
(31) mistērī-ka n = daan nōn-k-ə ñə
secret(Amh)-with 1pl = together talk-REAL-STI 3fs
k’at’aro yī = kabar-tə ə k’at’aro k’oy
appointment(Amh) 3fs = appoint-ss appointment one
yī = ?ats-āb-ka yēē-r = f-k’y-á-m-ə
3fs = give-REL-IN come.NV-NEG = 3fs-remain-put-jrr-STI
(…)
matj’ērējā-k’a yī = yirsī bārū-t = f
end(Amh)-in 3sg = things throw.away-ss = 3fs
gābā-k’a (… ) nata-ka daan mākini-ka
market-IN 1sg-with together car-IN
?yārdū-tə yī = yēē-k-ə
enter-ss 3fs = come.NV-REAL-STI
‘We talked together in secret. She made an appointment (but) on the first appointment she gave, she wouldn’t come. (…) In the end, she abandoned her things and entered a car with me on the market and she came.’
cf. yēē-r = f-kī-k-ə
come.NV-NEG = 3fs-exist-REAL-STI
‘she didn’t come’

10.3.4 Optative
The Optative paradigm is defective and only exists for 3rd person. For other persons, Imperative-jussive is used. The Optative consists of a stem followed by a subject clitic, then the Optative marker -s and usually a stance marker. Example (32) illustrates a “H” verb stem and example (33) a “L” verb stem. The 3pl form is as a rule contracted to -fl-ə after the verb stem, as in (34). The -f in the 3fs form may be a case of paradigmatic leveling; it is not phonologically conditioned.

(32) 3ms sfīs-ā-s-ə ‘may he listen’
3fs sfīs-f-ə ‘may she listen’
3pl sfīs-fl-ə ‘may they listen’

(33) 3ms kāās-ā-s-ə ‘may he play’
3fs kāās-f-ə ‘may she play’
3pl kāās-fl-ə ‘may they play’
(34) syáák’-árá ké-yf-o
   give.birth-NEG remain-3PL.OPT-STI
   ‘may they not give birth’

The Optative is mainly used for blessing and cursing. Here are two more examples featuring the Optative:

(35) ftú = kdbg-òb bez = á-s-o ftú = nyáàs-òb
   2PL = farm-REL sprout = 3MS-OPT-STI 2PL = give.birth-REL
   ángút’ = á-s-o η = ge-t η = wóōm-òm
   grow.PASS = 3MS-OPT-STI 1SG = say-ss 1SG = dismiss-DS
   ‘saying “May what you cultivate be fertile, may what you birthed grow up,” I blessed them...’

(36) ñná-baab sám = á-s-o iñ = ge-t = iñ
   long.ago-father remain = 3MS-OPT-STI 3PL = say-ss = 3PL
   háák’ástá bááb há = kl-òn dád-òn-s
   now father 3MS = exist-DS child-DEF-M
   há-dëyg-òn-ára bòysú úm-kl-b tá-k-ò
   3MS.POSS-child.P-DEF-ACC dowry eat-exist-REL COP-REAL-STI
   ‘Saying: “May the past be gone,” they now, the father being there, the son is the one who is eating the dowry of his daughter.’

10.3.5 Realis

The Realis marker is -k. It denotes situations which are ‘actual’ as opposed to hypothetical, potential etc. In other words, the Realis is used to assert that a state of affairs holds. Thus, the Realis marker, which in itself is unspecified for time, will not be used for future events, since these are not yet realised and cannot be asserted, however probable they may be. Non-future situations can be marked for Realis whether they denote past (37) or present (38) situations.

(37) gätär-k’a iñ = kl-bástá sókú
    countryside(Amh)-IN 3PL = exist-while Sheko
    iñ = nôn-kl-k
    3PL = talk-exist-REAL
    ‘While they were in the countryside, they were speaking Sheko.’
(38) **ḥáḵ’astà gōôrā-ka ḳ̀i=ǹùn-ḵl-k**
    now Amharic-WITH 3PL = talk-exist-REAL
    ‘Now they are talking in Amharic.’

When the emphasis lies on the truth value of the predicate or of the utterance, the subject clitic follows the verb stem, as in (39). This point is taken up in chapter 15 on subject clitics.

(39) **gōkú ǹùn=n-k-ə**
    Sheko talk = 1SG-REAL-STI
    ‘I do speak Sheko.’

The copula tā- most often takes the Realis marker; it cannot take the Irrealis marker. This is due to the nature of the copula. The function of the copula is to assert that the subject and copula complement are equatable and/or identify the same referent. See further section 10.7.

(40) **ǹ-kōsṑ-ee nā́tā kōynāb dādū tā-k-ə**
    1PL.POSS-tradition-STI 1PL Koynāb child COP-REAL-STI
    ‘As for our tradition, we are the children of Koynāb.’

10.3.6 Obvious

In several interactive contexts, the suffix -kn was encountered. It is used to point out something which is considered obvious, as in the examples (41)-(42).

(41) **yīs tā-n ǹ=ye-kh māākù-ḵl-kn**
    DIST.M COP-DIS 1SG = 2SG-DAT tell-exist-KNOWN
    ‘(But) that is what I have told you/ That is just what I told you.’

(42) **ābēt kyāāz-n-s-o yeta gōнтłį**
    INTJ(Amh) lord-DEF-M-STLADDR 2SG like

    **kĪ-b ĭtī te-Ḵn-o**
    exist-REL who COP-KNOWN-STLADDR
    ‘Oh Lord, who is like you?’ (from a church song)

It often conveys feelings such as surprise (43) or indignation (44). It can also be used by the speaker to observe that
something is as he expected it to be, e.g. a machine which has been fixed that works properly again (45).

(43) áz ábsl yeta-ra bâs-ìn = á-kn-ya
    3MS upward 2SG-ACC want-go = 3MS-KNOWN-STD
    ‘But he just went up searching you!’ (Context: said when the addressee, coming down the hill, asked whether we had seen his friend.)

(44) baak-ì-s m = fyààn-ki-ìn-ya
    yam-DEF-M 1SG = peel-exist-KNOWN-STD
    ‘But I am peeling the yams!’ (Context: father asked teenage daughter to do something for him. Similar situations rendered piqued or obstinate responses ending in -ìn-ya.)

(45) bâs = á-kn
    work = 3MS-KNOWN
    ‘It works.’

The use of -kn suggests that a speaker considers his proposition as generally known (or known by the addressee) rather than as new information, hence the gloss ‘KNOWN’. The feelings of surprise or indignation probably originate from the mismatch between the expected knowledge of the speech participants and their words or actions which are not along the lines of expectation.

10.3.7 Viewpoint

The Viewpoint marker is -s. By uttering (46), the speaker says that he thinks, believes or takes the viewpoint that something is a problem. The combination of copula, Viewpoint marker and direct stance marker convey that the speaker perceives something as a problem.

(46) gàydú tə-s-a
    problem COP-VIEWP-STD
    ‘It is a problem’

Thus, one does not use tasa to state a fact. Rather, the proposition is presented as a judgment or viewpoint of the speaker. One could say that the speaker finds it justified even
though it is not an objectively verifiable fact. The few examples in my corpus are all with the copula. It is always followed by the direct stance marker -a.

(47) myāŋ-ñ-s to-ñ-a
ancestral.spirit-DEF-M COP-VIEWP-STD

‘It is an ancestral spirit’ (Context: said by a traditional leader. Belief in ancestral spirits is contested in the context of the story as well as by Christianity, to which some of the audience have converted.)

(48) ...yē tə n=kis to-ñ-a
like.this COP 1PL = exist.DIST.M COP-VIEWP-STD

‘... this is how we are/ were.’ (Context: said by traditional leader after having told part of the Sheko history.)

The Viewpoint marker could be related to the Optative maker, since it is formally similar. Because of the limited data, this line of thought is not pursued further.

10.3.8 Implicative
There is one paradigm which came to my attention only when I could follow interactive conversation better. It ends in a lengthened -a. My language consultants, however, could hardly ever repeat a sentence with it. Luckily it is used in some of the transcribed stories. I have analysed it as a modal marker -a followed by a direct stance marker -a. Discussing these forms was very hard. I can only say that use of this form seems to bear unspoken implications, hence the label Implicative.

(49) yōwka n-kāy-ñ-s yīs-a
INTJ 1PL.POSS-god-DEF-M DIST.M-ACC

n=kōy-sē-s-ñ ỉ=k=śāg-ñ-gy-ą-a
1PL = bring-see-CAUS-DS 3PL = see-MIDD?-say-IMPLIC-STD

‘After all, how can they tell us to bring and show our god to let them see it?’
10.3.9 Imminence
To express the notion of imminence, Sheko uses a combination of Realis and Irrealsis, as in example (52), where the Irrealis verb form is followed by ḳi ‘be, exist, live’ and the Realis marker -k.

(52) géék’ù-k’à  ṇ = ?im-à-m-ø  ḳ-k
    goat-IN  1SG = go-put-IRR-STI  exist-REAL

‘I am on the point of going to the goats’

The addition of ḳk(a) asserts that what is still irreal (marked by -m) and thus not asserted, is actually happening now, giving a sense of imminence to the utterance. (See Bhat (1999:164) on how languages tend to express complex notions in terms of their prominent categories, i.e. as a combination of tenses, or of aspects or of moods respectively.)

10.4 Aspect
In the aspectual slot in final (main) verbs, a restricted set of auxiliary verbs occurs. The first two auxiliary verbs described in this section are ḳi ‘exist’, which indicates Imperfective
aspect, and k’è ‘be left, remain’, indicating Perfective aspect. These occur with several modal markers. Furthermore, the form, meaning and distribution of the suffix -a is discussed, which occurs only in Irrealis contexts. In the negative, it combines with k’è ‘remain’.

Other aspectual distinctions are expressed through serial verb constructions, such as Completive and Durative aspect (section 11.2.1).

10.4.1  Imperfective aspect

The verb ki ‘exist, live, stay’ is used as a main verb and as an auxiliary indicating Imperfective aspect. Its use as main verb is illustrated twice in (53).

(53)  bëndë  fš-l-kh  ʒaʒ-ɔb  kòòk’k-ɔ
          Bandu  3PL-DAT  be.good-REL  place-IN

\[ fš = ki-m-ə \ldots fš-l-kh \]  gaatsa  kááy  ki-htà
          3PL = exist-IRR-STI  3PL-DAT  help  be.not  exist-COND

\[ ki-r = fš-k’y-á-m-ə \]
          exist-NEG = 3PL-remain-put-IRR-STI

‘The Bandu live at a place which is convenient for them. … If there is no help for them, they won’t stay.’

Imperfective aspect is characterized as presenting a state of affairs as ‘having internal structure’ and being ‘temporally unbounded’ (cf. Comrie 1976; Bybee 1994; Dahl 1985 a.o.) The use of ki as an indicator of Imperfective aspect in Sheko is exemplified below. Its main function is to present a state of affairs denoted by the main verb as ongoing.

(54)  bēk’ñ-ka  gyāsû-ka  ň=tš’àn-kí-k
          spear-COOR  shield-COOR  1PL = fight.MIDD-exist-REAL

‘We were fighting with spear and shield.’
(55) gätär-kà  fîn = kl-bàstà  sókú
    countryside(Amh)-IN  3PL = exist-WHILE  S’oku

fîn = nôn-kl-k
    3PL = talk-exist-REAL

háák’astà  gôôrâ-ka
    now  Amharic-WITH

fîn = nôn-kl-k
    3PL = talk-exist-REAL

‘While they lived in the countryside, they were speaking Sheko. Now
(living in town) they are talking in Amharic.’

ki ‘exist’ as indicator of Imperfective aspect occurs also with
cognition verbs to indicate the state:

(56) ṇ = t’bùs-kl-κ-ø
    1SG = know-exist-REAL-STI

‘I know’

(57) nát  aru-kl-b-kh  k’ôys-f-if-s
    1PL  think-exist-REAL-DAT  different-DEF-M

‘it is different from what we think’

(58) bāār-in-ø  únà  yááb  yî = gôrû-kl-κ-ø
    maiden-F.DEF-STI  long.ago man  3FS = be.afraid-exist-REAL-STI

‘A girl, in the past she was afraid of men.’

10.4.2  Perfective aspect

Perfective aspect is characterized as presenting as state of
affairs as ‘a single un analysable whole’ and ‘temporally
bounded’ (cf. Comrie 1976; Dahl 1985; Bybee 1994). In Sheko,
the verb k’éré ‘be left, remain’ is used to portray a state of affairs
as discontinuous, i.e. (one of) its boundaries is important. In
the examples below, it indicates that the state of affairs held in
the past but does not hold anymore (59), or not yet (60).

(59) únà  âwrâjâ  k’øy  n = ki-k’e-k-ø
    long.ago awraja(Amh)  one  1PL = exist-remain-REAL-STI

‘Long ago we lived in one awraja (administrative region which does
not exist anymore).’
Aklilu (1988) has analysed \textit{k’} ‘be left, remain’ as a remote past marker. Some examples, such as (61), agree with that analysis. However, \textit{k’} also occurs with future time reference as shown in examples (62)-(63) below.

(61) \textit{yeta ūnā nāt-ra kār-k’ā}
\begin{tabular}{lll}
\text{2SG} & long.ago & 1PL-Acc & forest-IN
\end{tabular}
\textbf{ha = bārū-k’e-k’ā}
\begin{tabular}{l}
\text{2SG = throw.away-remain-REAL-STI}
\end{tabular}

‘Long ago, you have left us in the forest.’ (Context: the abandoned children who say this, have now established a prosperous home.)

(62) \textit{īy yōwk’a tōsk’i-n-ārā há = k’ē-m-ō}
\begin{tabular}{llll}
\text{house} & 3SG & leak-NEG & 3MS = remain-IRR-STI
\end{tabular}
\begin{tabular}{llll}
\text{fīrū-āstā ás-k’ā ṭyārd-ārā há = k’ē-m-ō}
\end{tabular}
\begin{tabular}{llll}
\text{rain-3MS.COP?} & 3MS-\text{IN} & enter-NEG & 3MS = remain-IRR-STI
\end{tabular}

‘Well, the house will not leak. The rain will not enter it’ (Context: text about how to build a house. This sentence is said immediately after the part on thatching the roof.)

(63) \textit{tāf-ār = a-k’ē-n k’ē-s-ō}
\begin{tabular}{llll}
\text{cool.down-NEG = 3MS-remain-DIS} & \
\text{drink-STI}
\end{tabular}

‘Drink before it cools down!’

\textit{k’} ‘be left, remain’ is only used as an auxiliary verb.\footnote{In Guraferda, \textit{k’} is used more frequently than in Sheko and it may occur as main verb.} The backtranslation of my language consultants into Amharic is \textit{qārra}. In the Amharic dictionary of Leslau (1976) \textit{qārra} is described with “be left, remain, be missing, be absent, absent oneself, stay away, be cancelled (meeting), be omitted, be no
longer in existence, go out of use, die out (of custom), be called off”. The semantic component ‘be no longer in existence, remain (behind)’ may be pertinent for its use as Perfective and contrasts with Imperfective ki ‘exist, live’. The semantic component ‘remain, continue to be’ may be particularly noticeable in the use of k’ë in prohibitives. Prohibitives or negative imperatives consist of a negative followed by an imperative verb form of k’ë ‘be left, remain’. In order to form a prohibitive, use of k’ë is mandatory.

(64)  

kób-ārā    k’ë-ə
take-NEG    remain-STI

‘Don’t take!’

(65)  

na-ŋ    haay-k’á    kēw-ārā    k’ë-ft
1SG-DAT    ear-IN    shout-NEG    remain-PL-ADDR

‘Don’t shout in my ear (pl)!’

The two verbs ki ‘exist’ indicating Imperfective and k’ë ‘be left, remain’ indicating Perfective aspect are the only two verbs which can occur after a negative verb. As the negative verb itself never suffixes modal or clausal markers, these markers are attached to the auxiliary verb, e.g. the conditional marker (66) or Irrealis marker (66)-(67).

(66)  

yēnts’á    há=āāt-ārā    ki-htá    m-árá
avoidance    3MS=hold-NEG    exist-COND    eat-NEG

há=k’ë-m-ə
3MS=remain-IRR-STI

‘If he was not avoiding sexual contact, he could not eat (the milk at that time).’

(67)  

kááy    yí=ki-m-ə
be.not    3FS=exist-IRR-STI

‘She is probably not there/ She might be absent.’

10.4.3 The suffix -a in Irrealis forms

The suffix -a is a marker which occurs preceding the Irrealis marker -m, and it can be analysed in several ways. It has no
inherent tone but copies the tone of the preceding verb stem. It is glossed *put*, since it possibly derives from the verb *án* ‘put’.

(68)  há- bàb  katši  há = yáán-á-m-ə
     3MS.POSS-father  yam  3MS = plant.yam-put-IRR-STI

‘He would plant his fathers’ yams.’ (Context: talking about behavior of young men in a traditional setting.)

The suffix *-a* usually occurs together with the Irrealis marker, but both do occur separately. In questions, the Irrealis marker *-m* is dropped, but the *-a* remains (69b). Furthermore, the Irrealis marker occurs alone in other contexts such as in Irrealis complements (70).

(69)  a.  áš-ka  há = fáy-á-m-ə
       3MS-WITH  3MS = heal-put-IRR-STI

‘he will be healed with it’

b.  áš-ka  há = fáy-á
       3MS-WITH  3MS = heal-put[Q]

‘will he be healed with it?’

(70)  há = tóg-m-bàb
     3MS = go-IRR-father

‘that he will go’

With a small number of verbs, a semantic contrast is found between verb forms with and without the *-a* suffix (71). However, these verbs all have a non-velar stem, and the change in verb stems is concomitant with the presence or absence of the suffix. Given the semantics of both forms, the meaning difference likely derives from the velar : non-velar stem opposition. As section 10.5 demonstrates, velar stems are associated with (stronger) assertion.

(71)  a.  ñ = séé-m-ə
       1PL = see.NN-IRR-STI

‘we will see’ (less likely)

b.  ñ = ság-a-m-ə
       1PL = see-put-IRR-STI

‘we will see’ (more likely)
Furthermore, in negative verb forms, the suffix -a can only be combined with the Perfective marker ké ‘remain’ and the Irrealis marker -m. An example is given in (72).

(72) há-bàb katfì yáán-árá há=k'yá-á-m-á
   3MS.POSS-father yam plant.yam-NEG 3MS=remain-put-IRR-STI
   ‘He will (would) not plant his fathers’ yams.’

For contexts like (72) and (73), my language consultants said on various occasions there was no meaning difference between forms with k'ýá and forms with k’é ‘be left, remain’. It might be that k’é is a shorter form of k'ýá, but note that in e.g. prohibitive only k’é is acceptable and it is not interchangeable with k'ýá. Also, my language consultants never substituted the one for the other when we went through the process of transcribing a text or when they had to repeat a sentence.

(73) a. yèè-r=f-k'y-á-m-á
    come.NV-NEG = 3FS-remain-put-IRR-STI
    ‘she would not come’

b. yèè-r=f-k'é-m-á
    come.NV-NEG = 3FS-remain-IRR-STI
    ‘she would not come’

As the suffix -a does not noticeably add meaning, the first question is whether it is not part of the Irrealis marking itself. This analysis is problematic because it allows the allomorphs -am ~ -m ~ -a, and poses the question why the Irrealis -am would become -m in one environment and -a in another. In addition, other modal markers do not have the form -VC, nor do they display such variation.

Since the Imperfective and Perfective markers kii and k’é are verbal, it is logical to assume a verbal origin for the suffix -a as well. There are two candidates. First, the Diizi verb am ‘to become’, which is used in Diizi as a lexical verb (Beachy 2005) as well as in a construction meaning ‘to be on the point of, going to do something’ according to Tamrat (1988:27f). In Nayi, am is used as ‘Present/Future’ marker (Aklilu 1997:610). In
Sheko, am 'become' as a lexical verb is only used in the idiomatic expression in (74); otherwise the root foot 'become, happen' is used.

(74)  yifr = a     am  
    what = 2sg  become[ŋ]  
    'What have you become?' i.e. 'are you crazy?'

It is evident that am 'become' grammaticalizes in the Majoid languages. A sign of grammaticalization could be the loss of lexical tone of the suffix -a in Sheko. In spite of the problem mentioned above, the verb am 'become' could have given rise to the Irrealis marking by -am ~ -m ~ -a.

Secondly, the suffix -a could originate in the verb án 'put', which is a full lexical verb in Sheko (75), and is furthermore used as a future/ imperfect auxiliary in the Guraferda variant. án in Guraferdan Sheko often co-occurs with ki ‘exist’ (76a, d), but not always (b, c); following a vowel, however, its own vowel a is dropped rather than the vowel of the preceding verb (c, d). Being used in Guraferda, the verb án ‘put’ is a bit “closer to home” than the Dizoid verb am ‘become’.

(75)  yifr = kóy-ta   yifr = tãmü-k’á   an-ta  
    3fs = bring-ss  3fs = fire-in  put-ss  
    ‘she brought it and she put it on the fire...’

(76)  a. byana  saaya  gants-an-ki  dyan-s  
    tomorrow  fable  tell-put-exist  child.DEF-M  
    ‘the child who will tell a story tomorrow’

    b. sëenj  há = faar-an-s-ø  
       good  3ms = become-put-DECL-STI  
       ‘It will become nice.’

    c. m = boru-saku-te-n-s-ø  
       1sg = finish-arrive-go-put-DECL-STI  
       ‘I will move to him.’ (Context: a dog leaves a lion to go and live with an elephant.)

    d. fn = ye-n-ki-s  
       3pl = come-put-exist-DECL  
       ‘they will come’
In this thesis the last solution is followed, without claiming it is more likely than the other.

As for the negative verb forms, such as in (77), it is possible to take the sequence kʼyá as a whole, and relate it to the Diizin verb kʼya ‘leave’. However, this verb has no apparent grammatical function in Diizin or Nayi. In Sheko, kʼyá ‘leave’ is not found as a lexical verb (cf. sam ‘leave behind’). If this suggestion would be followed, polarity becomes an issue in the description of aspect markers: kʼyá would occur only in negative utterances, while the suffix -a would only in non-negative utterances. Since there is no evidence in Sheko itself for this line of thought, it is discarded and kʼyá is always glossed as kʼy-á remain-put in this thesis.

(77)  há-bààb  katʃi  yáán-árá  há=kʼy-á-m-a
     3MS.POSS-father  yam  plant.yam-NEG  3MS = remain-put-IRR-STI
     ‘He will (would) not plant his fathers’ yams.’  (= (72))

10.5 Verb stem alternation

10.5.1 Stem alternation in Sheko

In some paradigms, the verb root of a number of verbs is obligatorily changed. The change involves a final velar consonant. An example is given in (78) below. For ease of reference, the stems are called velar and non-velar respectively; the non-velar stem is glossed NV. These segmental alternations of the root do not affect the inherent lexical meaning of the verb. Note that only a small subset of verbs have two stems. 29

(78)  b.  yèg = fʃi-k-ə
     come = 3PL-REAL-STI
     ‘they came’

c.  fʃi = yée-tə
     3PL = come.NV-SS
     ‘they will come and...’

29 These verbs are listed in (86)-(88) below.
The selection of the velar or non-velar stem is determined mostly by the morphological environment. Factors which play a role in the selection are the TAM paradigm, the position of the verb stem (i.e., whether it occurs as the final or non-final stem in a series), and the structural position of subject clitic. The use of the velar and non-velar stem does not correspond to the tonal division of paradigms. The non-velar stem is used
- before the negative -ara
- before the same subject verb -ta
- as first member in verb-verb compound stems
- in Realis forms if the subject clitic precedes it
- in Irrealis forms if the Irrealis marker -m follows directly

Example (79) illustrates the non-velar stem in negatives.

(79) a. ỉy-tà      sā-ārā  
      house-LOC      arrive.NV-NEG  
      ‘he didn’t arrive home’
      cf. sak ‘arrive, reach’

b. téé-rá      k’é  
      go.NV-NEG      remain  
      ‘don’t go!’
      cf. tśg ‘go’

The two examples below show that the velar stem is employed preceding a different subject marker, whether the final (main) verb has Realis or Irrealis marking or whether the state of affairs is more or less likely to occur (80). In contrast, the non-velar stem is always employed preceding the same subject marker (81).

(80) a. ỉfí = tōg-ṇ   hā = ỉfí-kh   ātsū-k  
      3PL = go-DAT  3MS = 3PL-DAT   give-REAL
      ‘they went; he gave it to them.’

b. ỉfí = tōg-ṇ   hā = ỉfí-kh   gātsn-ă-m-ō  
      3PL = go-DAT  3MS = 3PL-DAT   help-PUT-IRR-STI
      ‘they will go; he will help them’
(81) a. **éná  ha=téé-t=a  ha=bángár-á**  
   later.today  2SG = go.NV-SS = 2SG  2SG = return-put.Q  
   ‘will you go and return today?’

   b. **ŋa=téé-ŋa  ŋa=ás-a  óskù-k**  
   1SG = go.NV-SS = 1SG  1SG = 3MS-ACC  call-REAL  
   ‘I went and called him’

Here are two examples from stories featuring the velar and non-velar stems of **koyg** ‘to bring’.

(82) **íjí=ki-ŋa  yí=kógy-ŋa  wúṣa  bokŋ**  
   3PL = exist-D.S  3FS = bring-D.S  IDEO  time  

   **íjí = ʔum-ki-bààstå**  
   3PL = eat-exist-WHILE  
   ‘...they lived there; she brought (the milk); while they were eating it for many days,...’

(83) **í3  hánhánúmbé  bly-əra  yaafu-tə**  
   3FS  bird.of.prey.sp  feather-ACC  find-SS  

   **waíjì-a  kóy-tə  yí=sàskù-tə**  
   many:ELAT  bring.NV-SS  3FS=arrive.CAUS-SS  
   ‘...she found feathers of a **hánhánúmbé** bird and brought a lot and displayed them and...’

With some moods, however, there is a slight difference in meaning between verb forms with a velar or non-velar stem. The two sentences in example (84) have both the Irrealis marker, but when sentence (b) is uttered, it is less likely to happen (soon). In this sentence the Irrealis marker immediately follows the verb stem.

(84) a. **ífí-data**  **ŋa=yēg-ə-mə**  
   2PL.POSS-near.LOC  1SG = come-put-IRR-STI  
   ‘I will visit you’

   b. **ífí-data**  **ŋa=yēe-ə-mə**  
   2PL.POSS-near.LOC  1SG = come.NV-IRR-STI  
   ‘I will visit you’
With the Realis marker (85), the non-velar stem is obligatorily used when the subject clitic precedes it, whereas the velar stem must be used when the subject clitic follows it. The latter form can be used for polarity focus on the verb/predicate. Thus, it seems that there is a slight preference for the velar stem to be used in states of affair which are more asserted.

(85)  
(a.  \( \text{\textasciitilde n} = \text{\textasciitilde see-k-\textasciitilde a} \)  
\text{1PL-see.NV-REAL-STI}  
‘we saw it’  
(b.  \( \text{\textasciitilde sa\textasciitilde g} = \text{\textasciitilde n-k-\textasciitilde a} \)  
\text{see = 1PL-REAL-STI}  
‘we saw it, we \textit{did} see it’

The following verbs have alternating stems\(^{30}\):

(86) \begin{tabular}{ll}
\textit{velar stem} & \textit{non-velar stem} \\
\text{\text{\textasciitilde sak}} & \text{\text{\textasciitilde s\textasciitilde a}} & \text{‘arrive’} \\
\text{\textasciitilde koy\textasciitilde g} & \text{\textasciitilde k\textasciitilde oy} & \text{‘bring’} \\
\text{\textasciitilde e\textasciitilde g} & \text{\textasciitilde e\textasciitilde e} & \text{‘do’} \\
\text{\textasciitilde ya\textasciitilde g} & \text{\textasciitilde y\textasciitilde e\textasciitilde e} & \text{‘come’} \\
\text{\textasciitilde s\textasciitilde \textasciitilde og} & \text{\textasciitilde s\textasciitilde e\textasciitilde e} & \text{‘see’} \\
\text{\textasciitilde t\textasciitilde a\textasciitilde g} & \text{\textasciitilde t\textasciitilde e\textasciitilde e} & \text{‘go’} \\
\end{tabular}

A velar \textit{-k} also appears in the following derived adjectives:

(87) \begin{tabular}{ll}
\text{\textasciitilde s\textasciitilde a\textasciitilde r} & \text{‘become hot’}  \\
\text{\textasciitilde s\textasciitilde a\textasciitilde r\textasciitilde k\textasciitilde i\textasciitilde s} & \text{‘hot’} \\
\text{\textasciitilde f\textasciitilde a\textasciitilde y\textasciitilde} & \text{‘be saved’}  \\
\text{\textasciitilde f\textasciitilde a\textasciitilde y\textasciitilde k\textasciitilde i\textasciitilde s} & \text{‘healed, well’} \\
\text{\textasciitilde m\textasciitilde a\textasciitilde j} & \text{‘be brave’}  \\
\text{\textasciitilde m\textasciitilde a\textasciitilde j\textasciitilde k\textasciitilde h\textasciitilde s} & \text{‘courageous’} \\
\end{tabular}

The following list contains all verb stems in my corpus which end in CC with the last consonant being a velar. A non-velar stem is not recorded for them, but because of the last consonant (some of) these verb stems might be frozen velar stems.

\(^{30}\) The verb \textit{k\textasciitilde o\textasciitilde b} ‘take’ probably also has a non-velar stem too, which is \textit{k\textasciitilde o\textasciitilde o\textasciitilde u}, but it is attested sporadically in irrealis verb forms only, not in other verb forms. Example: \( \text{\textasciitilde h\textasciitilde a\textasciitilde-f\textasciitilde o\textasciitilde t\textasciitilde-t\textasciitilde a\textasciitilde h\textasciitilde a = k\textasciitilde t\textasciitilde-h\textasciitilde-t\textasciitilde a\textasciitilde n = k\textasciitilde o\textasciitilde o\textasciitilde m-a 3MS = happen-COND happen-NEG}  
\text{3MS = exist-COND INCL 1SG = take.NV-IRR-STI ‘Whether it happens or not, I will accept it.’}
(88) udg ‘become night’
yáňk ‘stir’
tufk ‘collide’
şóóp’k ‘yawn’
dark ‘be cut into pieces’
hark ‘respect a taboo’
k’árk ‘bend’
k’árk ‘wrap around’
ork ‘peel’
p’urk ‘be uprooted’
sérk ‘bring maize into the house’
t’erk ‘shove, push forward’
besk ‘divide’
dyask ‘relocate goods’
físk ‘spatter’
fosk ‘skin’
gásk ‘insult’
kásk ‘be cheerful’
k’éśk ‘stab with a finger/ knuckles’
ošk ‘call’
fíšk ‘be tasty’
wusk ‘enter’
wúšk ‘untie’
bónk ‘burn (intr.)’
dónk ‘dip into’
gínk ‘doze, nod off’
núnk ‘suck’
jónk ‘lie’
şónk ‘mince, crunch’
wunk ‘steal’
yánk ‘be angry’

Finally, the verb ‘to go’ has a suppletive stem in. The stems in and tag can be used interchangeably in most cases.

(89) Basic in
   Non-Factual téé
   Factual tag
10.5.2 Velar alternation in other Omotic languages

The velar alternation in Sheko resembles the situation in Benchnon, although there are differences as well. A comparison on this point between the two languages can contribute to the research of the velar stems in Omotic.

In Sheko, the velar stem occurs in the Basic paradigm (Imperative singular and Jussive) as well as Factual paradigms such as Realis. The non-velar stem occurs among others in the negative paradigm. The division of paradigms into three groups, Basic, Factual and Non-Factual, is based on tone. All Factual paradigms are underlined and all Non-Factual paradigms in italic. If the form does not differ from the Basic stem, it is in normal font.

(90) Sheko verb classes and stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>L</th>
<th>H</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basic</td>
<td>kaas</td>
<td>sak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Factual</td>
<td>káás sá</td>
<td>sís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factual</td>
<td>kàás</td>
<td>sák</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘play’ ‘arrive’ ‘listen’ ‘see’

In Benchnon, the Basic stem is mainly used in Imperative singular. (If a form does not differ from the Basic stem, it is unmarked.) The velar stem is called Factual stem and occurs among others in the Perfective and on the story line in clause chains, but also in Imperfective compound paradigms (they are underlined in verb class 2 and 4). The other derived stem is called Non-Factual and occurs mainly in negatives and the Future (the italic stems in class 3 and 4). The division into three groups of paradigms in Benchnon is based on the segmental-tonal alternations.

(91) Benchnon verb classes and stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>2a</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>4a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basic</td>
<td>kít</td>
<td>háys</td>
<td>dúb</td>
<td>sót</td>
<td>hám</td>
<td>sip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Factual</td>
<td>kít</td>
<td>háys</td>
<td>dúb</td>
<td>sót</td>
<td>hám</td>
<td>sip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factual</td>
<td>kít</td>
<td>háys-k dúg</td>
<td>sót</td>
<td>hân’k</td>
<td>sik</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

31 Data taken from Rapold (2006: 265ff). kít ‘draw water’; háys ‘plait’; dúb ‘tread, dance’; sót ‘suspend’; hám ‘go’; sip ‘sew’. I have left out two additional small classes with exceptions to class 3 and 4 for the sake of clarity.
An important difference is that Benchnon has a large class of verbs (class 1), which has just one unchanging stem. Also, tone changes take place only in two classes (3, 4), in the Non-Factual stem. In contrast, Sheko has tone changes across the board, in the Non-Factual as well as the Factual stem. (This is why the division in groups of paradigms is based purely on tone in Sheko, but on segmental-tonal alternations in Benchnon.)

The two languages are similar in that Non-Factual (if present) has a higher tone than Factual. Furthermore, in both languages the segmentally more complex stems have a final velar consonant, i.e. the velar is added.

Irregular stem-final velars have been reported for several Omotic languages. Hayward (1996) proposed that the ideosyncratic velars are traces of an old perfective marker. Azeb (2001:100) states for Maale that the velar ‘seems to be a relic of a once productive derivational morpheme’, linked to (the degree of involvement in) causation. Rapold (2006: 274-282), writing on Benchnon, suggests a ‘very close link between middle verb semantics and the distribution of the velar stem extension’, but leaves open ‘whether it is a Perfective marker restricted to middle verbs or rather a derivation marker (...) for middles’ (281-282).

In Sheko, the causative can be built on a velar stem, as in (92) on the stem sak ‘arrive, reach’ (metathesis applies). However, not all causatives are built on the velar stem: se-s ‘show’ is built on the non-velar stem see ‘see’ (velar stem sóg). No decisive arguments can be given for an analysis of the velar as a derivational marker or a perfective (inflectional) marker.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{(92)} & \quad \text{ha} = \text{såk-}\dMin & \quad \text{fâ} = \text{má} & \quad \text{fû} = \text{fûr-\tAb-a} \\
& \quad 3\text{MS} = \text{arrive-DS} & \quad 3\text{PL} = \text{earlier.today} & \quad 3\text{PL} = \text{trade-PASS-REL-ACC} \\
& \quad \text{såk-}\dMin & \quad \text{arrive.CAUS-DS} \\
& \quad \text{‘He arrived; they brought out what they had just bought,...’}
\end{align*}
\]
10.6 Subject clitics
The subject clitics are given in (93) below, with for each person a proclitic and enclitic form. The only difference between these is that the proclitic forms have an initial (albeit weak) consonant where enclitics have an initial vowel. Thus, the observation is reinforced that in Sheko, word-initially CV is obligatory\(^\text{32}\) (cf. section 2.5.1).

(93) 1sg  \( n = \)  =\( n \)  1pl  \( n = \)  =\( ñ \)
2sg  \( ha = \)  =\( a \)  2pl  \( ñl = \)  =\( ñl \)
3ms  \( há = \)  =\( á \)  3pl  \( jñl = \)  =\( jñl \)
3fs  \( ý = \)  =\( ñ \)

The subject clitics are co-referent with the subject of the clause. The subject clitic can co-occur with a subject noun phrase (94) or pronoun (95) (rare). A subject clitic is sufficient in itself without explicitly mentioned subject. E.g. example (96) is a complete sentence.

(94) \( ýl = bárkây-n \)  k’ay-t\( ñ \)
\( 3\text{fs} = \text{monkey.F-DEF} \)  rise-ss
‘...the monkey rose and...’

(95) \( h = yeta \)  yòwk’a  fín-yēg-\( n \)  há = ?áz
\( 2\text{sg} = 2\text{sg} \)  INTJ  descend-come-DS  \( 3\text{ms} = 3\text{ms} \)
\( kēēs-tēé-t = á \)
\( \text{go.out-come.NV-ss} = 3\text{ms} \)
‘... and well, you come down; he climbs up and he...’

(96) \( jñt’-ra \)  \( ýl = gàlm-âtsu-k-ø \)
\( \text{maize-ACC} \)  \( 3\text{fs} = \text{roast.ripe-give-REAL-STI} \)
‘She roasted maize and gave it.’

The subject clitic may cliticize to any constituent in relation to information structure. This topic is discussed at length in chapter 15, along with other observations on subject clitics. The label ‘clitic’ is chosen because the element cannot be uttered on its own, but is dependent on another element for its

\(^\text{32}\) Following chapter 2, glottal stop is not written word-initially. Hence, \( ñl = \)  stands for [\( ñl = \)]. Initial syllabic nasals allow variation [ \( ñn \) ]  \( ñn \) .
pronunciation; and it appears at both edges of the verb word and many other types of words. Its position is not determined by syntax but by (syntactic-)pragmatic considerations. No theoretical claims are intended by the use of the term clitic.

10.7 Copula

The copula verb in Sheko is тa. As a final verb, it occurs with modal markers belonging to the Factual paradigms, such as the Realis (97), Obvious (98) and Viewpoint (99) modal markers, as well as with negation (100). It cannot occur with the modal markers from the Non-Factual paradigms. This is obviously due to the nature of the copula. The copula is used for equation or identification, and it asserts that the subject and copula complement are equitable and/or identify the same referent.

(97) a. хa-naanu  гебэри  тa
    2SG.POSS-elder.brother  farmer(Amh)  COP[Q]

    ‘Is/ was your brother a farmer?’

b. н-naanu  кӧмтӧ  тa-k-a
    1SG.POSS-elder.brother  chief  COP-REAL-STI

    ‘My brother is/ was a chief.’

(98) yиs  тa-kn
    DIST.M  COP-KNOWN

    ‘This is it (obviously)’

(99) gайду  тa-s=a
    problem  COP=VIEWP-STI

    ‘It is a problem (according to me)’

(100) хaáк’astà  хa-datà  кl-b-еe
    now  2SG.POSS-near.LOC exist-REL-STI

    хa-náшà  тé-réé
    2SG.POSS-husband COP-NEG-STI

    ‘The one which is with you now, it is not your husband.’

Example (101) illustrates that the copula cannot be followed by the Irrealis marker. If one wants to express an equation with
Irrealis reference, one uses the verb foot ‘to become, to happen’, as in (102).

(101) *ha-nini gebe to-m-o
2SG.POSS-elder.sister queen COP-IRR-STI
(intended ‘Your sister will/ could be a queen’)

(102) yeta kyâz ha=fôöt-â-m-o
2SG king 3MS = become-put-IRR-STI
‘You will/ could be (become) king.’

Here are examples of the copula as a medial verb.

(103) gôôz to-t=á hâ=têê-kl-bâästa
snake COP-SS = 3MS 3MS = go.NV-exist-WHILE
‘There was a snake and while he went along,...’ (Lit. ‘It was a snake... Context: first sentence of a fable.)

(104) fîl=bâgû=sâsk-âb to-â k’oys-â-s
3PL = work-arrive.CAUS-REL COP-DS other-DEF-M
fîl=ôôf-ámbâb kâây
3PL = dress-IRR-father be.not
‘it is what they made; there was nothing else which they could wear’

The copula is not obligatorily present.

(105) yîz bâdîgh ëy
DIST.M Badign house
‘This (is) Badign’s house.’

(106) maayà ge-t-âb ts’êts’î-ka bàg-t’û-kl-b
maaya say-PASS-REL grass.SP-WITH work-PASS-exist-REL
‘The (thing) called maaya (was) something made of grass’ (Context: a cape used as a raincoat)

The stance marker may attach to the predicate nominal, as in (107)-(108). The stance marker can attach to all utterance final elements (see section 10.2).
(107) t’yárá’mà
  gourd-half-STI

  ‘(It is) a gourd half.’ (Context: answer to the question ‘What is it?’.
  Formerly, men drunk from a type of gourd cups, while the women
  used clay cups.)

(108) ɲ-sumà  bádígh-ə
  1SG.POSS-name  Badign-STI

  ‘My name (is) Badign.’ (Context: The interlocutor didn’t understand
  properly; the speaker repeats her name.)

The same-subject marker is formally identical to the copula. However,
they are very different structurally, at least synchronically: the copula
can be considered a verb and occurs where verb stems occur, whereas
the same-subject marker always occupies a slot following the verb stem (109).
The two morphemes can follow each other (110).

(109) há=sàw-tə  kéta  kòb-tə
  3MS=arrive.NV-SG-all  take-SG

  ‘he arrived and took everything and...’

(110) kútfi  bay  te-te  yi-nàšà  kòðbù-ra
  chicken  mother  COP-SS  3FS.POSS-husband  cock
  gasku-tə
  insult-SG

  ‘There was (Lit: It was) a hen and she insulted her husband the cock
  and...’ (Context: first sentence of a story.)

The copula is also used in cleft constructions (111)-(113). The
following verb is not relativised. Cleft constructions are discussed
in section 15.5.1.

(111) yááb  t=á  kúš-ə-mə  wòbə
  man  COP=3MS  be.sick-put-IRR-STI  malaria(Amh)
  há-gorí  kúš-ërée
  3MS.POSS-head  be.sick-NEG.STI

  ‘A PERSON becomes sick. Malaria itself doesn’t become sick.’
  (Context: The Sheko of the researcher was corrected.)
(112) a. áás = n  n = ēg-o
    how = 1SG  1SG = do-STL ADDR
    ‘what shall I do?’

i. áás-t = n  n = ēg-o
    how-COP = 1SG  1SG = do-STL ADDR
    ‘what shall I do?’

(113) öët  kīš-kī-b-is  ḥāāy  tə  hā = ēt’ū
    cow  drink-exist-REL-DIST.M  water  COP  3MS = say-PASS.Q
    ‘Is this what the cows drink called WATER?’ (Context: talking about
    water containing minerals called ṣaad)

10.8 Existential

This section briefly touches upon existential, locative and
possession predication. The existential verb in Sheko is kī ‘exist,
live, be’. It functions as main verb (114) and as Imperfective
aspect marker (see section 10.4.1). Existential clauses assert the
presence of something and can be used to introduce referents
(101). Existential main clauses often have 3ms agreement, also
for plural referents, as in (116) and (117).

(114) haz-k’a  yā = kī-k’e-k-ə
    PROX.M-IN  3FS = exist-remain-REAL-STI
    ‘She has been here.’/ ‘She lived here.’

(115) gyānū  kī = á-k-ə
    coffee  exist = 3MS-REAL-STI
    ‘There is coffee.’

(116) sīnli  kūbēn  kī = á-k-ə
    cup(Amh)  four  exist = 3MS-REAL-STI
    ‘There’s four cups.’

(117) dādū  t’āāg nj-kh  kī = á-k-ə
    child  two  3FS-DAT  exist = 3MS-REAL-STI
    ‘She has two children.’ (Lit: there’s two children to her.)

Locative and Possessive predication appears to be modeled on
existential predication. A locative clause also uses the verb kī
‘exist’ and contains a noun phrase marked by the inessive case marker -kà (for ‘containment’) or the locative case marker -tà (for a more general location).

(118) a. kûrﬁ  botše-k’à  kÌ = á-k-ø
   key(Amh) mud.shelf-IN exist = 3MS-REAL-STI
   ‘The key is on the shelf.’

b. k’á équipé  êëèd-kè básì-tà  kÌ = á-k
   army.ant door-DAT doorstep-LOC exist = 3MS-REAL
   ‘There are ants near the door.’

c. gõydû kår-k’à  hà = kly-ø
   guereza forest-IN 3MS = exist-D5
   nÌ = see-k-ø
   1SG = see.NV-REAL-STI
   ‘I saw a guereza monkey in the forest.’ (Lit: there was a guereza in the forest; I saw it.)

In possessive predication, the possessor NP is in the dative case and the possessum NP occurs as the subject of the predicate. In the predicative possession construction, only the possessum can be the grammatical subject. It is possible to change the order of possessor and possessum, but this does not affect the grammatical marking (119)-(120).

(119) gyãñû  ífì-kh  kÌ = á-k-ø
   coffee 3PL-DAT exist = 3MS-REAL-STI
   ‘They have coffee.’ (Lit: there is coffee to them.)

(120) m-baad-Ì-s-kh   gyãñû  p’ûtì-ká  kÌ = á-k
   1SG.POSS-younger.sibling-DEF-M-DAT coffee many exist = 3MS-REAL
   ‘My brother has a lot of coffee.’

Interestingly, the subject cannot be marked for definiteness, as shown in example (103). Asymmetry in definiteness between possessor and possessum is to be expected (cf. Heine 1997:30).

(121) Ægyâñ-ø  m-baad-Ì-s-kh   kÌ = á-k
   coffee-DEF-M  1SG.POSS-younger.sibling-DEF-M-DAT exist = 3MS-REAL
   int. ‘The coffee is to my brother’, i.e. ‘the coffee belongs to my brother.’
The systematic absence of definiteness marking on the subject constituent in possessive predication is related to the type of construction and its function. Possessive predication typically asserts possession, whereas in attributive possession the possession is typically presupposed (Heine 1997:26). Thus, in possessive predication the possessee is presented as existing in relation to a referent (the possessor). Likewise, existential predication characteristically introduces a referent and is not normally used to predicate about a given or known referent. Inessive and locative case are treated in section 9.2.5. Possession is further treated in section 9.3.

10.9 Verb phrase and word order
Sheko is strictly verb-final in dependent as well as in main clauses. Regarding clauses with full NPs, the dominant word order is SOV (122), but OSV is possible too (123). Word order varies for Direct and Indirect Object (124)-(125), as well as for the place of oblique constituents (126).

(122) bärkäy-₇ tääm-ᵣ-s kobb-ta
    monkey.F-DEF fire-DEF-M take-SS
    ‘the monkey took the fire and...’

(123) há=šóóz-ᵣ-s-ara yáb-ᵣ-s dufu-t=á
    3MS = snake-DEF-M.ACC man-DEF-M hit-SS = 3MS
    wuŋ-₇
    kill-DS
    ‘the man hit the snake and killed it...’

(124) yí=fárä-n-s-ora ás-kh átsu-ta
    3PS = horse-DEF-M.ACC 3MS-DAT give-SS
    ‘she gave the horse to him and...’

(125) ás-kh fāfā-ka áamā-ka k’áfū áts-ta
    3MS-DAT papaya-COR yam.SP-COR hanging.fruit? give-DS
    ‘and gave him papaya and aama yams and tree-fruits,...’
In the few instances that a constituent follows the verb, it is best analysed as an afterthought, as it is preceded by a pause. In (127), the afterthought clarifies to which place the first Sheko chief Koynab came. This place was already mentioned in the preceding discourse.

(127) ... Koynab  yêê-k |  egità
     Koynab      come-REAL  Egita
     ‘... and Koynab came, to Egita.’

Other typological traits common to verb-final languages are: dependent clauses preceding main clauses (128), and the use of suffixes rather than prefixes. Sheko confirms to this picture, although there is one set of prefixes as well (possessive prefixes).

(128)  If = sub-htà  ëkî  há = sàskù-atsù-kì-k-ø
        3PL = die-COND  money  3MS = arrive.CAUS-give-exist-REAL-STI
     ‘If they die, he donates money.’

Word order in the NP is variable; the unmarked order appears to be head-initial. See section 9.1 for examples and discussion.
11 Complex clauses

This chapter discusses medial verbs and switch-reference in Sheko, as well as serial verb constructions, subordinated clauses and conjunctions.

11.1 Medial verbs

11.1.1 Formal and syntactical properties

Medial verbs form clause chains in which one or more medial verbs precede a final (main) verb. Formally, medial verbs consist of a stem and a switch-reference marker at the minimum (1); a subject clitic may be present as well (2). Examples with aspect markers are sparse - only ki ‘exist’ in my sample - and describe a state rather an ongoing activity (3), i.e. ki ‘exist’ does not denote Imperfective aspect here, but is the last verb of a verb-verb sequence.

(1)  
\begin{align*} 
\text{um-ta} & \quad \text{bärgä-kä} & \quad \text{gúdrú} & \quad \text{daan} & \quad \text{feef-ta} \\
\text{eat-ss} & \quad \text{monkey-WIT} & \quad \text{only} & \quad \text{together} & \quad \text{spend.day-ss} \\
\text{‘ate and spent all the day with the monkey and...’} 
\end{align*}

(2)  
\begin{align*} 
\text{há = tee-ta} \\
\text{3MS = go.NV-ss} \\
\text{‘he went and...’} 
\end{align*}

(3)  
\begin{align*} 
\text{bääyä} & \quad \text{bambú-k’à} & \quad \text{wutu-ki-ta} & \quad \text{há = nata-ra} \\
\text{lion} & \quad \text{pit-IN} & \quad \text{fall-exist-ss} & \quad \text{3MS = 1SG-ACC} \\
\text{bútà} & \quad \text{gişu-kës-o} & \quad \text{ge-t=á} & \quad \text{k’or-n} \\
\text{outside} & \quad \text{pull-go.out.CAUS-STI} & \quad \text{say-ss = 3MS} & \quad \text{beg-ss} \\
\text{‘Having fallen in a pit, Lion begged saying “Pull me out”...’} 
\end{align*}

Syntactically, medial verbs are dependent on final verbs; this type of clause combination is regarded as co-subordination (cf. Van Valin and LaPolla 1997:454, following Olson 1981). The term ‘medial verb’ is preferred here above ‘converb’, since the latter is defined as subordinated in cross-linguistic typological work (Givón 1990; Haspelmath 1995:20-27), although in Omotic studies the term ‘converb’ is used for
dependent-but-not-subordinated verb forms as well (e.g. Azeb and Dimmendaal 2006).

The medial verb depends on the final verb for modal (and aspect) marking. However, the tonal height on the medial verb stem indicates whether the final verb belongs to one of the Factual paradigms or not, cf. section 10.3.1. Here is an example:

(4) a. \( \text{gābā-kā} \ \text{n} = \text{tēe-tn} \ \text{bāngār-ā-m-ə} \)  
market-IN 1SG = go.NV-SS = 1SG return-put-IRR-STI  
‘I will go to the market and return.’

b. \( \text{gābā-kā} \ \text{n} = \text{tee-tn} \ \text{bangar-k-ə} \)  
market-IN 1SG = go.NV-SS = 1SG return-REAL-STI  
‘I went to the market and returned.’

11.1.2 Switch-reference markers
The two switch-reference markers of Sheko are -tə for same-subject (SS) continuation and -ə for different subject (DS) continuation. Subject switches account for most of the occurrences. An example is given below.

(5) \( \text{sūp’} \text{ sūp’} \text{ sūp’} \text{ yf} = \text{ge-ə} \)  
sew  sew  sew  3FS = say-PS  
\( \text{yf} = \text{silp’-ə-tf’or-fə-tə} \text{ yf} = \text{tām-ə-s-ə} \ \text{āts-ə} \)  
3FS = sew-finish-CAUS-SS 3FS = fire-DEF-M-ACC give-DS  
\( \text{bārkāy-ə} \text{ tām-ə-s} \ \text{kəb-tə} \)  
monkey.F-DEF fire-DEF-M take-SS  
‘“Sew, sew, sew,” she (monkey 1) said; she (monkey 2) finished sewing and she (monkey 2) gave her the fire; the monkey (monkey 1) took the fire and...’

Another factor influencing the choice of switch-reference marker is the presence of a textual boundary, which is signaled by using the DS-marker. (The boundary is marked here by the symbol §.) Questioned about the occurrence of the DS-marker in example (6), a language consultant remarked that the first line served as a title.
Furthermore, in example (7) a new scene starts, beginning with the setting clause  fileId= словамâte ‘when they reached it’. The different subject marker occurs preceding the setting clause, although the subject does not immediately switch.

As an aside, the switch-reference markers are easily combined with passive marking in Sheko, as shown in examples (8)-(10). Thus Sheko, like Benchnon, constitutes a counter-example for the tendency noted in Van Valin and LaPolla (1997:290), that voice oppositions do not often co-occur with a switch-reference system. Typically, the Sheko examples describe a state of affairs or process in which the Agent is not important.
(9)  
\[ \text{füs} = f \text{-k-} \overset{e}{} \quad \text{gē-t’-h} \quad \text{yòwkw’a yīs-tà} \]

fulfill.time = 3FS-REAL-STA say-PASS-DS INTJ DIST.M-LOC

\[ yáá-kh \quad k’āpt’ú-ʔast-h \quad yīs-kaari \quad úm-t’-árá \]

man-DAT cut.PASS-give.PASS-DS DIST.M-until eat-PASS-NEG

‘She fulfilled the time,’” it is said; well, then (a hair from her tail) is cut for somebody (the chief) and given; until then (her milk) is not eaten.’

(10)  
\[ \text{kara} \quad \text{yīs} \quad \text{bàtà} \quad \text{yéngí} \quad \text{ān-t’-h} \]

leave DIST.M on.LOC firewood put-PASS-DS

\[ \text{yéngí} \quad \text{yīs} \quad \text{bàtà} \quad \text{gōm-ǹ-s-əra} \]

firewood DIST.M on.LOC gomfa-DEF-M-ACC

\[ būz-t’ú-t=á \quad \text{há=ʔån-t’-á-m-ə} \]

pluck-PASS-SS = 3MS 3MS = put-PASS-put-IRR-STA

‘...on the leaves firewood will be put; on the firewood, the plucked gomfa bird will be put.’

11.2 Serial verb constructions

This section discusses verb-verb sequences, by which I mean sequences of verb stems, of which the first stem does not carry switch reference marking. Here is an example:

(11)  
\[ \text{há=ʔyāb-ǹ-s-əra} \quad \text{gyàʔu-ts’yəsh-tə} \]

3MS = grass-DEF-M-ACC chew-be.replete.MIDD-SS

‘he ate his fill of the grass and...’ (Lit: he chew the grass and was replete.)

These verb-verb sequences have characteristics of serial verb constructions (Aikhenvald 2006): they act together as a single predicate without any overt marker of coordination, subordination or other dependency relation, they share TAM values and arguments, they present things as a single state of affairs, and furthermore, the verbs which are components of the sequence can stand on their own. The transitivity values of the verbs may be different. The subject clitic occurs maximally once\(^\text{33}\) (reflecting the status of the event as a single unit

\(^{33}\) This is actually difficult to ascertain as in most SVCs there is no intervening material at all between the verbs, but see examples (13)-(15).
described in one clause). Therefore, I will call verb-verb sequences serial verb constructions.\textsuperscript{34}

One might argue that sequences of medial verb also conform to some of the characteristics of serial verb constructions, such as sharing of TAM values and arguments. However, medial verbs are not monoclausal, each medial clause may have its own subject clitic, and the switch-reference markers overtly mark the clause as a medial (cosubordinate) clause. Medial clauses present events as occurring one after another. In contrast, serial verb constructions can be called monoclausal, and they present actions as constituting a single event.

Serial verb constructions can roughly be divided into two. The first group consists of a serial verb construction in which the second (last) verb comes from a restricted set of verbs and adds aspectual values to the first verb (verbs), which carries the lexical meaning. The second group consists of a serial verb construction in which both verbs have equal status and the sequence has no idiosyncratic or opaque meaning. In some cases, the first verb expresses manner, while the second verb is (often) a verb of motion.

Verb-verb compounds cannot be distinguished from serial verbs on formal grounds. However, the meaning of a compound is not immediately clear from the meaning of the individual verbs, as e.g. in (12): ‘trade’ + ‘throw away’ = sell; cf. its opposite fuur-kob 'trade-take' which means 'buy'. (bar 'throw away' does not denote Completive aspect here.)

\begin{equation}
\text{(12) } \begin{array}{ll}
\text{öyt-ä} & \text{ha=Fuur-bärü-kl} \\
\text{cow.f-def} & \text{2SG = trade-throw.away-exist(q)} \\
\text{‘are you selling the cow?’}
\end{array}
\end{equation}

In almost all serial verb constructions, the verbs immediately follow each other; only rarely does an argument separate the

\textsuperscript{34} An alternative solution would be to allow medial clauses with zero marking, which denote 'same subject, overlap' (complementary to medial verbs marked by -tä 'same subject, sequential') and obligatory absence of the subject clitic in the clause following the 'same subject, overlap'. This is done for Dizi (Beachy 2005:117). Another solution could be sought in positing some form of 'complex predication'. 
verbs. Intervening arguments may only occur with the second group of serial verbs (non-aspectual). The intervening arguments in examples (13)-(15) are marked by locative or other pheripheral cases.

(13) ás-əra k’ir’k’u báákù-tà an-ta há = ?an-əb-tà
3MS-ACC twist firestones-LOC put-SS 3MS = put-REL-LOC
‘he tied him up above the fireplace and when he had put him there,…’

(14) jfl = tee bék’ñ-ka tɕ’ad-to jfl = zilp’h-ñ-k-ə
3PL = go,NV spear-with pierce-SS 3PL = chase.away-REAL-STA
‘…they came spearing (him) and chased (him) away.’

(15) nat dāwā ge bútà zilph-n-tə géék’u-ra
1SG deer say outside chase-SS goat-ACC
iy-k’à any-k-b
house-IN put-exist-REL
‘the one who calling me deer chased me outside and put the goat inside the house…’

11.2.1 Aspectual serial verb constructions
This section discusses the following verbs occurring as the second member of a serial verb construction:

(16) verb: aspect:
bar ‘throw away’ Completeive
jfl ‘defecate’ Irreversibility (?)
fééf ‘spend the day’ Prolonged progressive
tâbèéf < tâg-féef Prolonged progressive
yəg ‘come’ Direction towards the deictic centre
tâg ‘go’ Direction away from the deictic centre

The verbs mentioned here are structurally different from the auxiliary verbs ki ‘exist’ and k’é ‘be left, remain’ which denote Imperfective and Perfective aspect. For instance, they do not occur after negated verb stems.
The verb *bar* ‘throw away, abandon’ is used as a main verb (17) and as an indicator of Completive aspect in serial verb constructions (18)-(21).

(17) a. **kafú** é-ká **bar**
    dirt over.there-LCT throw.away
    ‘Throw the garbage away over there!’

b. **shift** **bar-ə**
    shift throw.away-STI
    ‘Let go of the shift key.’ (Context: computer training.)

(18) **ŋ = t’ès-bår-ʊ-kə**
    1SG = bake-throw.away-REAL-STI
    ‘I finished baking (the injera)”

(19) **um-bår = à**
    eat-throw.away = 2SG.Q
    ‘Have you finished eating?”

(20) **yí = ʂóz-kà** **kum-ɪn-ə-səra** **k’uțš’bår-ŋ**
    3FS = snake-DAT neck-DEF-M-ACC cut-throw.away-DS
    ‘she cut off the neck of the snake...’

(21) **yíis-t-á** **yówk’a** **éez-ɪn-ə-səra** **kéta**
    DIST.M-LOC = 3MS INTJ honey-DEF-M-ACC all
    **k’čét’-băr-ʊ-m**
    swallow-throw.away-put-BIR
    ‘and then, well, he eats up all the honey.’

The verb *ff* ‘defecate’ is used twice in my sample of stories. It possibly indicates irreversibility. Alternatively, it could be a marker of temporality which is only accidentally formally identical to the verb.35

---

35 Cf. the Wolaitta different subject converb marker *ffn(f)*, which is also used as adverative (Azeb Amha p.c.), and Zayse *ffn* on past state predications (Hayward 1990:282).
(22)  há = ʂub-ʧi-ŋ
     3MS = die-defecate-DS
     ‘...he died (irreversible)’

(23)  fyáŋŋ kees-tɔ  kaay-ʧi-ŋ
     frog.F.DEF    go.out-SS    be.not-defecate-DS
     ‘...the little frog went out and was not there;...’

Furthermore, the verb feēf ‘spend the day’ is used to indicate that an event occurs over a longer period of time (24). The time of day is not important when this verb is used as aspectual verb. In (25), the emphasis is on the fact that the participants keep sleeping, so feēf is used even though it is night. The verb haay ‘spend the night’ is not used in this way, although as a main verb it is used for ‘spend the night’ as well as ‘stay’ (26).

(24)  k'oy  kōb-yē-ŋ-tɔ  kà-kày  há-bàtì
     one      take-come.NV-SS     PLUR-again     3MS.POSS-on.LOC
     án-tɔ  yis-tà  há = dyāskū-feēf-t = ā
     put-SS     DIST.M-LOC       3MS = relocate-spend.day-SS = 3MS
     ‘...bring another (honeycomb) and again put (it) on the other and then he keeps moving (them) and...’

(25)  ʧiŋ = sōk'ʊ-feēf-tɔ  ʧiŋ = k'áy-ki-bànstà
     3PL = sleep-spend.day-SS    3PL = rise-exist-WHILE
     ‘they spent the time sleeping and while they were waking up,...’

(26)  a.  zāsá  haay-ŋ
     good    spend.night-STI
     ‘Sleep well!’

   b.  mā  ûtsʊ  n = ɦây-k
     earlier.today    five     1SG-spend.night-REAL
     ‘I have stayed for five days now.’

The complex form tōbēf ‘keep doing’, a prolonged progressive, is found a number of times in the sample of stories. It often occurs when the story reaches a head towards the end of the tale. It is a combination of the verbs tāg ‘go’ and feēf ‘spend the day’.
In addition, the verbs *yeg* ‘come’ and *tág* ‘go’ are used to indicate direction with respect to the speaker or the deictic centre.

(28) bákəjə  na-ŋ  kob-yeg-ə
    stool 1SG-DAT  take-come-STI
    ‘Bring the stool for me!’ (= movement towards speaker)

(29) bārtɨ-kə  kob-tág-ə
    Barxi-DAT  take-go-STI
    ‘Bring it to Barxi’ (= movement away from speaker)

(30) hā = gūş-kōb-ɪn-á-m
    3MS = kidnap-take-go-put-IRR
    ‘he will kidnap-bring (her)’ (Context: in marriage, the pair usually goes into hiding, unless the man’s home is far away from the village of the girl.)

It is not clear how exactly a deictic centre is construed in stories. This is an interesting topic for further research on discourse. In a few cases, ‘going away’ or ‘leaving the scene’ is referred to by *yeg* ‘come’, as in example (31).

(31) ...yí-baad-ŋ-s  kōb-tə ūk'-ń-s-a  wuš-kōb-tə
    3PS.POSS-sibling-DEF-M  take-SS  milk-DEF-M-ACC  untie-take-SS
    yí = k’yáá̱z-yèg-ŋ
    3PS = leave-come-DS
    ‘...took her brother, unknotted and took the milk, and she left,...’

If a serial verb construction contains more than two verbs, the third (last) verb is most often an aspectual verb. In the majority of cases, that verb is *ki* ‘exist’ indicating Imperfective (continuous) aspect (32). Perfective *ké* ‘remain’ is also attested;
otherwise it is one of the aspectual verbs mentioned here, such as bar ‘throw away’ (33) or in ‘go’ in example (30) above.

(32) \( \text{fi} = \text{wówóó-káas-kl-bàástà} \)
\( 3\text{pl} = \text{sit-play-exist-while} \)
‘while they were sitting playing’

(33) \( \text{yáb-m-s-ara gootʃ-wuʃu-bàr-à} \)
\( \text{man-DEF-M-ACC bite(snake)-kill-throw.away-DS} \)
‘he bit the man to death’

11.2.2 Other serial verb constructions
Next to the serial verb constructions whose second member contributes an aspectual value or direction, there are serial verb constructions whose members contribute equally to the semantics of the construction. The two serialised verbs can describe sequential events, as in (34)-(36).

(34) \( \text{yís-tà \ há = myású-köy-t = á \ há = káaaf-à-m-à} \)
\( \text{DIST,M-LOC 3\text{ms} = hew-bring,NV-ss = 3\text{ms} 3\text{ms} = build-put-IRR-STI} \)
‘...then he will hew and bring (the wood) and build.’

(35) \( \text{umtà \ yí = kàtsù-sàsk-àtà \ yí-gerí \ to} \)
\( \text{food 3fs = cook-arrive,CAUS-COND 3fs.POSS-head just} \)
\( \text{um-tà eat-ss} \)
‘when she cooked food and brought it out, only she herself ate and...’

(36) \( \text{yí-fèemà \ ts'yáats'ú-kòb-tà \ yí = káay-tà} \)
\( \text{3fs.POSS-clothing tie-take-ss 3fs = be.not-ss} \)
‘...ties and takes her clothes and she disappears and...’

Some frequent compounds are given in (37) and (38). In example (37) two near-synonyms refer to a single event. In (38), the standard way of asking a person who returns home is illustrated. Both are more or less fixed combinations.
(37)  tít-ság-ə  
watch-see-STI  
‘look!’

(38)  mizän-k’ä  tee-bangar = å  
Mizan-IN  go.NV-return = 2sg.Q  
‘Have you (gone and) returned from Mizan?’

Furthermore, serialised verbs may be used in describing two simultaneous events (39).

(39)  kyăñ-s  tórä  áz-k’ä  tít-h  
dog.DEF-M  downward  3MS-IN  watch-DS  
ifiant-kääs-kl-b-tä  déy-g-h  wóógú-sée-kl-h  
3PL-play-exist-REL-LOC  child.F-DEF  sit-look.NV-exist-DS  
‘The dog looked down into it (and) while they played the girl was sitting and looking;...’

In some cases, the first verb of the compound denotes manner; it indicates the way in which the activity referred to by the second verb is taking place. The order of the verbs is more or less fixed in the examples given here (40)-(43).

(40)  fyáánú göntfi  há=kəwū-k-ə  ge-tə  dòdr-yêê-tə  
frog  like  3MS = shout-REAL-STI  say-SS  run-come.NV-SS  
‘(they) said: ‘It sounds like a frog’ and came running and...’

(41)  ás-kh  kabi-tä  bæ?yêê-kl-b  iti-tä  
3MS-DAT  shoulder-LOC  carry-come.NV-exist-REL  who-COP.Q  
‘who is the one who comes carrying it on his shoulders?’

(42)  uutu  dòdr-kêês-tä  
rat  run-go.out-SS  
‘The rat came running out (of the hole) and...’

(43)  yî=zünkü  te-k-ə  ge-t=f  bôy-kôb-tä  
3fs = sheep  COP-REAL-STI  say-SS = 3fs  drive-take-SS  
‘she said “It is a sheep,” and driving it she took it and...’
11.3 Overview of subordinated clauses

This chapter describes relative clauses, adverbial clauses and complement clauses. Relative clauses are marked by -ðb, and may contain a resumptive pronoun. Among adverbial clauses, locational, temporal and reason clauses are based on relative clauses. Purpose clauses are marked by the suffix -ñ. Conditional clauses and other adverbial clauses are marked by -ñtà. Reason and purpose clauses are further marked by ñìñtà; this marker also marks the reference point in a comparative construction and the reference point in relation to a state of affairs (see section 9.2.8). Thus, all adverbial clauses end in -ñtà, except for locational and temporal clauses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>clause type</th>
<th>morphological marking</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>relative</td>
<td>-ðb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>location, time</td>
<td>-ðb + locational phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reason</td>
<td>-ðb ñìñtà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purpose</td>
<td>-ñ ñìñtà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conditional</td>
<td>-ñtà</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>complement</td>
<td>-ðb/ -ñtà</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Furthermore, complement clauses are either marked as relative clauses by -ðb, or as adverbial clauses by -ñtà if the complement clause contains a wh-word.

11.4 Relative clauses

Relative clauses are characterized by the fact that one pivot element plays a role in two clauses. Relativization is characterized as the relation between two states of affairs, in which the dependent state of affairs provides additional information about a participant (or notion) in the main state of affairs; and this modified referent is involved in the dependent situation. The relative clause contains the dependent state of affairs, modifying the head in the matrix clause. The way the relative clause and its head are related to each other forms a relative construction or strategy.

Sheko has pre- and postnominal relative clauses as well as headless and appositional relative clauses. It has two relative constructions, one in which the pivot element is coded by a
resumptive pronoun in the relative clause and one in which the coding in the relative clause is zero (gapping strategy). Interestingly, Sheko allows resumptive pronouns in prenominal relative clauses, which is claimed to be rare cross-linguistically (Keenan 1985:148f). Furthermore, Sheko uses the gapping strategy if the role of the coreferent has the function of subject or object in the relative clause, which is claimed to be uncommon for SOV-languages (Payne 1997:331). Sheko relative clauses can also function as verb complements. Adverbial clauses of location and temporality, as well as reason clauses, are built on the relative clause. Adverbial clauses are discussed in section 11.5.

Morphologically, relative clauses are coded asymmetrically with respect to modal distinctions: in relative clauses marked by -əb (and allomorphs), there is no modal marking and the clause is interpreted as referring to a realis state of affairs. In contrast, irrealis relative clauses contain the Irrealis marker -m preceding the nominalizer -baab ‘father’ (and allomorphs).

11.4.1 Form of the relative verb

Most relative clauses are marked by -əb REL for default gender, which refers to masculine and plural referents (44). This morpheme has the allomorphs -əb ~ -b. In the Sheko town variety, the vowel is dropped when the relative clause marker follows a vowel ((45), but in the Tepi variety, the -a remains (46, first line). In addition, the Tepi and Guraferda varieties have zero-marked relative clauses as well (46, second line). Investigation of these clauses is left to future research. Zero-marked relative clauses are found in other Omotic languages as well (e.g. Maale, Amha 2001:160). The relative clause is indicated by square brackets in the examples.

(44) [ãkã  ámb  ñam- ámb]  fyaanu-s-kã  ñéenf
HERE  remain-REL  frog-PL-DAT  well

ki-ft-á  ge-tá...
exist-PL-ADDR-STI  say-SS

‘(she) said ‘stay well’ to the frogs [who remained there] and...’
(45)  ꜱ searchData[14]] [nata tɔ-kɔ hā=ge-b] səm  
  snake 1SG COP-REAL-STI 3MS = say-REL remain:DS  
  ‘The snake [who said ‘it’s me’] remained behind;…’

(46)  [kār̷- refrain  kə- ēd batə ḡa-tֿu̯-ky̰-əb] səy-nə s  
  grave-DEF-[M]-DAT door on.LOC put-PASS-exist-REL stone-DEF-M  
  tepochu̯-bə-r t̿u̯-kli jī yī=see-k-ə  
  push.front-CAUS-throw.away-PASS-exist[REL] = 3FS 3FS = see.NV-REAL-STI  
  ‘…she saw [that the stone [which was put on the opening of the grave] had been pushed aside].

For feminine gender, the marking is -əbe REL:mother, with identical allomorphy (47)-(48). The second syllable of -əbe is related to bāy ~ bē ‘mother’, which occurs Irrealis relative clauses and in other parts of the grammar as a nominalizer together with bā ámb ‘father’.

(47)  tityu [nata tɔ-kɔ ge-be] səm  
  vulture 1SG COP-REAL-STI say-REL remain:DS  
  ‘The vulture [who said “It’s me,”] remained behind;…’

(48)  [gona ˈʃiː-ka ḡa-dən-tə hā=ay-əbe]  
  yesterday 3FS-WITH together-SS 3MS = dance-REL  
  bəarən-əra ha=see-kə  
  maiden.F.DEF-ACC 2SG = see-exist.[Q]  
  ‘Do you see the girl [with whom he danced yesterday]?’

The situation in Dime is strikingly similar to the one in Sheko. In Dime, adjectives and relative clauses are marked for gender by -ub for masculine and -ind for feminine, cf ind ‘mother’ and bābe ‘father’ (Mulugeta 2008:45). See also sections 5.5.5 and 5.5.6 on the use of bā ámb ‘father’ in compounds and as nominalizer in Sheko.

As mentioned above, Irrealis relative clauses are clauses with a verb form ending in the Irrealis marker -m followed by the nominalizer bā ámb ‘father’/ bē ‘mother’ (49)-(50). Apart from the modal difference, they function exactly like clauses in -əb, occurring in the same positions. More examples are provided in section 11.4.6.6 below.
(49) \[ \text{[təmər} \quad \text{iy-tə} \quad \text{tág-rí-bàbà]} \quad \text{ki = å} \]
\[ \text{education(Amh)} \quad \text{house-LOC} \quad \text{go-IRR-father} \quad \text{exist = 3MS.Q} \]
\[ \text{‘Is there [someone who will go to school]?’} \]

(50) \[ \text{[bęrn} \quad \text{t’ár-ñ-s} \quad \text{kāts-ñ-be]} \]
\[ \text{tomorrow} \quad \text{injera-DEF-M} \quad \text{cook-IRR-mother} \]
\[ \text{‘[the one (f) who will bake injera tomorrow]’} \]

Usually, the verb stem in Relative clauses is the non-velar stem (for those verbs that have it). A few relative clauses display a velar stem as in (52); in my corpus these examples concern attributive or headless relative clauses and never complement clauses. Besides, the use of velar and non-velar stems appears to be the same as in main clauses (section 10.5.1).

(51) \[ \text{[męngisti} \quad \text{yęè-b]-tà} \]
\[ \text{government(Amh)} \quad \text{come.NY-REL-LOC} \]
\[ \text{‘when the government came,...’ (Lit: at (the time) that the government came...)} \]

(52) \[ \text{[wurti} \quad \text{fūr-á-m} \quad \text{tag-áb]} \]
\[ \text{vocabulary} \quad \text{trade-put-IRR} \quad \text{go-REL} \]
\[ \text{‘[the one who went to buy language]’} \]

11.4.2 Position with regard to the head

Sheko has both pronominal and postnominal relative clauses. Internally headed relative clauses (circumnominal relative clauses) do not occur. Headless and appositional relative clauses are attested. Examples (53)-(55) feature pronominal relative clauses, while examples (56)-(57) feature postnominal relative clauses.

(53) \[ \text{hášk’ástà} \quad \text{[màndérlí-k’à} \quad \text{fij = kāás-kl-b]} \]
\[ \text{now} \quad \text{village(Amh)-IN} \quad \text{3PL = play-exist-REL} \]
\[ \text{dàws kéta} \quad \text{gójóra-ka} \quad \text{güúrú} \quad \text{fij = nón-kl-k-ə} \]
\[ \text{children all} \quad \text{Amhara-WITH} \quad \text{only} \quad \text{3PL = talk-exist-REAL-STI} \]
\[ \text{‘Now, all the children [who are playing in the neighborhood], talk only in Amharic.’} \]
(54) [zeed wɔmberà áz-k’à kl-b] mɛkínl-ka
eight chair(Amh) 3MS-IN exist-rel car-with

á = tee-k-ə
1PL = go-nv-real-sti
‘We went with a car [which had eight seats].’

(55) yok’à [ak à sàm-àb] fyáánú-s-kh
INTJ here-DAT remain-rel frog-pl-dat

3ééh’ kí-ft-ə ge-țə
well exist-pl.addr-sti say-ss
‘Well, they said goodbye to the frogs [who remained there] and…”

(56) yf = kí-bàastà kafà [ayk’à ás-kh]
3FS = exist-while bird up.in 3MS-DAT

but[śi-kà kl-b] ñf-əra k’yəaf = á-k
nest-with exist-rel 3FS-ACC kick = 3MS-REAL
‘While she was there, a bird [who had its nest up there] kicked her.’

(57) áz ísñ [hayk’à zíttú-kl-b]-is-k’à
3MS beehive up.in hang-exist-rel-dist-m-in

hayk’à këès-țə tit = á-k
up.in go.out-swatch = 3MS-REAL
‘He jumped up at this beehive [which was hanging up there] and watched it.’

More research is needed on which factors are relevant to the choice between pre- or postnominal relative clauses. It is likely that the status of the referent in the discourse plays a role and/or backgrounding of the relative clause.

Sheko also uses headless relative clauses, as in the examples below.

(58) baaf-tə [há = baaf-əb]-ara há-gari
slaughter-ss 3MS = slaughter-rel-acc 3MS.Poss-head

woots’u-tə
bite-ss
‘…he slaughtered it and tasted himself [what he had slaughtered]…’
(59) \[ \text{é-ká} \quad \text{[egita ge-t'-ab]-is-ta} \quad \text{m-baab} \]
\begin{align*}
\text{over.there-LCT} & \quad \text{Egita} & \quad \text{say-PASS-REL-DIST-LOC} & \quad \text{1PL.POSS-father} \\
\text{níʔaku} & \quad \text{kees-yee-k’e-k} & \quad \text{1PL.POSS-grandfather} & \quad \text{go.out-come.NV-remain-REAL} \\
\end{align*}

‘From there, from that (place) [called Egita] our fathers and grandparents came.’

In the preceding examples (58)-(59), the case marker is used only once after the whole relative construction, which strengthens the claim that the relative clause modifies the head and is part of the NP like any ordinary modifier. In examples (60) and (61), however, the case marker is repeated after the head and after the relative clause. This is a reason to think that the structure is different, namely an appositional relative clause.

(60) \[ \text{há-burə} \quad \text{yab-m-s-ka} \quad \text{[gaazn gè-t'-ùb]-ka} \]
\begin{align*}
\text{3MS.POSS-servant} & \quad \text{man-DEF-M-WITH} & \quad \text{Gaazn} & \quad \text{say-PASS-REL-WITH} \\
\text{daan-tə} & \quad \text{há = yèg-ni} & \quad \text{be.together-SS} & \quad \text{3MS = come-DS} \\
\end{align*}

‘...he came together with his servant, with [the one who was called Gaazn]’

(61) \[ \text{yí-yirsi} \quad \text{bàrù-t = í} \quad \text{yí = gābā-’kà} \]
\begin{align*}
\text{3FS.POSS-things} & \quad \text{abandon-SS = 3FS} & \quad \text{3FS = market-IN} \\
\text{[yí = yèg-ùb]-kà} & \quad \text{ás-k’à} & \quad \text{nata-ka} & \quad \text{daan} \\
\text{3FS = come-REL-IN} & \quad \text{3MS-IN} & \quad \text{1SG-WITH} & \quad \text{together} \\
\text{màkínì-ka} & \quad \text{?yàrdù-tə} & \quad \text{car-IN} & \quad \text{enter-SS} \\
\end{align*}

‘...she left her things and at the market, at [where she came], she entered a car at it together with me...’

11.4.3 Accessibility hierarchy and relativizing strategies

In order to generalize on the arguments which undergo relativization, Keenan and Comrie (1977) proposed the Accessibility Hierarchy. This hierarchy states which arguments are accessible for relativization. The hierarchy runs from most relativizable to least relativizable: subject > direct object > indirect object > oblique > genitive > object of comparison.
It is an implicational hierarchy, i.e. when a language is able to relativize for instance an Oblique, it will always be able to relativize Subject, Direct Object and Indirect Object as well. A relativizing strategy must apply to a continuous segment of the Accessibility Hierarchy.

Looking through a corpus of spontaneous Sheko texts, the majority of the relativised heads is subject, followed at a distance by object, oblique and indirect object. This confirms to the greater accessibility of subjects predicted by the hierarchy.

In general, the grammatical function of the relativised argument within the RC is not easily recoverable if the argument is missing in the relative clause. This case-recoverability problem is crucial to the syntactic typology of relative constructions (Givón 1990). The lower the argument in the relative clause is positioned on the Accessibility Hierarchy, the more likely it will be expressed through a personal pronoun.

Sheko uses two relativizing strategies, namely the gap strategy and the pronoun retention strategy. In the gap strategy, the coreferent of the head in the relative clause is zero (i.e. a ‘gap’). Use of the gap strategy is said to be uncommon in SOV-languages (Payne 1997:331)\(^{\text{a}}\). In the pronoun retention strategy, the coreferent is expressed by a resumptive pronoun in the relative clause. This strategy is also known as the anaphoric pronoun strategy. The pronoun is the same as the personal pronoun used in declarative main clauses and it is case-marked according to its role in the relative clause. The gap strategy is mainly used for subjects and objects, while the anaphoric pronoun strategy is preferred for constituents lower on the Hierarchy.

11.4.4 Gap strategy and anaphoric pronoun strategy
In Sheko, referents which are subjects in the relative clause almost always use the gap strategy, e.g. (62). However, there are cases in which a subject clitic is present in subject relative

---

\(^{\text{a}}\) Cf. Rapold (2006:752). Benchnon is also SOV and uses the gap strategy as well as the anaphoric pronoun strategy.
clauses. An example is given in (63). In adverbial clauses built on the relative, subject clitics are common.

(62) bëndû [ji-kù 3a3-âb] kôdkh-k’â
Bëndû 3PL-DAT be.good-REL place-IN
îf = ki-m-ô
3PL = exist-IRR-STI
‘The Bondu live at a place [which is convenient for them].’

(63) há = t’kôf-âb-yîs karâ-khô bô-k’â há = gâb-mô
3MS = drip-REL-DIST.M leaf-DAT belly-IN 3MS = collect-DS
‘that which drips collects in the leaves;…’

Referents which are objects within the relative clause may (64)-(65) or may not (66)-(67) be referred to with a resumptive pronoun. Impressionistically, the number of resumptive pronouns for objects is very low in texts. Thus, it can be said that for objects the gapping strategy is preferred.

(64) ìntfû gyânû bo-k’â há = kâät’-á-m
wood coffee belly-IN 3MS = hoe-put-IRR
wöyîm [nâârû ás kyâts-âb]
or(Amh) wind 3MS fell-REL
‘He will cut a tree in the coffee (forest) or [one which the wind threw down]’

(65) [n-nunu fi-âra fûûr-âr = á-ki-be]
1SG.POSS-elder.brother 3PS-ACC buy-NEG = 3MS-exist-REL.mother
Ôti jàpkh-be ta-k-ô
cow thin.F.DEF-REL.mother COP-REAL-STI
‘The cow [my brother didn’t buy] is thin.’

(66) [ùtt-kà nî = bâzhû-ki-b] bâzhà
love-WITH 1PL = work-exist-REL work
?yâát-â-s-ôb há = sâsk-â-m-ô
big.DEF-M.REL 3MS = arrive.CAUS-put-IRR-STI
‘He will give good results on work [that we do with love].’
(67) \( n = \text{[if-kàh mààk-ùb]} \) tòsà yìs tə-kə
1SG = 3FS-DAT tell-REL story DIST.M COP = REAL-sti

‘The story [I told to her] is this.’

For Indirect Objects, probably a resumptive pronoun is preferred, as in (68). For an additional textual example, see (79) below.

(68) \( [sāāy-ù-s \ ás-kà mààk-ùb] \) dàd-ù-s
fable-DEF-M 3MS-DAT tell-PASS-REL child-DEF-M
‘the boy [to whom the story was told]’

For those referents with an Oblique role in the relative clause, a resumptive pronoun is preferred.

(69) tçois \( f' = \text{k'yar-àb-ìs} \) [ás-ka]
tree.sp 3PL = beat-REL-DIST.M 3MS-WITH

\( f' = \text{kàf-t-ùt} = f' \) dèb-t'-àb]
3PL = build-PASS-SS = 3PL bury-PASS-REL

‘this (bark of) tconsin tree which they beat (was) [what they would be arrayed with and be buried in].’ (one RC marked)

(70) [wurti \( \text{às-tà fùr-t'-ù-bààb} \)] gàbà
vocabulary 3MS-LOC trade-PASS-IRR-father market

hà = kl-b-má kááy = á kl-ñtá
3MS = exist-REL-or be.not = 3MS exist-COND

‘whether or not a market exists [where language can be bought]’

Sentences (71) and (72) were elicited on various occasions with mixed result, i.e. both with and without resumptive pronoun:

(71) \( \text{[hàày (ás-ka) ha = tììr-kl-b]} \)
water 3MS-WITH 2SG = fetch-exist-REL

djèrikàñ-s-øra \( n = ?àr(f')-ùs-bàrù-kə\)
jerrycan.DEF-M-ACC 1SG = crack-CAUS-throw.away-REAL-sti

‘I damaged the jerrycan [with which you fetch water].’

(72) \( \text{[umt'à (ás-ka) yì = kàts-øb] ?yàana jàn = á-kə} \)
food 3MS-WITH 3FS = cook-REL pot break = 3MS-REAL-sti

‘The pot [with which she cooked] is broken.’
If the relationship between the head and its coreferent in the relative clause is genitival, a possessive pronoun is used.

(73)  [[[fi]-dâd-â-s  šub-âb]  yaab  dûzû  to-k-o]
    3PL.POSS-child-DEF-M  die-REL  man  Bench  COP-REAL-STI

‘The people [whose child died] are Bench.’

(74)  [[yî-nâsà  šub-âbe]]
    3S.POSS-husband die-REL,mother

‘widow (one [whose husband died])’

It has been claimed that the pronoun retention strategy is common in postnominal relative clauses but rare in prenominal relative clauses (Keenan 1985:148-49). This is because the preferred order in anaphoric situations is antecedent noun before anaphoric pronoun (Givón 1990:655). In the literature, Mandarin Chinese is commonly cited as the only documented language which does employ this strategy in prenominal clauses, even for higher positions on the Hierarchy. However, Nama (Khoisan) must be added as counter-example (Hagman 1977:125); as well as Shipibo-Konibo (Panoan, spoken in Peru), which even allows this strategy for Agents (Valenzuela 2002:59); resumptive pronouns in prenominal relative clauses are also reported for Benchnon, although not for subjects:

(75)  [[tâ  yî  dèk-ñ-ûç]  nás-i  nēk-âç]
    1S,NOM  3ms  hitting-R,MID-M  man-NOM,m  up.deic-THIS.M
    hân-k'-î  yîsk-û.
    go-3S-m  be.located.PRES-M

‘The man [I hit] is walking over there.’ (cited from Rapold (2006:573))

As can be seen from e.g. examples (68) and (70)-(72), Sheko also uses resumptive pronouns in prenominal relative clauses. To illustrate and strengthen the point that resumptive pronouns occur in prenominal clauses as well as in post-nominal or headless ones, the examples below are all taken from texts. In texts, objects (almost) never get a resumptive pronoun, the rare examples with indirect objects do, and obliques (almost) always get a resumptive pronoun. The relative clause may be
prenominal (76)-(78), post-nominal (79) or headless (80). Example (80) contains an Irrealis clause.

(76) \[\text{utṣa} \quad \text{āz-tā} \quad \text{ky-āb} \quad \text{kārkā-k’a} \]
badger 3MS-LOC exist-REL forest-IN

‘in a forest [in which a badger lives]’

(77) \[\text{yesus} \quad \text{ās-ka} \quad \text{ṭṣ’yəstū-tē-b} \quad \text{jem-s-ka} \]
Jesus 3MS-WITH tie.PASS-go.NV-REL clothes.DEF-M-COOR

‘the cloth [in which Jesus was tied] and...’

(78) \[\text{kūuŋ-n-ʃ} \quad \text{ās-ka} \quad \text{yēē-ki-b} \]
sickness-DEF-M 3MS-WITH come.NV-exist-REL

‘also the way [in which the sickness comes]’

(79) \[\text{edis} \quad \text{ge-t’-ās} \quad \text{kūuŋ} \quad \text{ṭf’àārũ} \quad \text{ās-ḵ} \]
aids say-PASS-? sickness medicine 3MS-DAT

‘There is a sickness called AIDS [for which there is no medicine].’

(80) \[\text{ḥā} = \text{gīš-kōb-ʃ-m} \quad \text{ḥā} = \text{yāb-īn-s} \quad \text{ās-ka} \]
3MS = pull-take-DS 3MS = man-DEF-M 3MS-WITH

‘he pulled it away; (the thing) [with which the man could descend] was not there;...’

Example (81) below has no resumptive pronoun, although the coreferent is Instrument in the relative clause.

(81) \[\text{sūk-ʃ-n-s} \quad [\text{is-n-s-ārā} \quad \text{ha} = \text{ṭṣ’yaats’-āb}] \]
rope-DEF-M beehive-DEF-M-ACC 2SG = tie-REL

‘If this rope [with which you tie the beehive] happens to be old,...’
In summary, only the highest position on the Accessibility Hierarchy, that of Subject, cannot be expressed by a resumptive pronoun. In relative clauses in which the coreferent occupies an Object, i.e. second position on the Accessibility Hierarchy, a resumptive pronoun is optional. In relative clauses in which the referent has an Oblique position, a resumptive pronoun is preferred. In those with Genitive coreferents, a resumptive (possessive) pronoun is obligatory. (Benchmark and Chinese display the same tendency, moving down the Hierarchy from optional to more obligatory.) The resumptive pronoun may occur preceding its antecedent.

### 11.4.5 Relative clauses in verb complement position

Relative clauses can also occur in verb complement position. Here the clause does not modify a head with which it is coreferential. The clause expresses a proposition which is taken as a complement by a verb. It is not clear how to distinguish these clauses from the headless relative clauses described before. One solution is to analyse them as normal relative clauses, arguing that verbs can take any relativized clause, whether or not they have a conceivable nominal head. The relativised clauses in (82)-(83) obtain case marking like any Object NP. Another solution is to analyse -âb ~ -äb as having a nominalizing function next to a relativizing function.

(82) [áz kōmtū há=fādt-âb]-ara yí=t’ūús-k-ə
    3MS king 3MS = become-REL-ACC 3FS = know-REAL-STI

    ‘She knew [he was a king].’

(83) [únà firi=?̂angūt-âb k’wànk’wà]
    long.ago 3PL = increase-REL language(Amh)

    firi=[jey-âb]-ara na-ŋ āng=ā sis-tù-kl-k
    3PL = forget-REL-ACC 1SG-DAT much = 3MS hear-PASS-exist-REAL²⁷

    ‘I feel very sorry [that they forget the language in which they grew up in the past].’ (only one RC marked)

---
²⁷ The use of sis-t hear-PASS for ‘feel emotion’ comes from Amharic, cf. yissämmañal.
11.4.6 Irrealis relative clauses

To complete the description of relative clauses in Sheko, some examples are given to illustrate the functional equivalence of Irrealis relative clauses in -(m-)bááb -IRR-father and other relative clauses in -(á)b REL, -(b)ábab ‘father’ has an allomorph -(b)ab. Although Irrealis relatives differ formally, they are similar structurally. They occur in the same positions as clauses in -(á)b, namely prenominal (85)-(86), postnominal (87, second line), headless (87)-(88) and they occur as object of a verb as well (89).

(85) sak-áb bëngi... [yög-m-báb] bëngi...
    arrive-REL year come-IRR-father year

‘last year... next year...’

(86) hààz tø-t-k-a [yeta-ra köb-tág-r-m-bàáb]
    PROX.M COP-REAL-IFI 2SG-ACC take-go-IRR-father

kookn
road

‘This is it, the road [which will take you (there)].’

(87) [fû-garî] [fû = bâgu-sâsk-áb tø-h]
    3PL.POSS-head 3PL = work-arrive.CAUS-REL COP-DS
    k’oys-n-s [ás-ka fû = déb-t’-î-bàaab] kááy
    other-DEF-M 3MS-WITH 3PL = bury-PASS-IRR-father be.not

[fû = ?ôôf-m-bàaab] kááy
    3PL = dress-IRR-father be.not

‘...it was what they produced themselves; there was no other (thing) [with which they could be buried], there was nothing [they could wear].’
(88)  [hāáy  n=ás-kā  fīd-ē-bā̀b]  n-datā
     water  1SG = 3MS-WITH fetch-IRR-father  1SG.POSS-near.LOC
     hāák’āstā  kāáy-ē
     now  be.not-STI
     ‘right now I haven’t something [with which I can fetch water].’

(89)  nata  [fī-bā̀b  noogù-ra]
     1SG  3PL.POSS-father  word-ACC
     fī = ̂yāz-ē-bā̀b]-ēra  āngā  m=bā̀s-ki-k-ē
     3PL = be.able-IRR-father-ACC  much  1SG = want-exist-REAL-STI
     ‘I want very much [that they can (speak) their father’s language].’

Furthermore, Irrealis relative clauses behave the same as Realis clauses with respect to resumptive pronouns.

(90)  [ás-tā  há=kàf-t-ē-bā̀b]  tuurù
     3MS-LOC  3MS = build-PASS-IRR-father land
     há=fikú-ñ-t-ā-m-ē
     3MS = prepare-PASS-put-IRR-STI
     ‘…the land [on which it will be built] will be prepared.’

An interesting semantic difference was disclosed when I suggested (91) for ‘they won’t know what the chief will tell’. My language consultants commented that in the situation described by (91) “you are not sure whether the chief is coming to the meeting”, and they came up with (92) instead. Thus the Irrealis relative clause is interpreted as not asserting the event of telling, whereas the Realis relative clause is used when the coming about of the event of telling is taken for granted.

(91)  bērn  tē-r=īf-ki-htā  [kōm-s
     tomorrow  go.NV-NEG = 3PL-exist-COND chief.DEF-M
     mā̀k-īn-bā̀b]-ēra  t’ūis-ēr-īf-k’y-ā-m-ō
     tell-IRR-father-ACC  know-NEG = 3PL-remain-put-IRR-STI
     ‘if they don’t go tomorrow, they won’t know [whether the chief will tell].’
(92) bērn tée-r = ffi-kë-htà [kōm-s
tomorrow go.NV-NEG = 3PL-exist-COND chief.DEF-M
màak-àb]-ara t’úús-ér-[ffi-k’y’-á-m-ə
tell-REL-ACC know-NEG = 3PL-remain-put-IRR-STI
‘If they don’t go tomorrow, they won’t know [what the chief will
tell].’

11.5 Adverbial clauses

11.5.1 Locational and temporal clauses
In many languages, relative clauses are used in forming locative and (by extension) temporal expressions. This is not surprising as most locative and temporal phrases are easily rephrased as relative clauses with a head like ‘place’ or ‘time’ (such as “the place where…”, “the time that…”).

Locational and temporal adverbial clauses in Sheko can be formed by simply employing a relative clause and case marking, as shown in (93)-(95).

(93) ffi = tag-āb-k’ā  ffi = bangar-tə  ffi = yèè-k-ə
3PL = visit-REL-IN 3PL = return-SS 3PL = come.NV-REAL-STI
‘They came back from where they had gone.’

(94) šāād-k’ā  n = kōb-tee-b-tà  yì = kinderkonder
pond-IN 1SG = take-go.NV-REL-LOC 3FS = IDEO
ge-t = ɨ  yì = wētu-šub-m  n = baaf-k
say-SS = 3FS 3FS = fall-die-DS 1SG = slaughter-REAL
‘When I took (the cow) to the pond, she fell ill and died; I slaughtered her.’ (line from a well-known story)

(95) 3aa3 = á-k-ə  há = ge-b-tà  ffi = tee-tə
be.good = 3MS-REAL-STI 3MS = say-REL-LOC 3PL = go.NV-SS
‘when he said: “OK”, they went and…’

This basic construction can be expanded with other nominal material. Some temporal adverbial clauses add a proximal demonstrative between the relative clause marker and case marker, as the following examples (96)-(97) illustrate. They denote simultaneity of events and/or typically function as
clauses which give the setting for storyline events. (The sequence -b-às-tà ~ -b-às-tà REL-PROX.M-LOC is glossed while wherever the morphological make-up of it is not relevant to the discussion, as in (97).)

(96) umt’à-ra sàskú-t-ífl
food-ACC arrive.CAUS-ss = 3PL
bëskú-kl-b-às-tà uh-t-ífl ék-àkñ
divide-exist-REL-PROX.M-LOC food.DEF-M = 3PL there.LOC-here
úkúrí bëskú-kl-b-às-tà úftà
equal(Amh) divide-exist-REL-PROX.M-LOC down.LOC
túúrù bàtà há=sàmu-k-ò
land on.LOC 3MS = remain-REAL-STI
‘...while they brought out the food and were dividing it, dividing the food here and there in equal parts, (the last bit) remained on the ground.’

(97) ífl = òum-kl-bàastà dàd-í-s k’ay-tò
3PL = eat-exist-WHILE child-DEF-M rise-ss
‘when they had been eating, the boy rose and...’

The sentences below refer to a location by a locational noun phrase following a noun or demonstrative. The noun or demonstrative is followed by the dative marker -kñ and a locational noun phrase with case marking: sáántà, from san ‘forehead’ and locative case -tà ‘to, near’ in (98), and k’ànkn’à ‘under, at the bottom’ with inessive -kà ‘in, at’ in (99). Compare these phrases with the temporal adverbial clauses in (100)-(101).

(98) kyàñú întflú-kñ sáántà há=sòk’ù-kl-k-ò
dog wood-DAT front.LOC 3MS = sleep-exist-REAL-STI
‘The dog is sleeping in front of the tree.’

(99) hàaz-kñ k’ànkn’à òft-àb óóft’á-kñ
PROX.M-DAT under.IN ask.PASS-REL question-DAT
bàngàrsì ats-ít-ò
answer give-PL.ADDR-STI
‘Give answer to the questions which are asked below’
Sequential temporal adverbia!al clauses are formed with locative phrases too (100)-(101). These clauses contain a relativised verb form (ending in ₃₃ – ₃₃), followed by dative case marking and a locational noun phrase. These temporal clauses denote a sequence of events.

(100) \( \text{fí|ts'ya|a|ts'ú} \text{t}=\text{fí|y} \quad \text{t'ôr-f} \text{-₃₃-k₃} \quad \text{ādī-k'₃} \)

\( \underline{3pλ=\text{tie-ss}=\text{3pλ}} \quad \underline{\text{finish-CAUS-REL-DAT}} \quad \underline{\text{footprint-IN}} \)

\( \text{p'ēe} \text{t₃} \quad \text{bùu|ts'ú-t₃} \)

thatch mow-ss

‘...after they finish tying it, they cut the thatch and...’

(101) \( \text{ñ=ts'ôk-₃₃-k₃} \quad \text{sá|ñt₃} \quad \text{yērōtsi-ná-ŋ} \)

\( \underline{1pλ=\text{pray-REL-DAT}} \quad \underline{\text{front.LOC}} \quad \text{God} \quad \underline{1pλ-DAT} \)

\( \text{há=bas-₃₃-k₃-b₃} \quad \text{há=t'ū₃₃-m-o} \)

\( \underline{3ms=\text{want-CAUS-exist-REL-ACC}} \quad \underline{3ms=\text{know-put-IRR-STI}} \)

‘God knows what we need before we pray.’

The last two examples of adverial clauses expressing time contain the locative case marker -₃₃ followed by a (locational) noun. The noun gātsu ‘start’ in (102) is related to the verb gad ‘start, begin’. Especially (103) is an interesting example of how physical location is extended to temporal location. When referring to location, the inessive and locative cases can both be suffixed after wō, but to refer to time only wō-₃₃ down.there-LOC is used. Locational nouns are further discussed in section 7.1.3 and case marking in section 9.2.

(102) \( \text{fí|yê|ê-b₃} \quad \text{gātsu} \quad \text{ú₃} \quad \text{yā₃-b}_{₃₃} \quad \text{K₃} \)

\( \underline{3pλ=\text{come.NV-REL-LOC}} \quad \text{start} \quad \text{long.ago man} \quad \text{exist-3MS.Q} \)

‘Were there people long ago, before they came?’

(103) \( \text{wō-₃} \quad \text{ādī-k₃} \quad \text{n=ye|ê-m-o} \)

\( \underline{\text{down.there-LOC}} \quad \underline{\text{footprint-IN}} \quad \underline{1sg=\text{come.NV-IRR-STI}} \)

‘I will come later.’ (said when there is no fixed appointment)

Incidentally, comparison clauses in Sheko can be expressed with such locational phrases too (104). The body part noun is gār ‘head’ followed by the locative case marker -₃₃, giving the sense of ‘above, greater than’.
11.5.2 Reason clauses

In Sheko, not only locative and temporal adverbial clauses but also reason clauses are made with help of the relative. Reason clauses add ѐfhtã after the relative. Examples are given in (105)-(107). Reason clauses have the element ѐfhtã in common with purpose clauses. The morphological make-up of ѐfhtã is discussed in section 9.2.8.

(105) fáádu ḟš-ara há-=fád-ús-áb ѐfhtã
    hunger 3FS-ACC 3MS = hunger-CAUS-REL MOTIVE
    fí yi= ge-ǹ
    IDEO 3FS = say-DS

‘because she (= the calf) was hungry she mooed;’

(106) góórã dåd-ǹ-s há-bààb batà há-=k’ud-áb
    Amhara child-DEF-M 3MS-POSS-father on-LOC 3MS = COVER-REL
    ѐfhtã ás-ara há-=?èèb-ùs-t-t=á há= wòòm-k
    MOTIVE 3MS-ACC 3MS = bless-CAUS-SS = 3MS 3MS = bless-REAL

‘Because the Amhara boy had covered his father, he blessed him.’

(107) ðub =á-k-a ðñ = ge-b-tà ụsùn-k’ à kí-b
    die = 3MS-REAL-STI 1SG = SAY-REL-LOC life-IN exist-REL
    ѐfhtã ás-k’ ụsùn k’èb noogù án-ñ-bààb-ìs
    MOTIVE 3MS-DAT good-REL thing put-IRR-father-DIST.M
    bàs-ùs-kí-b tò-k-à
    want-CAUS-exist-REL  COP-REAL-STI

‘It is fitting to arrange good things for him, because he is alive while I thought he was dead.’

In (108) a relative clause is used to denote manner. Unfortunately I have just one example. Since manner clauses
are usually subsumed under subordinate clauses, the example has got its place here, at the end of the sections on subordinate clauses using relatives.

(108) há-bāgā bàgu-tù-kl-b köysēs tə-kə
  3MS.POSS-work work-PASS-exist-REL other.DEF.M COP-REAL-STI

‘His way of working is different.’

11.5.3 Purposive clauses
Purposive clauses are marked by the morpheme -ŋ followed by ēṣhtā, as is illustrated in (109)-(111). The tone on -ŋ is always identical to the preceding one (level 3 or 4). It is not clear whether to view -ŋ as purposive clause marker or to attribute a nominalizing function to it, in view of the additional marking by ēṣhtā. The latter also marks point of reference (section 9.2.8) and occurs in reason clauses (section 11.5.2 above).

(109) ʾn=sē-s-ŋ  ēṣhtā ʾn=təg-ə
  1PL=see, NV-CAUS-PURP MOTIVE 1PL=go-STI

‘Let’s go in order for me to show it.’

(110) yī-bēngi-ra yī-nāṣa-k
  3FS.POSS-year-ACC 3FS.POSS-husband-WITH

yī=daan-ə yī=tʃər-ʃ-ŋ ēṣhtā
  3FS=be.together-SS 3FS=finish-CAUS-PURP MOTIVE

yī-dādū-ka yī=daan-ə yī=ki-ŋ
  3FS.POSS-child-WITH 3FS=be.together-SS

ēṣhtā yīs gayd-n-s saw-b-tə kaari
  MOTIVE DIST.M problem-DEF-M arrive.NV-REL-LOC until

sānta yīs kōsū-ra itə māik-o
  front.LOC DIST.M divination-ACC who:COP tell-STL.ADDR

‘When this problem occurs, who will tell this practice in the future so that she will finish her years together with her husband and so that she will live together with her children?’
Purpose can also be expressed differently, without any of the above-mentioned marking. In (112) and (113), an Irrealis clause is followed by another verb form. This type of purpose clause is only used when the subject of the purpose clause and matrix clause is the same. This construction is problematic to analyse as it blurs the distinction between final verbs and non-final verbs.

(112) há=gABA-k’a fuur-a-m saw-tə
3MS = market-IN trade-put-IRR arrive.NV-SS
‘he arrived at the market to buy it and...’

(113) ás sée-m-t=tí yèè-b-tà àz
3MS see.NV-IRR-SS/COP = 3FS come.NV-REL-LOC 3MS
sub-t=tá kl-h
die-SS = 3MS exist-DS
‘when she came to watch him, he was dead;...’

The rest of section 11.5 gives an overview of adverbial clauses marked by -ňtà, most of which are conditional. Next to conditional clauses and concessive clauses, the morpheme -ňtà also marks clauses with a temporal interpretation and verb complements with a wh-word.

11.5.4 Conditional and temporal clauses
For each kind of condition, the protasis or ‘if-clause’ is marked with -ňtà. Some examples are given in (114)-(116). An example of a counterfactual condition is given in (117).
(114) ĩf- ámb  kaatsa  kááy  kĩ-ntà
    3PL-DAT  help  be.not  exist-COND

    kĩ-r=ĩf- ámb-á-m-ɒ
    exist-NEG = 3PL-remain-put-IRR-STI

    ‘If there is no help for them, they won’t stay.’

(115)  bäärá  yí= barbám-t=f  yááb  if-ër
    maiden  3FS = become.woman-SS = 3FS  man  3FS-ACC

    bōys-á-m  yëg-ntà  nyäkù  bútà
    give.dowry-put-IRR  come-COND  young.man  outside

    bôôz-ntà= ee  gyäbt’á  sää-r=ĩf- ámb-á-m
    stroll-COND-STI  front.yard  arrive.NV-NEG = 3FS-remain-put-IRR

    ‘if a girl became woman and someone came to wed her, if young
    men walked outside, she didn’t come to the front yard.’

(116)  k’ôrk’ôrd  kĩ-ntà  k’ôrk’ôrd
    corrugated.iron(Amh)  exist-COND  corrugated.iron(Amh)

    ha=kôb-téé-tó
    2SG = take-go.NV-SS

    ‘if sheets of corrugated iron are available, you bring the sheets
    and...’

(117)  sàámtint  t’àagñ  n= hááy-m-báb
    week(Amh)  two  1PL = spend.night-IRR-father

    n=t’ùus-ntà  baqì  kóta  n=kóygì-m-kl-b  tän
    1SG = know-COND  work  little  1SG = bring-IRR-exist-REL  RESULT

    ‘If I had known that we would stay two weeks, I would have brought
    a little bit of work with me.’

Clauses marked with -ntà may have a temporal rather than a
conditional interpretation (118)-(120). This is not surprising as
there is some overlap between the two, i.e. it can take some
time before the condition is fulfilled. In any case, the situation
described in the apodosis normally follows upon and is
dependent upon the situation described in the antecedent.
(118) yok'á alary-t=ô  kūm hāy-tə zērkə
INTJ  3PL = spend.night-ss  = 3PL  four spend.night-ss time

tfôr-f-ntə bangar-t=ô koynâb-kə ëez
finish-CAUS-COND return-ss = 3PL Koynâb-DAT honey

kôb-tə
take-ss

'well, they spent the night and passed four nights and when they finished the time they returned and brought honey for the Koynab and ...'

(119) jëti batâ yî=zut-ntə hây batâ zû-ará
stone  on.LOC  3FS = trample-COND water on.LOC trample-NEG

'When she stepped on the stones, she didn't step in the water.'

(120) ântû hâ=kâ-t-å-m=ô  há=kâ-t-ntə
wood  3MS=hoe.PASS-PUT-IRR-STI.CONT  3MS=hoe.PASS-COND

hâ=fâkû-s-tû-tə há-göm-t-å-m-ə
3MS=split-PASS-SS  3MS=pile-PASS-PUT-IRR-STI

'...wood is cut; when it is cut, it is split and stacked.'

11.5.5 Concessive clauses

Concessive clauses also take the morpheme -ntə, but in addition have the inclusive marker k'arâ (~ k'arâ ~ k'eenə) 'also, even'. This word usually occurs preceding the verb (121)-(123).

(121) ...?yants' á k'õh=á há=yōwkm' sîs-ntə
bee  noise = 3MS  3MS = INTJ listen-COND

zaâk' h'een=á kî-ntə kēs-tə
noon  INCL = 3MS exist-COND go.out-ss

'if he hears the noise of bees, even if it is noon, he climbs up and...'

(122) yîr-k'arâ há=ōd-tîntə nə=ôtfî-å-m-ə
what-INCL  3MS = become-COND  1SG = ask-put-IRR-STI

'I will ask whatever it is (even anything).'
There may be intervening matering between k'era and the verb (124). A reason for this could be that it preferably attaches to a noun. In addition, k'era appears following the verb in one or two cases (125).

(124)  jēqui-k'era  ās-k'ā  ha = jīlim-ūtā
        stone-incl  3ms-in  2sg = add-COND
ārtūn-ūr = ā-k'y-ā-m-ō
tear-NEG = 3ms-remain-put-IRR-STI

‘Even if you add a stone in it, it will not break.’

(125)  ās-kh  āṣū  jan-s-ōb  há-fōd-ūtā  k'era
        3ms-dat  leg  break.def-rel  3ms-become-cond  incl

‘even though his leg was broken,...’

11.5.6   Verb complements

Conditional clause marking (-ūtā) is found on verb complement clauses when the clause contains a wh-word.

(126)  gebān-ta  há = ki-ūtā  t'ūs-ūr = a-ki
        how.much-cop  3ms = exist-cond  know-NEG = 2sg-exist[q]

‘Don’t you know how much it is?’

Compare the following pairs of sentences. In the (a)-examples, the complement clause contains a question word and the clause is marked by -ūtā as a conditional clause. In the (b)-examples, the complement clause states a fact, there is no question word and the clause is marked by -āb as a relative clause.

(127)  a.  nā-ta  sī = tēg-ūtā  t'ūs-ēp-ki-k-ō
        where-cop  3pl = go-cond
        know-NEG.1sg-exist-REAL-STI

‘I didn’t know where it was they went.’
b. bōytå $\text{if} = \text{tee-b-àra}$  
$t'úús-éŋ-kl-k-ə$

Boyta  
3PL = go.NV-REL-ACC  
know-NEG.1SG-exist-REAL-STI

‘I didn’t know that they had gone to Boyta.’

(128) a. íti $\text{ta-ñtå}$  
$sag = \text{fit}$

who  
COP-COND  
see = 2PL.Q

‘Have you seen who it is?’

b. $\text{ha} = \text{kùf-àb-a}$  
$síí-s-en-kl-k-ə$

2SG = be.sick-REL-ACC  
hear-NEG.1SG-exist-REAL-STI

‘I didn’t hear that you were ill.’

(129) a. bóóz-yaab-ù-s gëbën  
$\text{if} = \text{kl-ntå}$

stroll-man-m-pl  
how.much  
3PL = exist-COND

$t'úús-ář = a-kl$

know-NEG = 2SG-exist[q]

‘Don’t you know how many guests there are?’

b. bóóz-ýaab-ù-s p'úcä  
$\text{if} = \text{foót-àb-àra}$

stroll-man-m-pl  
many.ELAT  
3PL = become-REL-ACC

$t'úús-ář-a-kl$

know-NEG = 2SG-exist[q]

‘Don’t you know that there are very many guests?’

Finally, a complement position may also be invested by the Irrealis counterpart of a relative clause (130). This complement is functionally equivalent to a pair of two subordinate clauses such as in (131). The latter construction is similar to Amharic (bíhonîm bayhönîm).

(130) bëmm  
tëé-r = if'l-kl-ntå  
køm-s

tomorrow  
go.NV-NEG = 3PL-exist-COND  
chief.DEF-M

$máakk-ìm-bàb-àra$  
$t'úús-ář = if'l-k'y-á-m-ə$

tell-IRR-father-ACC  
know-NEG = 3PL-remain-put-IRR-STI

‘If they don’t go tomorrow, they won’t know whether the chief will tell it.’ ( = example (91))
11.6 Conjunctions

This section deals with the following conjunctions:

(132)  
-ka ‘and’ coordinate
-k’arà ‘also, even’ inclusive
-ná ‘or’ alternative
tana ‘hence, so, then’ resultative
gfn ‘but’ (<Amh.) adversative
wöyrh ‘or’ (<Amh.) alternative

11.6.1 Coordinative

The coordinative conjunction coordinates noun phrases (133)-(134). -ka is suffixed to each coordinate. Next to its coordinating function, -ka also marks Instrumental and Comitative roles; see examples (135)-(136) and section 9.2.6. -ka does not coordinate clauses, as clauses are typically linked through verbal marking such as present in the switch reference system.

(133) bårkåy-ka ziìnà-ka t’äägñ-báb ?iś = ki-n
monkey-ČOOR leopard-ČOOR two-father 3PL = exist-DS

‘A monkey and a leopard lived together,...’

(134) tåmú-ka t’äägñ-ka ets’n bëngi
ten-ČOOR two-ČOOR moon year
hå = fådù- t’ù-kl-κ-ə
3MS = count-PASS-exist-REAL-STI

‘A year counts twelve months.’

(135) náta àås-tà n-dådù-κa n = ki-m-ə
1SG PROX-M-LOC 1SG.POSS-child-WITH 1SG = exist-IRR-STI

‘I will stay here with my children.’
(136) **ffl = tee**  
**bék’ñ-ka**  
**tš’ad-tø**  
3PL = go.NV  
**spear-WITH**  
**pierce-SS**  

**ffl = zilp’ñ-k-ø**  
3PL = chase.away-REAL-STM

‘...they came and stabbed him with a spear and chased him away’

The adverb **kayeestà** ‘again’ (short form: **kày**) probably consists of the coordinative **ka** followed by a demonstrative and the locative case marker -tø.

(137) **k’øy**  
**kob-yëe-tø**  
**kayeestà**  
**ústà**  
**án-tø**  
one  
take-come.NV-SS  
again  
down.LOC  
put-SS

**kày**  
**këës-tø**  
**kày**  
**fáafà**  
**k’øy**  
**kob-yëe-tø**  
again  
go.out-SS  
again  
honeycomb  
one  
take-come.NV-SS

‘...brings one and again puts it on the ground, and again climbs up and again brings one comb, ...’

11.6.2 Inclusive

The inclusive conjunction is **-k’arà ~ k’arà** ‘also, even’ (Tepi var. **k’eenà**). Some examples are given in (138)-(139). The inclusive conjunction is also found in concessive clauses in combination with conditional marking (140).

(138) **dëyg-n-k’arà**  
**däd-n-s-k’arà**  
**tâmàar**  
**iy-tà**  
child.F-DEF-INCL  
child-DEF-M-INCL  
education(Amb)  
house-LOC

**ffl = nôn-kl-k-ø**  
3PL = talk-exist-REAL-STM

‘The girls and boys are talking at school.’

(139) **ffl-k’eenà**  
**ffl = dâr-s-ûs-h-t = ffî**  
**tóórà**  
3PL-INCL  
3PL = run-CAUS-CAUS-MID-SS = 3PL  
downward

**kàährú-k’à**  
**tee-k-ø**  
grave-IN  
**go.NV-REAL-STM**

‘They also ran and ran and they went down to the grave.’
(140) **há-?ékt-k'ărā**  **há = kā:jūf-t = á**  **há = kaay-ňtā**  
3MS = POSS-Money-INCL   3MS = harvest-ss  3MS = be_not-COND  
**há-dèd-h-s-ărā**  **há = ?ōy-ār = s-kł-k-ō**  
3MS = POSS-child-DEF-M-ACC  3MS = refuse-NEG  3MS = exist-REAL-STI  
‘Even though his son collected his money and disappeared, he didn’t refuse him.’

The inclusive conjunction has a short form -ărā which is formally similar to the accusative case marker (see section 9.2.2). Some speakers use this conjunction very liberally, especially, it seems, in church contexts. In (142), it occurs on the adverbial expression **háák'ãstā** ‘now’, twice on **ēštā** and even once on a subject NP, and there is one regular occurrence of the accusative. Most speakers do not think that this liberal use constitutes ‘good’ Sheko. The occurrence of -ra on the subject NP is considered downright wrong by the language consultants (indicated by an asterisk in the example).

(142) **háák'ãst-ărā** (…)  **āyěn-k'y-á-n**  
now-INCL  think.much-NEG.1PL-remain-put-PURP  
**lĭht-ărā** (…)  **yîz**  **ēštā-ra**  **yěrūtstî**  
MOTIVE-INCL  DIST.M  MOTIVE-INCL  God  
**mångistî-*ra**  **fāy-k'ān**  **há = fōdt- rè-ś-ărā**  
government(Amh)-INCL  life  3MS = become-REL-DIST.M-ACC  
**t'ūús-łt-ō**  
know-PL.ADDR-STI  
‘Now ... in order for us not to worry ... Therefore, know that God’s kingdom is life!’

### 11.6.3 Alternative

The alternative conjunction is -nā ‘or’. It is only used in questions (143)-(145). In giving alternatives in a non-interrogative setting, the Amharic conjunction **wōy̞m** may be employed (see section 11.6.5 below).
(143) ás-kh gatsu fyáádí-ka-náá zírkú-ka-náá étsh-ka
3MS-DAT start number-WITH-OR time-WITH-OR moon-WITH

fí = t'ús-kí yí = ge-t = f bádign oot'ú-u-k-á
3PL = know-exist[Q] 3PS = say-ss = 3PS Badign ask-REAL-STI

‘Badign asked saying “Do they know the start (of the year) by
counting or by day or by moon?”’

(144) ha-bàáb-máá emá tó
2SG.POSS-father-OR so.and.so cop.Q

‘Is it your father or so-and-so?’

(145) bátf'à-ka náá
anger-WITH or

‘In anger?’ (i.e. did they part/ did the Sheko leave in anger? Context:
reaction of one of the audience listening to the oral history on the
split-off between the Diizi and Sheko.)

üytí-ka t = fí-ýèè-k-á bátf'à-ka tó rée
love-WITH COP = 3PL-come.NV-REAL-STI anger-WITH COP-NEG-STI

‘It was with love that they came, not with anger.’ (Context: answer
to the above.)

Note that -na also connects clauses:

(146) ūūth k'yar-tó wuš = a-k-náá wúš-ár = a-kl
rat beat-SS kill = 2SG-REAL-OR kill-NEG = 2SG-EXIST.Ø

‘Did you beat and kill the rat or didn’t you?’ (Line from a
well-known saay'a 'fable'.)

11.6.4 Resultative

Sheko has the conjunction tana, whose meaning is not directly
evident. It might encode ‘result’, i.e. the situation described by
the clause in which tana occurs is presented as ensuing from
the preceding events. Examples are given in (147)-(149). The
first two examples come from texts and the third was offered in
elicitation.
(147) nata bàrù-t=á há=ʔin-thern tana
1SG throw.away-ss = 3MS 3MS = go-ds RESULT
η = tee-ki-ki-ʔo
1SG = go.nv-exist-REAL-STI
‘...he chased me away and went; hence I am going.’

(148) if = karbu-tə ifi = ʔàtù-ki-ki-ʔo
3PL = be.strong-ss 3PL = hold-exist-REAL-STI
há=k’ègù-t=á tana há=yis-ara àâtù-ki-ʔi
3MS = be.strong-ss = 3MS RESULT 3MS = DIST.M-ACC hold-exist-REAL
‘Being strong they keep (cattle). He is strong and so he keeps them.’

(149) bádigh hààs-ta yí = woogu-t=í
Badign PROX.M-LOC 3FS = sit-ss = 3FS
nòn=ti-kì-ħi tana ē = tìg-à-mi ē = gè-b-ara
talk = 3FS-exist-DS RESULT 1SG = go-put-IRR 1SG = say-REL-ACC
η = sàmù-ki-ʔi
1SG = remain-REAL-STI
‘Badign sits here and talks, so I refrained from my saying “I will go”.’

In other cases, ‘result’ (in the sense of ‘cause’) is clearly excluded; but the clause is linked as ‘subsequent’ or ‘consecutive’ to the preceding.

(150) há-dàdù-s t=á ás-ʔk’o an-t=á
3MS.POSS-child-PL COP = 3MS 3MS-IN put-ss = 3MS
á=nata-ra mààd-ʔi tana nata yááf-árá-ki
3MS = 1SG-ACC deceive-DS RESULT 1SG find-NEG-exist[0]
ge-tə
say-ss
‘ “It is his children that he put in it, deceiving me; haven’t I found it?” she said and...’
(151) **kà-kày**  **há-bátà**  **án-tɔ**  **yîs-tà**
    PLUR-again  3MS.POSS-ON.LOC  put-ss  DIST.M-LOC

**há = dyâskû-féér-t = á**  **kéťà**  **hâyk’â**  **îsîn-k’â**
    3MS = relocate-spend.day-ss = 3MS  all  up.IN  beehive-IN

**há = tʃ’or-ńtà**  **yîs-t = á**  **újîtâ**  **fîn-t = á**
    3MS = finish-COND  DIST.M-LOC = 3MS  down.LOC  descend-ss = 3MS

**yîs-tà**  **tanà**  **wóogú-t = á**  **k’êêt’-ä-ɔ**
    DIST.M-LOC  RESULT  sit-ss = 3MS  swallow-put-IRR

‘...puts it again on the other and then he spends the time relocating them and when all up at the beehive are finished then he climbs down and then he sits down and eats’

(152) **...ńtì = nyààs-ðɔ**  **āŋgû’ = á-s-ə**  **gé-ɔ**  **tana**
    2PL = give.birth-rel  grow.PASS-3MS-OPT-STI  say-ss  RESULT

**ń = titts-ń**  **įʃî = ʔin-n-ðàbò**  **tà-k-ə**
    1SG = dismiss-DS  3PL = go-IRR-father  COP-REAL-STI

‘(I bless them) saying: “... may what you birthed grow up,” and I dismiss them; they will go.’

In Wolaitta, there is a formally somewhat similar morpheme **-tenne**, which consists of a **te** copula and the suffix **-ne** which normally coordinates (pro)nouns. **-tenne** itself does not coordinate but emphasizes verbal and non-verbal predicates (Azeb 2007c:115).

### 11.6.5 Amharic conjunctions

The two conjunctions which are most often borrowed from Amharic are **gîn < gîn** ‘however, but’ and **wôyn < wäym** ‘or’. As for the first, Sheko does not have a reversing conjunction (153), therefore the use of **gîn** fills a gap. An example is given in (154).

(153) **ń = k’êdâ**  **k’ed-ń**  **ń = gišû-kês-ń**
    1SG-oath  swear-DS  1SG = pull-go.out.CAUS-DS

**há = nata-ra**  **gyá-ń**  **ge-k-ə**
    3MS = 1SG-ACC  chew-PURP?  say-REAL-STI

‘we took an oath (that he would not eat me); I pulled him out, (but) he says he is going to eat me.’
(154) ás-ka t=á fōōtō-kl-k-ə yááb
3MS-WITH COP = 3MS become-exist-REAL-STI man
ara gən k’ōysnə tə-k-ə
thought however(Amh) different COP-REAL-STI
‘It is with him that it happens. But the thoughts of men are different.’

As for the second, wōyih also feels a gap, since the Sheko conjunction ná ‘or’ is mainly used in questions, whereas wōyih is used in statements (155)-(157). Thus, wōyih complements ná. Accordingly, the Amharic interrogative wāys ‘or?’ is not attested in my data.

(155) tūrə zirkn wōyih ēfrū bəngi-k’ə
big.rains day or(Amh) rain year-IN
dōōnk’-ra ñj= gā-d-ä-m-ə
millet-ACC 3PL = start-put-IRR-STI
‘They started the millet in the time of big rains or rainy season.’ (Lit: year of rain. Context: Traditionally, a Sheko year started by planting millet, which happens around the end of May when the rainy season starts.)

(156) wōym gwāād-k’-ə yí = ky-ä-m
or(Amh) back.room(Amh)-IN 3FS = exist-put-IRR
wōym baq’-k’-ə yí = ky-ä-m
or(Amh) work-IN 3FS = exist-put-IRR
‘Either she would be in a back room or she would be at work.’

(157) ha = ?in-m-bäb ha = ?ez-ä-m wōym
2SG = go-IRR-father 2SG = be.able-put-IRR or(Amh)
haay há = ge-n’tə ha = hāsý-ä-m
spend.night 3MS = say-COND 2SG = spend.night-put-IRR
‘…you can go. Or when he says ’stay for the night’, you will stay.’
12 Verb derivation

Verb derivation includes the causative, passive and middle. All derivational markers are suffixal. The input for these derivations are verbs, and in some cases also nouns. There are some parallel morphophonological processes in the derivation of causative and passive. These include vowel shortening of the stem, L tone on the verb stem, metathesis with root-final velar consonants, and loss of ejective (glottal) feature in certain environments. Furthermore, reciprocals are derived by suffixing the middle to the causative, which is uncommon in Omotic languages.

In addition, this chapter discusses experiencer verbs, since they show interesting variation between causative and non-causative stems.

12.1 Causative

The causative derivation is productive. The formal make-up is discussed in the following section. In some verbs, metathesis takes place. Its syntactic function is to add an argument in the argument structure of a verb; it appears on transitives and intransitives. In some cases, the causative derivation makes a verb from a noun. It can appear more than once, i.e. double causatives are allowed.

12.1.1 Formal aspects of the causative

The form of the causative is -s, coupled with L tone on the verb stem and vowel shortening (if the root has a long vowel). The causative formation is partially lexically determined. It is unpredictable with which verbs metathesis between the final C of the root and the causative suffix -s takes place (1). Furthermore, it is lexically determined whether the expletive vowel\textsuperscript{36} u is present or absent (2). In the examples below, there is no difference in CV-structure of the root of the verb, but the expletive vowel is suffixed to the root in some cases but not in others.

\textsuperscript{36} Since the function of this vowel is not clear, and since it is not epenthetic, the term ‘expletive vowel’ is chosen. See also section 10.1.
(1)  
**fīk**  ‘be ready’  **fīkū-s**  ‘make ready’
**tīk**  ‘be extinguished’  **tīsk**  ‘extinguish’

(2)  
**sīr**  ‘be dented’  **sīrū-s**  ‘dent’
**sār**  ‘be hot’  **săr-s**  ‘heat’
**um**  ‘ignite’  **ūnū-s**  ‘cause to ignite’
**fīn**  ‘descend’  **fīn-s**  ‘lower’
**šāan**  ‘saw’  **šānū-s**  ‘cause to saw’
**šāán**  ‘peek’  **šān-s**  ‘cause to peek’

Some rules apply to all causative forms. Long vowels are always shortened, also in open syllables, i.e. when an expletive vowel occurs. Some examples are provided in (3). This rule applies to other derivations as well, see MP6 in section 3.2.3.

(3)  
**k’āb**  ‘pour’  **k’ab-s**  ‘cause to pour’
**gòóm**  ‘pile’  **gòmū-s**  ‘cause to pile’
**door**  ‘run’  **dor-s**  ‘cause to run’
**teer**  ‘swell’  **tērū-s**  ‘cause to swell’

Furthermore, all causative verb stems have L tone, with the exception of those in (4). Causative stems follow the tonal behaviour of L verb roots, except disyllabic stems in the Basic (imperative) paradigm; these have tone level 3 instead of level 2, as illustrated in (4b). Since this form is taken as the citation form, disyllabic causative stems are cited with tone 3.

(4)  

a.  
**fin-s-a**

descend-CAUS-STI

‘Lower it!’

b.  
**bāngār-s-a**

return-CAUS-STI

‘Give back! / Reply!’

The verbs in (5) have H tone even though their form suggests a causative derivation. The verb **bārtʃú-j** ‘wash’ has a passive counterpart **bārtʃú-t** ‘be washed’. The verb **dābdū-s** has a middle marked counterpart **dāb-ʃ-Š** ‘gather, come together’. Of the other two verbs, no base or other derived form is present in my corpus.
(5)  bártʃũ-ʃ ‘wash (something, oneself)’
dúbdú-s ‘collect, gather’
kájkú-ʃ ‘harvest’
ʔ dünkūr-s ‘conclude’

The causative suffix displays sibilant harmony, i.e. the sibilant has the same place of articulation as the sibilants in the verb root. The harmony is in place only, not in voice, as can be seen here from the causative stems of bez ‘sprout’, baʒ ‘work’ and zár ‘spill (of grain)’.

(6)  kats ‘cook’  kātsũ-s ‘cause to cook’
iits ‘boil’  ītsũ-s ‘cause to boil’
bez ‘sprout’  bēzũ-s ‘cause to sprout’

(7)  jœy ‘spill (of liquid)’  jœy-ʃ ‘spill (liquid)’
baʒ ‘work’  bāgu-ʃ ‘cause to work’
óʃũ ‘ask’  ōʃũ-ʃ ‘cause to ask’
tʃũ ‘be finished’  tʃor-ʃ ‘finish’

(8)  geets ‘laugh’  ĝetsũ-ʃ ‘cause to laugh’
aʃ ‘plant’  āšu-ʃ ‘cause to plant’
zár ‘spill (of grain)’  zar-ʃ ‘spill (grain)’

An ejective looses its ejective feature and becomes a voiceless stop or affricate immediately preceding the causative marker -s (9). (This is MP7 in section 3.2.3.) For stems ending in an ejective stop other than p’ metathesis and cluster simplification may apply, or they may have the intervening expletive vowel u; in the latter case the ejective feature is not lost.

(9)  t’ep ‘carry’  [ t’ep-s ] ‘load’
t’oop ‘be baptised’  [ t’op-s ] ‘baptize’
cf. ts’ōt’s ‘be full’  ts’ot-s ‘fill’

As already evidenced by ts’ot-s ‘fill’ in example (10), adjacent sibilants merge into a single segment. More examples are given below. In order to show the morphological make-up of the causative here, a hyphen is inserted (ke-s < kees-s), although the root-final and suffixal sibilant are indistinguishable. Note
that other verb roots ending in a sibilant fail to undergo this process (11).

(10) kees ‘go out’  ke-s ‘bring out’
sifs ‘listen’  si-s ‘cause to listen
kaats ‘be ripe’  kat-s ‘cook’
k’is ‘drink’  k’i-s ‘give a drink, water’
k’eets ‘be reheated (of yam)’  k’et-s ‘to reheat (yam)’

(11) baas ‘want, search’  bāsū-s ‘be necessary’
its ‘boil’  itsū-s ‘cause to boil’
ba ‘work’  bāzū-f ‘cause to work’

The following verbs undergo metathesis in the causative formation. They all end in a velar consonant. The first two verbs are transitive and also undergo metathesis in the passive formation.

(12) base causative passive
boog ‘harvest yam’  boks  bok
duuk’ ‘sow (maize)’  dusk’  dutk
diik’ ‘be anointed, painted’  disk’
wook’ ‘be tired’  wosk’
sok’ ‘lie down, be asleep’  sosk’
sak ‘arrive, reach’  sask
 tik ‘be extinguished’  tisk

Finally, note the dropping of the velar of sag ‘see’ in causative formation, and the dropping of -d of yard ‘enter’ (13). A sentential example for the latter is given in (14).

(13) sag ‘see’  se-s ‘show’
yard ‘enter’  yar-s ‘lead into, marry’

(14) ...yis-tà  yeta-k’erà  bāārā  yār-s-n
DIST.M-LOC  2SG-INCL  maiden enter-CAUS-DS
n=nàta-k’erà  báábù-kè  yard-n
1SG = 1SG-INCL  male-DAT  enter-STI
‘...then you can marry a girl and let me marry a man’
In some instances, the causative cannot be related to an underived verb stem, but there is a corresponding basic noun. Some examples are presented in (15)-(17). The causative can be seen as verbalizer here. It is not clear how productive this process is.

(15) nata-ra gúúrí ṉ-yaaf-á batá bëngi-k’à
   1SG-ACC only 1SG.POSS-find-NMLZ ON.LOC year-IN
   há=gáydu-s-k-ə yí=ge-ə
   3MS = problem-CAUS-REAL-STI 3FS = say-DS

   ‘He only has bothered me on my findings for years,’ she said;
   cf. gáydu ‘problem’

(16) ụjú bì?d-s=t-k-ə
    flower feather-CAUS = 3FS-REAL-STI
    ‘She put the flower in the hair/adorned with a flower.’
    cf. biy < bìt ‘feather’

(17) ts’yårū-s ‘to form a beard (of maize)’
    cf. ts’yårū ‘beard’
    hay-s ‘listen, be quiet; govern, manage’
    cf. haay ‘ear’; haay ‘spend the night’

Other verbs show an alternation with the passive (18). Although they clearly have a base form, the base form is not attested. The causative and passive in these pairs form transitive and intransitive verbs respectively.

---

39 Many Ethiopian languages have a similar derivation; e.g. Amharic addirā ‘spend the night’; astiddadirā ‘govern’.
(18) causatives (tr.) alternating with passives (intr.)

bârtf'û-t 'wash'  bârtf'û-t' 'be washed'
dûbdû-s 'collect, gather'  dûbdû-t 'be collected'
gărû-s 'greet'  gărû-t' 'be greeted'
ôrťf'û-t 'undress'  ôrťf'û-t' 'be undressed'
fädû-s 'cause to be hungry'  fädû-t 'be hungry'
kündû-s 'push'  kündû-t 'be pushed'
şêtf'û-t 'flower (of maize)' (not attested)
äbdû-s 'make a floor'  äbdû-t' 'be made'
cf. äbdà 'floor of cow dung'
ängû-s 'make larger'  ängû-t 'be made large, increase'

A few verbs do not alternate with passives, and an underived base is not known. As CVCC is a possible stem shape, it could be that the sibilant is part of the root.

(19) tʃ'arʃ 'carve', cf. passive tʃ'arʃu-t 'be carved'
ubs 'creep'

12.1.2 Double causatives
The causative stem may be formed from intransitive verbs, deriving a transitive verb, as well as from transitive verbs. The causative suffix may be realized twice, as illustrated in examples (20)-(21). Double causatives are also used in some reciprocal constructions (section 12.3.3).

(20) bar 'boil' (intr.)  bars 'boil'  bârsûs 'cause to boil'
fin 'descend'  fins 'lower'  finsûs 'cause to lower'
şor 'be afraid'  şorg 'frighten'  şorgûs 'cause to frighten'
sok 'lie down, sleep'  sokûs 'cause to lie down, make sleep'  sōskûs 'cause to make sleep'
ûm 'eat'  ums 'feed'  ümsûs 'cause to feed'

(21) a. há=hâây-û-s  hâ=saɾu-k-û
   water-DEF-M  3MS = be.hot-REAL-STI
   ‘The water is hot.’

b. hâây  saɾ-š-t-û
   water  be.hot-CAUS-PLADDR-STI
   ‘Heat water!’
As can be seen from the examples, the causative introduces a new argument (the causer). The causee may be marked by the accusative (22) or instrumental case (23b).

(22) ʧ-ǝra ʧi-ŋ-s-ǝra ǝhâ=$ar-su-s-k-ǝ

3FS-ACC water-DEF-M-ACC 3MS = be.hot-CAUS-CAUS-REAL-STI

‘he made her heat the water’

(23) a. ʧu boyn ʧa kǝ-ǝra

drinking mother.DEF.M chief.DEF-M-ACC

ǝhâ=gak-ǝ-k-ǝ

3MS = insult-REAL-STI

‘The drunkard insulted the chief.’

b. ʧu boyn ʧadu-ka kǝ-a

drinking mother.DEF.M child-WITH chief.DEF-M-ACC

ǝhâ=gask-ǝ-s-k-ǝ

3MS = insult-CAUS-REAL-STI

‘The drunkard had the chief insulted by a child.’

12.2 Passive

The passive derivation marker is -t’. There is a process of metathesis when the passive derivation is suffixed to verb roots with an affricate or velar stop.

12.2.1 Formal aspects of the passive

Like in causative formation, in passive formation a long vowel is shortened and all passive verb stems have L tone. They follow the tonal behaviour of L verb roots, except disyllabic stems in the Basic (Imperative) paradigm; these have tone level 3 instead of level 2.

(24) ǝgöm ‘pile’ ǝgøm-t’ ‘be piled’

ɐgøtʃ ‘bite (of snake) ɐgøtʃ-t’ ‘be bitten’
The passive-middle marker -t’ deglottalises and becomes the voiceless plosive -t after a voiceless fricative (MP 8).

(25)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>k’of</td>
<td>‘estimate’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myas</td>
<td>‘hew’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tooś</td>
<td>‘add to water’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>byáh</td>
<td>‘open’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k’of-t’</td>
<td>‘be estimated’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>myas-t’</td>
<td>‘be hewn’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tooś-t’</td>
<td>‘be added to water’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>byah-t’</td>
<td>‘be opened’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In many verbs with a stem-final velar stop, metathesis takes place (MP 9). Further changes are assimilation in voice, i.e. clusters of a voiced velar stop and passive -t’ become voiceless. Only the second consonant (after metathesis) may be ejective. The presence of the ejective feature is not fully predictable. The following verbs are known to undergo metathesis in passive formation:

(26)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>duuk’</td>
<td>‘sow (maize)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mook’</td>
<td>‘break off’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>záák’</td>
<td>‘peel maize’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>haak</td>
<td>‘pick’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maak</td>
<td>‘tell’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beg</td>
<td>‘pay’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bóög</td>
<td>‘harvest yam’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daag</td>
<td>‘invite’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dutk’</td>
<td>‘be sown’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>motk</td>
<td>‘be broken off’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zátk’</td>
<td>‘be peeled’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hatk</td>
<td>‘be picked’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matk</td>
<td>‘be told’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>betk’</td>
<td>‘be paid’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>botk’</td>
<td>‘be harvested’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>datk</td>
<td>‘be invited’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some sentential examples are given in (27).

(27) a.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>yáb-íh-s</td>
<td>man-DEF-M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dátk = á-k-o</td>
<td>invite.PASS = 3MS-REAL-STI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘The man was invited.’

b.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fát’l</td>
<td>maize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dírga-ka</td>
<td>Dirga-WITH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dút’k = á-k</td>
<td>sow.PASS = 3MS-REAL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘The maize was sown by Dirga.’

a.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gyäñ-s</td>
<td>coffee.DEF-M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bétk = á-k-o</td>
<td>pay.PASS = 3MS-REAL-STI</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘The coffee is paid (for).’

Furthermore, some verbs ending in an affricate simplify the cluster that is created after suffixing the passive-middle -t’ to a
cluster of homorganic sibilant and stop (as described in *MP 10*).

(28) bódtʃ ‘scrape, dig’  boʃt ‘be dug’
bútʃ ‘cut (horizontally)’  bust ‘be cut’
gitʃ ‘rub’  git ‘be rubbed’
geetʃ ‘laugh’  geʃt ‘be laughed (at)’
k’aatʃ ‘stone’  k’at ‘be stoned’
k’uts ‘cut’  k’ut ‘be cut’
ʃatʃ ‘herd’  ʃat ‘be herded’
tʃ’yáats ‘tie’  tʃ’yst ‘be tied’
ats ‘give’  ast ‘be given’
ʃɪts ‘cook (liquid)’  ist ‘be cooked’, ex. (29)

(29) gyănù hàyy áás-t=á há = ?ist-n-baab
    coffee water how-COP = 3MS 3MS = cook.liquid.PASS-IRR-father
    te-n m = maaku-ki-k
    COP-DS 1SG = tell-exist-REAL

‘I will be telling how coffee is/has to be prepared.’

Note that not all verbs ending in an affricate follow this pattern of cluster simplification.

(30) gootʃ ‘bite (of snake)’  gotʃu-t ‘be bitten’
k’ap’tʃ ‘cut (scissors)’  k’ap’tʃu-t ~ kap’t-t ‘be cut’
ts’uuts ‘whistle’  ts’utschu-t ‘be whistled’

Verb roots ending in -t mostly merge their last consonant with the passive -t (31). Some verbs assimilate their last consonant and merge (32). But not all verbs do, as illustrated in example (33).

(31) boot ‘smear, rub, paint’  bo-t ‘be smeared’
káat ‘hoe, dig’  ka-t ‘be hoed, dug’
k’eet ‘swallow’  k’e-t ‘be swallowed’
k’iit ‘grind’  k’i-t ‘be ground’
mat ‘ferment’  ma-t ‘be fermented’

---

40 *gyănù hāyy* (or simply *gyănù*) is the common Sheko coffee beverage, a hot drink prepared from coffee leaves. In contrast, *sinl gyănù* (Lit: cup coffee), is the Amharic style coffee from the beans.
(32) ła′ad  ‘pierce’  ła′a′t  ‘be pierced’

(33) ła′it  ‘stretch (muscles)’  ła′it′u-t  ‘be stretched’

k′ud  ‘cover’  k′ud′u-t  ‘be covered’

As was shown for causatives, some verbs drop the last velar consonant in derivation.

(34) ęg  ‘do’  e-t  ‘be done’

šąg  ‘see’  se-t  ‘be seen, be visible’

(35) ła′tə-tər=š.k′y-á-m
outside  see.nv-pass-NEG = 3fs-remain-put-IRR
‘She was not seen outside.’

A stem-final glottal stop is deleted before the passive.

(36) ąga?  ‘chew’  ąga-t  ‘be chewed’

ba?  ‘carry on the back’  ba-t  ‘be carried’

dą?  ‘batter’  da-t  ‘be battered’

šu?  ‘rest’  šu-t  ‘be rested’

(37) hą=t′up′u-t′-əb-kə  ādi-k’a  hą=dā-t′-ə-mə
3ms = soak-pass-rel-dat  footstep-in  3ms = batter-pass-put-IRR-sti
‘After it is soaked, it is battered.’

(38) yeb-m-s  šu-t′=á-k-ə
mourning-def-m  rest-pass = 3ms-real-sti
‘the mourning diminished/came to an end (was rested)’

12.2.2 Semantic aspects of the passive
Semantically, the passive centralises the Patient, which becomes subject of the sentence. The original subject is decentralised and can be expressed by an Instrument phrase or left out.

(39) a. ągū́ž  na-ŋ  ąšu-ra  gootj=á-k
snake  1sg-dat  leg.acc  bite = 3ms-real
‘A snake bit me in the leg.’
b. na-ŋ āsū (gōóz-ka) gōtsū-t' = á-k-ə
   1SG-DAT leg-ACC snake-WITH bite-PASS = 3MS-REAL-STI
   ‘My leg was bitten (by a snake).’

In view of the formal identity of passive and reflexive in some Omotic languages, it may be noted that the passive in Sheko does not have a reflexive meaning (40). Reflexivity is discussed in section 6.3.

(40) woogi k'ūst=í-k-ə
    Woogi cut.PASS = 3FS-REAL-STI
    ‘Woogi was cut. /*Woogi cut herself’

In some instances, the passive has elements of middle semantics. In (41)-(42), the passive may also have an interpretation of ‘potentiality’:

(41) má kōokh jād-ŋ-s
    earlier.today road be.far-DEF-M
    há = se-t'ū-k-ə
    3MS = see.NV-PASS-REAL-STI
    ‘Today far places are visible (one can see far today).’

(42) gūk'-ŋ-s hāz ūm-t'-ār = á-k'l-k-ə
    porridge-DEF-M PROX.M eat-PASS-NEG = 3MS-exist-REAL-STI
    ‘This porridge is not eatable.’

Instead of the Realis form in (42), an Irrealis is used as well (43).

(43) gūk'-ŋ-s ūm-t'-ār = á-k'y-a-m-ə
    porridge-DEF-M eat-PASS-NEG = 3MS-remain-put-IRR-STI
    ‘The porridge is not eatable.’

In (44), verb stems with a possibly frozen passive are listed. These are semantically related to middle (body centered, spontaneous process or emotive). However, Sheko has a dedicated middle marker -ŋ (section 12.3 below). Another possibility is that -t ~ t' in these verbs a reflex of the Omotic inchoative marker -t ~ t'. Two other verb stems in -t also fit
into the list. (The final consonant in gift ‘boast’ etc. can be explained by MP 8, see (25) above.)

(44)  
fayt’  ‘be weak’ cf. fayt’u-s ‘weaken’
gift  ‘boast’
kyab’t’ ‘become king’ cf. kyab’t’u-s ‘make king’
k’ümūt’ ‘be moldy (of injera)’
ʃarút’ ‘be asleep (of body part)’
tʃ’ämūt’ ‘be jealous (?)’
taft  ‘touch’
tīknūt’ ‘hiccup’
aft  ‘be intoxicated, drunk’
gumt  ‘kneel down’
?fert  ‘put in its place’

12.3 Middle
The middle is formally characterized by a syllabic nasal. Syntactically, middle verbs can be transitive or intransitive. Semantically, it ranges from spontaneous processes (45), to self-centeredness (46), and reciprocal (47). The reciprocal is typically built on a causative stem. The Sheko middle is analysed as a reciprocal-middle, rather than a ‘middle proper’ since it does not occur with body grooming verbs (cf. Tolemariam 2009:150). See section 12.3.2 for a discussion and a list of middle verb stems.

(45)  
a.  
gāz = ə-k-ə
snap = 3MS-REAL-STI
‘He snapped it.’

b.  
gāz-ʊ = ə-k-ə
snap-MIDD = 3MS-REAL-STI
‘It snapped.’

(46)  
a.  
му́зи  ɳ = bësk-ə-m-ə
banana  1SG = divide-put-IRR-STI
‘I will divide the banana’
b. mūzĩ  n = bēsk-ŋ-ā-m-ɔ
banana  1SG = divide-midd-put-IRR-STI
’I will divide the banana for my own benefit’

(47) a. ḷĩ = yangu-ki-k-ɔ
3PL = be.angry-exist-REAL-STI
’they are angry’

b. yàngū-s-ɔ = ḷĩ-k-ɔ
be.angry-CAUS-MIDD = 3PL-REAL-STI
'They were angry with each other.’

12.3.1 Formal aspects of the middle
The middle suffix is a syllabic -n. The n assimilates to the adjacent consonant as described in section 3.1, PR 9. There are a few verbs with a stem-final m which could also belong to the middle (48). In some cases, a variant form is found with a bilabial stop, which could explain the m by assimilation.

(48) bārm ‘become an adult (f)’ ~ bārbm
wũrm ‘be turbid’ ~ wūrbm
ɡīrm ‘ruminate’
ɡūrm ‘bow down, worship’
tʃ'arm ‘be pure’
tūrm ‘frown’ cf. t'ur ‘be folded’

Most middles are L stems. Since they are disyllabic, the imperative singular has tone 3 (just as disyllabic causatives and passives). The following verb stems however are H:

(49) nīrm ‘dew’
sūtŋ ‘be sharp, pointy’
ts'ārkŋ ‘spit far’
ts'ūbhŋ ‘be narrow’
tʃ'ōgŋ ‘smack, eat noisily’
wūrm ‘be turbid’

While most middle verbs are intransitive (50)-(51), a few verbs are transitive, such as zūp'n ‘chase’ and bōtn ‘pound in a mortar’. The Patient/Undergoer of those verbs is in the accusative (52).
(50) ás-kh  ilk’a-ka  dādū  nyākū  há = kl-htà
3MS-DAT  be.old.NMLZ-WITH  child  young.man  3MS = exist-COND
há = nyāk-í-h-b  ʃʃ = t’uūs-ā-m-ə
3MS = become.adult.man-MIDD-REL  3PL = know-put-IRR-STI
‘they would know that he became adult if he was a young man by his age’

(51) ʃtú = ūm-m-bāb  ɛʃtā  āyī-ārā
2PL-eat-IRR-father  MOTIVE  think.much.MIDD-NEG
k’ē-t-ə
remain-PL.ADDR-STI
‘Do not worry about what you will eat’

(52) ʃtúl-ra  yǐ = bōt-n-k-l-b-tā
maize-ACC  3FS = pound.MIDD-exist-REL-LOC
‘when she was pounding maize’

The middle is argument decreasing in some cases, mostly when the middle is derived from a basic transitive verb (53b). In other cases, it is valency neutral, for instance in middles expressing ‘selfcenteredness’ (54b).

(53) a. kaf-th-s  ʃ-əra  k’yaaf-th  yǐ = wut-ə
bird-DEF-M  3FS-ACC  kick-DS  3FS = fall-DS
‘the bird kicked her; she fell...’

b. dāygə  yǐ = k’yaf-m-ky-a-a
child.f.DEF  3FS-kick-MIDD-exist-IMPL-STD
‘the girl was convulsing...’

(54) a. ʃi = təg-ə
1PL = go-STI
‘let’s go’

b. ʃi = təg-n-ə
1PL = go-MIDD-STI
‘let’s go (for ourselves)’
12.3.2 Semantics of the middle
In general, there is a large semantic overlap between middle and reflexive/reciprocal. Haspelmath (2003:225) refers to reflexive and middle functions with one semantic map. Kemmer (1993) analyses the middle as having a participant which refers to a single entity (or a high degree of unity between participants), while the participant of a reflexive is conceptualised as split into subparts one of which acts upon the other (or a low degree of unity). On the other hand, the middle and the passive have in common that the Agent is unimportant. Payne (1997) describes the middle as a process which ignores the Agent role. In contrast, the passive is seen as an action with a downplayed Agent.

To illustrate the range of the middle in Sheko, first a list of verbs is presented. Secondly, some functions, such as spontaneous processes and self-centeredness, are discussed using example sentences. Section 12.3.3 discusses reciprocals, which are formed in Sheko by a combination of causative and middle. The middle -q in Sheko is positioned towards the reflexive-reciprocal end of the semantic continuum. It does not cover grooming verbs, which is uncommon for an Ethiopian middle (Tolemariam 2009). The semantic distinction between middle and passive is not wholly clear-cut in Sheko, as is illustrated in (44) above, where some verbs with a frozen passive marker -t are listed which have middle semantics.

The following alphabetical list contains deponent middle verbs, i.e. they do not occur without the middle marker -q. If a cognate noun is known, it is given as well. The list contains among others verbs denoting cognitive processes or speech actions (‘reproach’, ‘be mute’), body actions (‘swim’, ‘slurp’), spontaneous processes (‘leak’, ‘slip’), and properties (‘become wide’, ‘be sharp and pointy’). Some verbs can be seen as inherently reciprocal (‘be equal’, ‘wrestle’). Of course, some verbs could be grouped under several headings, such as ‘become adult’, which is a spontaneous process and body centered.
(55)  bārm ~ bārbm ‘become adult (of girl)’, cf. bārā ‘girl’
bgōt ‘grind in mortar’, cf. bōtā ‘mortar’
būrg ‘slip’
dāk ‘become dirty’, cf. daak’u ‘dirt’
dās ‘be rotten (of wood)’
dīk ‘be mute, dumb’, cf. dīk’ā ‘mute person’
dīp ‘be equal’, cf. diip’i ‘same, equal’
dūbar ‘be spoiled by vermin’, cf. dūba ‘vermin’
feñ ‘evaporate’ (e.g. of morning mist)
feñt ‘be scratched/injured’
frōk ‘peel’
gōts ‘be white’
gōt ‘be distant, far’
gāts ‘help’
gīb ‘struggle, wrestle’
gūp ‘be turned upside down’
hāsk ‘become wide’
kūsin ‘drizzle (rain)’
mūt ‘witness’
mūsk ‘swim’
mūzr ‘melt’
nārm ‘blow (of wind)’, cf. nārū ‘wind’
nfū ‘dew’
nik ‘be pulverized’
nyāk ‘become adult (of boy)’,
cf. nyākū ‘young man’
sūnt ‘become sharp, pointy’
sūr ‘gulp, slurp’
sūr ‘shrink’
sōk ‘wrap clothes around oneself’
sōsk ‘become light, easy’
št ‘ark ‘spit far’
št ‘es ‘be satisfied (food)’
št ‘ub ‘become narrow’
št ‘yās ‘break off with fingertips’
tʃ ‘bīm ‘plant a post’, cf. tf ‘bīm ‘post, stake’
tʃ ‘dā ‘fight, war’, cf. tsat ‘pierce’
tʃ ‘gī ‘smack, eat noisily’
ʃ ‘sk ‘leak’
tʃ ‘ep ‘become one, grow together’
tōm ‘do again, repeat’
tōsī ‘greet’, cf. tôz ‘relative’
t‘yābīn ‘become thick’
wūrbīn ‘become turbid’
yāzī ‘reproach’
yitī ‘walk happily, gait’
zīr‘īn ‘chase away’
zūgī ‘become infertile’, cf. zūgī ‘infertile’
zāp‘īn ‘shine’
ātī ‘become used to’
āyī ‘think much’
edī ‘become rotten’
提ī ‘be gluttonous, selfish’

Absent in the list are verbs of grooming, such as ‘to wash (oneself)’, ‘to shave’, ‘to braid one’s hair’. In the case of bārt‘-ūf ‘to wash’ the verb alternates between causative and passive ((18) above). fyatsī ‘to shave’ and mān ‘to braid’ are transitive verbs (56)-(57).

(56) ās-kā t’syārtū há=fyatsī-kl-k-ə
    3MS-DAT beard 3MS=shave-exist-REAL-STI
    ‘he is shaving his beard’

(57) šk-kā gōri-ra mān-t’=á-k-ə
    3FS-DAT head-ACC braid-PASS = 3MS-REAL-STI
    ‘she got her hair braided, her head is braided’

However, other body-centered middles do occur. See the list in (55) and the example sentence (58) below (with derived middle):

(58) san t’ūr-ə=m=á-k-ə
    forehead roll.up-MIND = 3MS-REAL-STI
    ‘He frowned’

Furthermore, in (59)-(61), the middle is used for spontaneous events, in which there is no control of an Agent over the process.
(59) a. baakà t’yamà  m = mòdèk’ù-kì-k-ə
taro small.part 1SG = break.off-exist-REAL-STI
‘I’m breaking off the small parts from the taro.’
b. ìy  mòk-ŋ = á-k-ə
house break.off-MIDD = 3MS-REAL-STI
‘The house is broken down.’

(60) a. ʒèrikà̃n-s-əra  n = hàrtʃ’ù-s-bàrù-k-ə
derrycan.DEF-ACC 1SG = tear-CAUS-throw.away-REAL-STI
‘I wrecked the jerrycan’
b. hāāy  ás-ka   ha = ?iir-k-əb
water 3MS-WITH 2SG-fetch-exist-REL
ʒèrikànì īá = hàrtʃ’-ŋ-k-ə
derrycan 3MS = tear-MIDD-REAL-STI
‘The jerrycan with which you fetch water is broken.’

(61) jùrì  dùb-ŋ = á-k-ə
sorghum.sp maggot-MIDD = 3MS-REAL-STI
‘the sorghum is spoiled by maggots’
~ also possible with a passive: dùbùt’áko

Furthermore, the middle is used in situations where the subject is affected or involved. Sentence (62) comes from an interview with a traditional leader. He is asked whether there will be someone like him in the future, who will organise work, educate the people and govern the land, in the light of all the disappearing traditional practices. His answer is given in (62). He continues saying that there are no wise people anymore, and that whoever listens to him now is listening voluntarily. I take it to mean that even those who know about the tradition will keep their knowledge to themselves and not follow the tradition.

(62) kàáy-ə  ìtí  tí  t’úus-ŋ-ə
be.not-STI 2PL COP know-MIDD-STI
‘There will not be (anybody). It is you who know.’ (Context: answer is directed at the researcher and an informant who does not follow traditional practices.)
Creating a context when talking about (63), my language consultants sketched a situation in which the addressee leaves the room and the speaker wants him to stay, but “has no option” because the addressee will not obey, and therefore says (63). However, permission does not seem to play a role in other examples. The utterance in (63) may convey that the event of going will be for the sake of the addressee, thereby suggesting that his going is not ‘neutral’ but lacks the consent of the speaker. This is compatible with the situation sketched by the language consultants.

(63)  \textbf{ha=tóg-ñ-ø} \\
\text{2SG = go-MIDD-STI} \\
‘You can go’

In searching for an explanation of the verb forms in (62) and (63), it turned out that this type of middle marking is productive. Commonly the examples are with Jussive forms, and can be translated in various ways depending on the context. Note that although an autobenefactive reading is possible in some cases, normally autobenefactives are built on transitive verbs (e.g. in Oromo, Tolemariam 2009:97), whereas the Sheko examples are with intransitive verbs. Instead of autobenefactive, the term ‘selfcenteredness’ may be used in referring to such forms.

(64)  \textbf{n=sifs-ñ-ø} \\
\text{1SG = listen-MIDD-STI} \\
‘Let me listen for my sake, I can listen if I must, I will listen anyway’

(65)  \textbf{ñi=käas-ñ-ø} \\
\text{3PL = play-MIDD-STI} \\
‘let them play for themselves/ for their own benefit, they can play etc.’

Here are some examples from discourse:
(66) hà̀z-ka n̂ = k’ùûts’=á ḡōnt’a ge-ńṯà
PROX.M-WITH 1SG = cut = 3MS\textsuperscript{11} blunt say-COND

hà̀z-ka n̂ = k’ùûts’-ṇ̀-ə yī = ge-ṇ̀
PROX.M-WITH 1SG = cut-MIDD-STI 3FS = say-DSt
‘... “If I cut with this one and it becomes blunt, I’ll cut with this one,” she said...’

(67) gé = n̂ ye-kh kum-k’à k’órk’-ṇ̀-t = n̂
say = 1SG 2SG-DAT neck-IN twist-MIDD-ss = 1SG

n̂ = gáámtạ sak-ə̣
1SG = far.side.LOC arrive-STI
‘Say, let me coil myself around your neck and reach the other shore.’
(Context: said by a snake.)

(68) má-a m̀àhk-n̂ n̂ = kōb-t = n̂
earlier.today = 2SG tell-DSt 1SG = take-ss = 1SG

yōg-ṇ̀-ə̣ comme-MIDD-STI
‘Had you told (me) earlier - I would have brought it (for you/myself).’ (Context: reaction of Monkey to his antagonist Crocodile who told him that he needs a monkey’s heart.)

The middle in (69) is built on the passive. As (70) shows, it is possible to mention the Agent. This example also illustrates that the beneficiary (the one for whom the door was opened) need not be mentioned overtly.

(69) iš-kḥ oy-əb ēèd-n̂-s há = byà-’-ṇ̀-ḳ-ə̣
3FS-DAT refuse-REL door-DEF-M 3MS-open-PASS-MIDD-REAL-STI
‘The door that refused her was opened (for her).’

(70) ēèd-n̂-s ṃ-baadù-ka
door-DEF-M 1SG.POSS-younger.sibling--WITH

byà-’-ṇ̀ = á-ḳ-ə̣
open-PASS-MIDD = 3MS-REAL-STI
‘The door was opened by my brother (for somebody).’\textsuperscript{42}

\textsuperscript{42} There is no DS marker here although the subject changes.
\textsuperscript{43} In eliciting this example, only the possibility of opening for someone else was discussed, but probably a reading ‘for my brother’ is also possible.
In the two examples above, the middle derivation follows the passive. The reverse order, middle-passive, does occur in the example below. Its semantics are not transparent. However, there are other Omotic languages in which passivization with some verbs entails ‘stacked’ derivational morphemes (e.g. Benchnon (Rapold 2006:324); Maale (Azeb 2001a:104)).

(71)  \[\text{Fitɛr k’aas̄-kȟ \ ilk- ساعة-ت’ = ɛ-k-ə} \]

\[\text{Peter \ game-DAT \ be.old-MIDD-PASS = 3MS-REAL-STA} \]

‘Peter has grown too old for games.’

Here are some examples where the middle allows a reciprocal interpretation next to an interpretation of self-centeredness and involvement. It is not clear whether the verbs besk ‘divide’ in (72) and dyask ‘relocate’ in (73) contain a frozen causative or not. Reciprocals are normally built on a causative.

(72)  \[\ldots\text{umt’-ra \ saśk = ]fj\ bēsk-ŋ-kī-baaťa} \]

\[\text{food-ACC \ arrive.CAUS = 3PL \ divide-MIDD-exist-WHILE} \]

‘…and brought out food and while they divided it between them…’

(73)  \[k’obὰb \ ūk’-ŋ\ s kōb-m k’obὰb \]

\[\text{one.father \ milk-DEF-M \ take-DS \ one.father} \]

\[\text{éez-ŋ\ s \ kōb-m ]fj = dyąsk-ŋ-tə \ ]fj = kōb-tə \]

\[\text{honey-DEF-M \ take-DS \ 3PL = relocate-MIDD-SS \ 3PL = take-SS} \]

‘one took the milk, the other took the honey; they bartered with each other/for themselves and took it…’ (Context: two thieves each want to profit from selling a bad quality product.)

12.3.3 Reciprocity\(^{43}\)

Reciprocity is coded by the middle suffix -ŋ following a causative suffix -s. This is illustrated for intransitives (74b) and transitives (75b), and a transitive which does not occur without the derivational morpheme (76b).

\(^{43}\) This section largely builds on data elicited with the MPI video stimuli for reciprocal contructions by Evans e.a. (2004).
(74) a. \( \text{yí} = \text{tūfù-k-ə} \)
\[ 3\text{FS} = \text{collide-REAL-STI} \]
‘she bumped (into someone/ something)’

b. \( \text{fī} = \text{tūfù-ūs-ŋ-k-ə} \)
\[ 3\text{PL} = \text{collide-CAUS-MIDD-REAL-STI} \]
‘they bumped into each other’

(75) a. \( \text{kūtšū} \ fī = \text{ts'ooku-k-ə} \)
hand \[ 3\text{PL} = \text{palm.hit-REAL-STI} \]
‘they clapped their hands, they applauded’

b. \( \text{fī} = \text{ts'ok'-ūs-ŋ-kl-k-ə} \)
\[ 3\text{PL} = \text{palm.hit-CAUS-MIDD-exist-REAL-STI} \]
‘they are slapping each other’

(76) a. \( \text{fš-arə} \ fī = \text{gārūs-kl-k-ə} \)
\[ 3\text{FS-ACC} \ 3\text{PL} = \text{greet.CAUS-exist-REAL-STI} \]
‘They greet her.’

b. \( \text{fī} = \text{gārūs-ŋ-kl-k-ə} \)
\[ 3\text{PL} = \text{greet.CAUS-MIDD-exist-REAL-STI} \]
‘They greet each other.’

In some instances, the causative morpheme appears twice. In (77c), the reciprocal is built on the causative stem \( \text{yar-s} \) ‘marry (a wife)’. In (78), the participants not only hit each other, but in doing so give cause for continuing the fight. Interestingly, in (79) the middle itself also occurs twice.

(77) a. \( \text{hā} = \text{yarître-k} \)
\[ 3\text{MS} = \text{enter-REAL} \]
‘he entered’

b. \( \text{hā} = \text{yar-sù-k} \)
\[ 3\text{MS} = \text{enter-CAUS-REAL} \]
‘he married’

c. \( \text{yar-s-ūs-ŋ} \)
\[ \text{enter-CAUS-CAUS-MIDD} \]
‘marriage’ (marrying each other)
(78) \(fi = \text{dūm-s-ūs-ǹ-ā-m-ә} \)
\[3\text{PL} = \text{hit-CAUS-CAUS-MIDD-put-IRR-STI} \]
‘they will (cause each other to) hit each other’ (Context: 1. everybody fights with everybody. 2. pairs keep hitting each other.)

(79) \(fi = \text{dūf-s-ūs-ǹ-kl-k-ә} \)
\[3\text{PL} = \text{hit-MIDD-CAUS-CAUS-MIDD-exist-REAL-STI} \]
‘they are hitting each other (for themselves)’ (Context: someone receives a blow and then hits the next person, who in turn hits another person, etc.)

Of course, reciprocity may be expressed analytically as well. While looking at the stimuli, one person remarked after a while that it was also possible to “simply say” (80b) instead of (a)...

(80) a. \(fi = \text{tit-ūs-ǹ-kl-k-ә} \)
\[3\text{PL} = \text{watch-CAUS-MIDD-exist-REAL-STI} \]
‘they look at each other’ (Context: two persons watch each other.)

b. \(f\bar{s} \quad \text{āz} \quad \text{tit-ǹ} \quad \text{āz} \quad f\bar{s} \quad \text{tit-ǹ} \)
\[3\text{FS} \quad 3\text{MS} \quad \text{look-DS} \quad 3\text{MS} \quad 3\text{FS} \quad \text{look-DS} \]
‘she looks at him, he looks at her’

In addition to the morphological means, the reciprocity may be marked lexically as well by the word \(\text{ānkà}, \) glossed ‘each other’.

(81) \(dāws \quad \text{ānk-àstà} \quad fi = \text{dūf-s-ūs-ǹ-kl-k-ә} \)
children each other-3MS.COP? \[3\text{PL} = \text{hit-CAUS-CAUS-MIDD-exist-REAL-STI} \]
‘the children were hitting (all of) each other’

The use of a causative-middle derivation for reciprocity is uncommon in Omotic languages. Tolemariam (2009:172) states that in Kafa, Wolaitta, Koorite and Kanta it is the double passive which yields a reciprocal interpretation. He does not mention a combination of causative-middle for reciprocity. One language which perhaps can be analysed as building the reciprocal on the causative is Dime. Although Mulugeta (2008:141) does not break up the reciprocal marker -\(\text{sim}, \) it
may consist of the causative, which is -(i)s in Dime, and another derivational marker\(^\text{a}\). An example is given in (82):

\[(82) \quad \text{tadese-ká} \quad \text{taye-ká} \quad \text{gís’-s’im-i-n} \]

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
\text{Tadese-CNJ} & \text{Taye-CNJ} & \text{kick-PF-3} \\
\end{array}
\]

‘Tadese and Taye kicked each other.’ (Mulugeta 2008:145)

Furthermore, Benchon has a reciprocal-middle marker ñ, which derives reciprocals from transitive verbs (excluding a reflexive reading), and reflexives from denominals (excluding a reciprocal reading), as described in Rapold (2006:320f).

12.4 **Experimenter verbs**

This section offers an initial analysis of experimenter verbs in Sheko. Some of these verbs are prototypically causatives, with the experimenter in the accusative. Example (83) shows next to such a causative (fάðūs ‘make hungry’) also a non-causative wɔok’ ‘be tired’, which contrasts with the causative wɔsk’ in (84). The latter is more frequent. The causative - non-causative opposition has a direct consequence for the experiencer: it is either object (accusative) of a causative verb or subject (nominative) of a non-causative verb.

\[(83) \quad \text{há} = \text{fį-ra} \quad \text{fάd-ūs-ñ} \quad \text{fį} = \text{wook’u-tà} \]

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
3\text{MS} = 3\text{PL}-\text{ACC} & \text{be.hungry-CAUS-DS} \\
3\text{PL} = \text{be.tired-SS} \\
\end{array}
\]

‘they became hungry and tired and...’

\[(84) \quad \text{nata-ra} \quad \text{wɔsk’} = \text{á-k-ə} \]

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
1\text{SG-ACC} & \text{be.tired,CAUS} = 3\text{MS-REAL-STI} \\
\end{array}
\]

‘I am tired’ (Lit: It tired me.)

In some instances, a causer noun may be present:

\[(85) \quad \text{fáádù} \quad \text{nata-ra há} = \text{fάd-ūs-k-ə} \]

\[
\begin{array}{ll}
1\text{SG-ACC} \quad 3\text{MS} = \text{be.hungry-CAUS-REAL-STI} \\
\end{array}
\]

‘Hunger is making me hungry.’

\(^{a}\) Mulugeta (2008:141) lists as other derivational markers :int’ ‘passive’ and :imá ‘inchoative’.
Other examples of causative experiencer verbs are given in (86)-(87).

(86) \( \mathbf{ɔɔ} = \mathbf{a} \quad \text{há} = \text{yemz-} \quad \text{wɔ?} \quad \text{yī} = \text{ge-} \)  
\( \begin{align*} 3S = \text{a} & \quad 3S = \text{hurt-DS} \quad \text{INTJ} & \quad 3S = \text{say-DS} \\ \end{align*} \)

‘She got hurt; she said ‘stop’...’ (Lit: It hurt her...)

(87) \( \text{há} = \text{mānk-} \quad \text{ɛʃhtà} \quad \text{k'arà} \quad \text{ás-a} \)  
\( \begin{align*} 3S = \text{tell-PURP} & \quad \text{for} & \quad \text{INCL} & \quad 3S = \text{ACC} \\ \end{align*} \)

‘He couldn’t even speak (It made him weak in order to tell even).’

The verbs in (88) and (89) are causative as well. The experiencer in these sentences has no accusative marker suffixed, but accusative marking is also not obligatory for other objects.

(88) \( \mathbf{ɔɔ} \quad \text{há} = \text{kɔsn-s-k-} \)  
\( \begin{align*} 3S & \quad 3S = \text{pant-MID-CAU-REAL-STR} \\ \end{align*} \)

‘She panted, breathed heavily’

(89) \( \text{nat} \quad \text{á} = \text{ʒi-ʒi-n-s-k-} \)  
\( \begin{align*} 1S & \quad 3S = \text{PLUR-nod-CAUSE-REAL-STR} \\ \end{align*} \)

‘I am nodding (drowsy)’

There are two examples which do not have causative marking on the verb, but still have an object pronoun. Example (90) shows the transitive verb \( \text{šım} \) ‘make thirsty, long for’; and it has a separate pronoun for the experiencer, which in this instance happens to be 3ms. Likewise, example (91) features the (intransitive?) verb \( \text{șo} \) ‘be cold’, and a 3ms subject clitic as well as a 1pl pronoun.

(90) \( \text{hānáy-} \quad \text{hàdz} \quad \text{k'iš-kì-b} \quad \text{kët} \quad \text{kay'ēstà} \)  
\( \begin{align*} \text{water-DEF-M} & \quad \text{PROX.M} & \quad \text{drink-exist-REL} & \quad \text{all} & \quad \text{again} \\ \end{align*} \)

\( \text{ás} \quad \text{há} = \text{šım-à-m-} \)  
\( \begin{align*} 3S & \quad 3S = \text{thirst-put-IRR-STR} \\ \end{align*} \)

‘Everybody who drinks this water will again become thirsty.’
Some experiencer verbs can take a passive, as attested in (92)-(93). It is not known to which extent experiencer verbs allow passivization.

(92) **éná**
**ha=šùm-t’-á-m-ə**
later.today  
2SG = thirst-PASS-Put-IRR-STI

‘you will be thirsty again.’

(93) **ŋ = ʔyàrk-h-tük-ə**
1SG = perspire-PASS-REAL-STI

‘I perspired.’

also possible: **nat=á ʔyarhk-n-ə** with a causative.

Other verbs which are semantically experiencer verbs behave like normal intransitive verbs. The experiencer is the subject of the verb. Some verbs have a middle derivation -ŋ. A few examples are listed:

(94) **kuʃ** ‘be sick’
**yánk’** ‘be angry’
**şor** ‘be afraid’
**kááŋ** ‘be happy’ (see example (95))

**āyŋ** ‘worry, think a long time’
**ts’yáŋ** ‘be satisfied (food)’

(95) **k’ámíší**
**fí-kì**
**fùr-t’-áb**
**yèšhtə əŋgə**
dress 3FS-DAT trade-PASS-REL for much

**yf=kaa₃u-k-ə**
3FS = be.happy-REAL-STI

‘she was very happy because a dress was bought for her.’

With the verbs **3ágú** ‘be good’ (also ‘nice, convenient, beautiful, OK’ etc.) and **jeen** ‘be bad’ (also ‘evil, inferior, awful, unpleasant’, etc.) the experiencer of the good or bad is in the
dative. Alternatively, the referents can be conceptualised as Recipients of the ‘good’ or ‘bad’.

(96) **na-ŋ aáązár=á-kí-k nata ífí-bàáb**
    1SG-DAT be.good-NEG = 3MS-exist-REAL  1SG  3PL.POSS-father

**noogà-ra ífí=ýáə-rí-bàá-b-a ãngã**
word-ACC  3PL = be.able-IRR-father-ACC  much

m=bàá-kl-k-ə
1SG = want-exist-REAL-STI

‘I don’t like it. I want very much that they can (speak) their fathers’ language.’ (Lit. it is not good to me…)

(97) **bándú ífí-kh 3až-áb kóókí-kâ**
    Bandu  3PL-DAT be.good-REL  place-IN

ífí=kl-ə
3PL = exist-IRR-STI

‘The Bandu live at a place they like/ a place which is convenient for them.’

The organ associated most with feelings and (lack of) judgement is the stomach, although góon ‘heart’ is also mentioned. In (98), bów ‘stomach, belly’ is combined with the verb jéen ‘to be bad’. The dative in this example marks the possessor of the stomach. Two further examples of the use of bów ‘stomach, belly’ are given in the ideomatic expressions in (99)-(100).

(98) **aáftú-te yí=tóγá-kâ sòk’-kl-h n=sag-h**
    be.drunk-SS  3FS = mud-IN  lie.down-exist-DS  1SG = see-DS

**na-ŋ bów-kâ yí=jéén-k-ə**
1SG-DAT  belly-IN  3FS = be.bad-REAL-STI

‘Seeing a drunken woman lying down in the mud I felt bad.’ (Lit: …I saw her; she was bad in my stomach.)

(99) **yááβ ás-kh bów ífí=káaf-k-ə**
    man  3MS-DAT belly  3PL = cover-REAL-STI

‘people deceived him’
400

(100) bōw án-á-kī-b
   belly put-NEG2-exist-REL
   ‘idiot’ (someone without a stomach)

In addition, example (101) features an (old?) idiomatic expression:

(101) na-ŋ buunl-k’a há=woots’u-k-ə
   1SG-DAT body-IN 3MS= bite-REAL-STI
   ‘I am sorry, sad’ (Lit: it bites in my body. buunl is said to be an old word for body, cf. faad ‘body’.)

‘Hot’ and ‘cold’ are also used to express feeling. The extent of this use is not known at present. Two examples are given in (102) and (103).

(102) m-bank’a 45 há=saru-k-ə
   1SG-ON-IN 3MS= be.hot-REAL-STI
   ‘It is hot on me.’ (Context: the eldest brother sends the younger brother away because of his strength.)

(103) bādīgn na-ŋ ats-ə
   Badign shoes 1SG-DAT give-STI
   n=ge-k’dor-ə jiip’a yi=taaf-k-ə
   1SG=say-beg-DS IDEO 3FS=cool.down-REAL-STI
   ‘I begged saying “Badign, give me the shoes,” but she refused flatly.’ (e.g. Badign does not allow herself compassion with the one who begged.)

Finally, a calque from Amharic tā-sāmma (PASS-hear ‘feel’) is also employed:

(104) fi=ʃey-b-əra na-ŋ āng=á sīs-tū-kī-k
   3PL=forget-REL-ACC 1SG-DAT much = 3MS hear-PASS-exist-REAL
   ‘I am very sorry that they forgot it.’

45 variant of m-batə 1SG.POSS-on
13 Interrogatives

Omotic languages display a rich array of interrogative strategies, some of which are typologically rare. They display four major means to distinguish between declaratives and interrogatives. First, change of intonation and a interrogative (or declarative) sentence type marker, such as e.g. in Maale. Some languages have interrogative suffixes or intonation next to other distinctive strategies, for instance Yemsa, Diizi, Dime and Sheko. Secondly, special interrogative paradigms, i.e. the declarative and interrogative have each a distinct set of morphemes co-varying for person, gender and number. This is the case in Benchnon and Ometo languages such as Wolaita. Yemsa has a special paradigm for future tense. Thirdly, “subtractive morphology” or dropping off of grammatical elements which are obligatorily present in the declarative. The element that is dropped to form the interrogative varies from language to language. In Zaye and Zargulla, the grammatical focus marker -tte is dropped. In Dime, the final person agreement marker is dropped; for first and third persons, absence of person agreement signals interrogative, while for second persons a dedicated interrogative marker -aa is used. Dime uses rising intonation in interrogatives as well. In Sheko, the modal marker is dropped. Absence of a modal marker is one of three ways to distinguish between interrogatives and their declarative counterparts in Sheko. Finally, Diizi interrogatives have not only question markers attached to the verb, but also employ person agreement prefixes, whereas corresponding declarative clauses use suffixes.

Turning to the details of Sheko interrogative formation, the interrogative in Sheko is characterized by one or more of the following:
- absence of a modal marker. A modal marker is obligatory in declaratives.

---

40 The project in which research for this thesis took place aimed at a typological overview of the way Omotic languages deal with the declarative - interrogative distinction, taking up the challenge of Hayward (1995) to investigate unique interrogative phenomena in Omotic. Data from a earlier project on Dime and Zargulla and from the subproject on Sheko fed into the comparative research. The short overview given here is based on a report of the principal investigator of the project, Azeb Amha.
the indirect stance marker -ö, which occurs only in vocatives and interrogatives. The indirect stance marker -ö occurs in declaratives.

- falling intonation on the last tone bearing unit. While most languages have an intonation with a final rise for interrogatives, Sheko has the reverse.

After discussing each of the points above in three sections, with illustrative graphs in the section on intonation, interrogative pronouns are presented, as well as some alternative ways to render embedded questions.

13.1 Absence of a modal marker
Interrogatives have no modal marker. The absence of a modal marker may be the only indication that the utterance is a question (this does not apply to simple negated verb forms and negated copulas, see below). The absence of a modal marker thus distinguishes between declaratives and interrogatives (1a,b). Note that a stance marker may follow as the last element of the verb form, as in (2a,b), (see further section 13.2 below).

(1) a. \( \eta = m\ddot{a}k-\ddot{a} \)
   \( 1SG = \text{tell-put[q]} \)
   ‘shall I tell?’

b. \( \eta = m\ddot{a}k-\ddot{a}m \)
   \( 1SG = \text{tell-put-IRR} \)
   ‘I will tell’

(2) a. \( yfr = \eta \quad m\ddot{a}k-\ddot{o} \)
   \( \text{what} = 1SG \quad \text{tell-put-STL ADDR} \)
   ‘What shall I tell?’

b. tōśa \( \eta = m\ddot{a}k-\ddot{a}m-\ddot{o} \)
   \( \text{story} \quad 1SG = \text{tell-put-IRR-STI} \)
   ‘I will tell a story’

Below, examples are given for polar (yes/no) questions (3)-(4) as well as wh-questions (5), and (6) features a copula as verb. For comparison, matching declaratives are also given.
(3) a. ʊnà ʂòkù tuurù-k’à tš’ádh primaryKey=á
   long.ago S’oku land-IN war exist=3MS[q]
   ‘In the past, has there been war in Sheko?’

   b. ʊnà ʂòkù tuurù-k’à tš’ádh
   long.ago S’oku land-IN war
   primaryKey=á-k-o
   exist = 3MS-REAL-STI
   ‘In the past, there has been war in Sheko.’

(4) a. ɡābā-k’a ʃtí=tá-g-á
   market-IN 2PL = go-put[q]
   ‘Will you (pl) go to the market?’

   b. tóg-én-k’y-á-m-o
      go-NEG.1PL-remain-put-IRR-STI
   ‘We won’t go.’

(5) a. ʃtí=ge-b kày nā=á há=ki
   2PL = say-REL god where = 3MS 3MS = exist[q]
   ‘What you call god, where is he?’

   b. ʃtí=ge-b kày só há=ki-m-o
      2PL = say-REL god up.there 3MS = exist-IRR-STI
   ‘What you call god, he might be up there.’

(6) a. ye-kh ʂóón kááy tə
   2SG-DAT heart be.not COP[q]
   ‘Where is your courage/common sense?’ (Lit: Is your heart not there?)

   b. yfr-be kááy tə-kn
      what-mother be.not COP-KNOWN
   ‘There is nothing.’

The interrogative shares its feature of not having a modal marker with the Imperative-Jussive, even though in interrogatives, the tone on the verb stem distinguishes between Factual and Non-Factual/ Basic. Both sentence types have in common that a reaction of the addressee is expected. Attempting an interpretation of the Sheko data, it is clear that an interrogative asks for information on a constituent or on the
modal status of the proposition, instead of giving this information. An interrogative thus looks for assertion from the addressee. The absence of a modal marker in interrogatives is therefore a meaningful gap. The interrogative has corresponding ‘declaratives’ which can affirm information. On the other hand, the imperative asks for action of the addressee rather than a verbal response. With an Imperative, one does not evaluate or assert a proposition but one gives a directive for the addressee to follow up.

13.2 Stance marking in interrogatives

Next to absence of the modal marker, there is an indirect stance marker -ơ which occurs only in interrogatives and vocatives, i.e. the types of utterance asking (giving opportunity) for a verbal response of the addressee. The interrogatives displaying the distinctive stance marker are usually Non-factual verb forms, i.e. Irrealis, although an example with a Factual form has also been found (9). (The distinction between Factual and Non-factual verb forms is made on the verb stem by a tonal distinction, see section 10.3). The interrogatives which end with the stance marker -ơ can be polite questions which leave the addressee free in the way he wants to answer (7), or rhetorical questions (8). When -ơ is suffixed, the falling intonation indicating interrogativeness is not present. In Irrealis verb forms, the suffix -a ‘put’ is often dropped before the stance marker -ơ as well.

(7) kāraī saantā yīs koosū-ra ite māa-k-ơ
toward front.loc DIST.M tradition-ACC who:COP tell-STL.ADDR

‘Who will tell this traditional wisdom in the future?’

(8) a. kāy-ǭs m-p’eept-ǭb-

god-DEF-M 1PL.PESS-pray-REL-ACC

hā = sfīs-ơ

3MS = listen-STL.ADDR

‘Will God listen to our prayers?’

b. hā = sfīs-ā-m-ǭ

3MS = listen-put-IRR-STI

‘he will listen’
(9) \( yí = níní \quad yowk'á \quad m\text{-baad-h-s} \)
\[ \text{3fs = elder.sister} \quad \text{INTJ} \quad \text{1sg.poss-younger.sibling-def-m} \]
\( yír\text{-}k' = á \quad sàmù\text{-}kl\text{-}o \quad ge\text{-}tá \)
\[ \text{what-in = 3ms} \quad \text{remain-exist-stlador} \quad \text{say-ss} \]
\( yí = tée\text{-}kl\text{-}baástá \)
\[ \text{3fs = go.nv-exist-while} \]

‘The sister said ‘Well, what is my brother stuck up in?’ and while she went, …’

Note that the stance marker is not compulsory. The choice for a stance marker depends on the attitude of the speaker with respect to his utterance and is pragmatic (see section 10.2). The stance marker may be phonetically lengthened to signal a greater degree of distance (e.g. in showing bewilderment).

(10) a. \( áás = n \quad bāg\text{-}á \)
\[ \text{what = 1sg} \quad \text{work-put} \]
‘How shall I do it?’ (Context: simple inquiry.)

b. \( áás = n \quad bāg\text{-}á\text{-}o \)
\[ \text{what = 1sg} \quad \text{work-put-stlador} \]
‘How shall I do it?’ (Context: may signal uncertainty or politeness, or speaker repeats his question.)

-o also functions to question noun phrases. In these cases, the indirect stance marker makes the difference between interrogatives and other sentence types. Compare the NPs in (11) and (12). While the stance marker -o is used to question the noun phrase \( kū\text{ür}n\text{-}n\text{-}s\text{-}kà n\text{-}s\text{-}o \quad \text{göön-n-s-o} \quad \text{há = ge-ñ} \)
rise-ss donkey-def-m-dat heart-def-m-stladder 3ms = say-ss
‘he rose and said: “What about the heart of the donkey?”…’

(11) \( n\text{-}záårà \quad \text{gootà(-o)} \)
\[ \text{1pl.poss-clan Gootà(-sti)} \]
‘Our clan is Gootà.’

(12) \( k\text{ay-}t\text{a} kū\text{ür-n-s-kà n-s-o} \quad \text{göön-n-s-o} \quad \text{há = ge-ñ} \)
rise-ss donkey-def-m-dat heart-def-m-stladder 3ms = say-ss
‘he rose and said: “What about the heart of the donkey?”…’
13.3 **Intonational contour in interrogatives**

In clauses with a simple negated verb form or negated copula, the last tone bearing unit has a falling tone. In these clauses, the tonal contour is the only indication of the status of the utterance as interrogative. The falling intonation is notated in this chapter by a downward arrow \(\downarrow\).\(^7\)

(13)  

a.  
\text{māk-ārā}\, \downarrow  
\text{tell-NEG.Q}  
‘He didn’t tell?’

b.  
\text{māk-ārā}  
\text{tell-NEG}  
‘he didn’t tell’

(14)  
\text{fūr-t'-ērē}\, \downarrow  
\text{trade-PASS-NEG.STL.Q}  
‘It has not been bought?’ (Context: talking about a lack of salt.)

(15)  
\text{ye-khē tē-rē}\, \downarrow  
\text{2SG-DAT COP-NEG.STL.Q}  
‘is it not yours?’

The falling tone can appear in every other type of question, also those not containing a negative. Examples (16)-(18) illustrate an open question (with a content question word), an interrogative with a complex negated verb form, and one with no verb at all. However, the tonal indication of interrogativeness in these types of questions may disappear in fluent speech, and it always disappears before the stance marker, which is -o in interrogatives (19).

(16)  
\text{nā = a tee}\, \downarrow  
\text{where = 2SG go.NV.Q}  
‘where did you go?’

---

\(^7\) In the other chapters, it is notated through tone 1 and the gloss .Q where tone 1 is distinctive, and the gloss [Q] in all other cases.
(17)  
\[ iy\text{-}k\text{`a} \quad 2y\text{`ard}\text{-}\text{\textbar} = \text{itf}\text{-}k\text{`y}\text{-}\text{\textbar} \]  
house-IN  
enter-NEG = 2PL-remain-put.Q  
‘Won’t you enter the house?’

(18)  
\[ n\text{at}\text{-}n\text{\textbar} \]  
1sg-or  
‘Me?’ (Context: reaction to a call: ‘You’re addressing me, aren’t you?’)

(19)  
\[ w\text{o}sk\text{\textbar}in \quad ha = y\text{o}g\text{-}\text{\textbar}o \]  
when  
2sg = come-put-stl.addr  
‘When will you come?’

Below, three graphs are presented. The first graph illustrates the falling intonation. The graph shows the underlined part of the sentence in (20), uttered by a male speaker. It is clearly visible that the contour on the syllable k\text{`y\text{`a}} gets at least as low as the tone 1 on h\text{-}bat\text{\textbar} ‘on him’.

(20)  
\[ g\text{\textbar}t\text{\textbar} \quad h\text{\textbar}a\text{\textbar}s \quad h\text{-}bat\text{\textbar} \]  
stick  
PROX.M  
3MS.Poss-on.LOC  
\[ b\text{\textbar}r\text{-}\text{\textbar}r = a\text{-}k\text{`y}\text{-}\text{\textbar} \]  
throw.away-NEG = 2MS-remain-put.Q  
\[ y\text{\textbar} = ge\text{-}t = \text{\textbar} \]  
3FS = say-ss = 3FS  
\[ z\text{\textbar}e\text{\textbar}r\text{\textbar}h \]  
advise-DS  
‘she advised him saying: “Won’t you throw this stick on him?” ’
Graph 1. Interrogatives: falling intonation.

The second graph, with an utterance from another male speaker, also shows a clause with a non-factual (Irrealis) verb form. It is evident that there is no falling contour in the utterance.

(21) gyämū nā = a ūm-á
    evening where = 2sg eat-put[0]
    ‘Where will you eat in the evening?’
Graph 2. Interrogatives: no falling intonation.

The third graph shows a question ending in the indirect stance marker -o, uttered by the same speaker that gave the first example. Around about 2.2 seconds, the tone stays level for a while, before the following clause starts.

(22) yír=n  ye-kh  mít-n-o  yí=ge-h
    what = 1SG  2SG-DAT  witness-STLADDR  3FS = say-DS
    ‘ “What could I say in favour of you?” she said;...’
Graph 3. Interrogatives: with stance marker

Interestingly, the Guraferda variant of Sheko has segmental question markers, namely -à and ne. Apparently, ne only occurs in open questions (23), whereas -à occurs in open questions (24) as well as polar questions (25). It is possible that the falling tonal intonation of the Sheko variants spoken around Sheko town is related to -à. Diizi has segmental question markers as well (Beachy 2005:106f).

(23) \textit{yfr} = \textit{\textsc{n}} & \textit{geto} & \textit{\textsc{n} = an-ki-ne} \\
what = 1SG & say-ss & 1SG = put-exist-oq \\

‘What can I say?’

(24) \textit{ant-anta} & \textit{a = ?e-t = a} & \textit{wu?-à} \\
RDP-how/where & 2SG = do.NV-ss = 2SG & enter-q \\

‘How did you enter?’
(25)  á = jëen-à  yī = ge-n
       3MS = be.bad-q  3FS = say-ds

‘Is/was it bad?’ she said

Finally, the alternative conjunction -ná (~ -nà) is used in questions giving a choice (26). Also, -ná is used to ask for confirmation (27). The expected answer is a ‘yes’.

(26)  bëngi  ás-kh  gatsu  fyáádí-ka-ná  zírkú-ka-ná
       year  3MS-DAT  start number-WITH-or time-WITH-or

?yáts’ú-ka  fí = t’ùús-kí  yī = ge-t = í
       moon-WITH  3PL = know-exist[¿]  3FS = say-SS = 3FS

bádign  ootj’u-k-ë
Badign  ask-REAL-STI

‘Badign asked “Do they know the start of the year by counting or by day or by the moon?”’

(27)  n-k’øy-ná
       1SG.POSS-one-or

‘On my own?’ (i.e. ‘Should I do this on my own?’)

13.4 Interrogative pronouns
The basic question words are listed in (28).

(28)  ítì  ‘who’
       yírá  ‘what’
       nā  ‘where’
       áás  ‘how’
       gëbhë  ‘how much’

Here are a few sentential examples:

(29)  kíra  ye-kn  yír = á  há = ?atsù
       bird.of.prey  2SG-DAT  what = 3MS  3MS = give[¿]

‘What did the kíra bird give you?’

(30)  há = byáasë  k’ay-ë  áás = h  n = ?ëg-ë
       3MS = crocodile  rise-SS  how = 1SG  1SG = do-STL.ADDR

‘the crocodile rose and (said): “What (Lit: how) shall I do?…” ’
The word for ‘which?’ is built on nā ‘where’ with a proximal demonstrative following it.

(31) \[ ha = b\ddot{a}a\-\ddot{s}-\mathsf{k\ddot{i}}-\mathsf{b} \quad n\ddot{a}\ddot{a}-\ddot{s}-\mathsf{t\ddot{o}} \]
\[
2SG = \text{want-exist-REL} \quad \text{where.PROX-COP[Q]}
\]
‘which one do you want?’ (Lit: the one you want is which?)

(32) \[ n\ddot{a}-\ddot{a}-\ddot{s}-\mathsf{t} = \mathsf{n} \quad \mathsf{n} = \text{t\ddot{e}-\ddot{e}-\mathsf{t} = \mathsf{n}} \quad \text{t\ddot{f\ddot{\ddot{a}}r\ddot{u}}r} \]
\[
\text{where-PROX.M-COP = 1SG} \quad 1SG-go.NV-SS = 1SG \quad \text{medicine}
\]
\[ y\ddot{\mathfrak{a}}\ddot{f}-\mathsf{o} \quad \text{ge-b-t\ddot{a}} \]
\[
\text{find-STLADIR} \quad \text{say-REL-LOC}
\]
‘when he said: “Which (way) can I go and obtain a medicine?”...’

Several options are available to ask about time. One is to use a word referring to a time period, such as bókñ ‘day’ (33a), or a loanword from Amharic such as k’en ‘day’, gize ‘time’, or saati ‘hour’. Another way is to use a word that Sheko has presumably in common with (or borrowed from) Benchnon (b). In Guraferda yet another word is used, which is clearly compounded (c).

(33) a. \[ y\ddot{f}r-bókñ \]
\[
\text{what-time[Q]}
\]
‘when?’

b. \[ w\ddot{o}sk\ddot{e}n \]
\[
\text{(cf. Bench w\ddot{o}sk\ddot{e}n ‘when?’)}
\]
c. \[ antakyaasta \]
\[
\text{(Guraferda, tone not known)}
\]

With additional case marking, other question words can be made, e.g. suffixing the dative marker -\text{kñ} to iti gives itúkñ ‘whose?’, suffixing the object marker -\text{ra} gives itíra ‘whom?’, and so forth. Below some examples with yírñ ‘what?’:

(34) \[ y\ddot{f}r-\ddot{\mathfrak{e}}\ddot{\mathfrak{s}}\ddot{h}t\ddot{a} \quad y\ddot{f} = \text{ba\ddot{t}}\ddot{s}-\mathsf{t\ddot{u}} \]
\[
\text{what-MOTIVE} \quad 3FS = \text{voice.anger.Q}
\]
‘Why is she angry?’
(35) **sāāyā yīr-kh-tā**  
_what-DAT-COP.Q_  
‘What is the story about?’

_yīr-a_ ‘what’ does not get an accusative marker, not even when it is used as object. When _əra_ is added, it conveys annoyance. It is analysed in this case as the short form of the inclusive marker.

(36) **yīr-əra**  
_what-INCL_  
‘What (on earth is it that you bother me)?’

The combination of a question word with the inclusive marker _k'əra_ ‘also, even’ yields indefinite pronominal expressions, or ‘polarity items’. Interrogative-based indefinite pronouns are common cross-linguistically (Haspelmath 1997:26). Two examples are given in (37)-(38). In combination with negation an interpretation as negative indefinite arises (39)-(41). See also section 14.4.

(37) **yīr-a-k'əra  há=fōt-htà  n=ōōtʃ-á-m-ə**  
_what-INCL_  _3MS = happen-COND_  _1SG = ask-put-IRR-STI_  
‘I will ask any question.’ (Lit. whatever it be, I’ll ask.)

(38) **iṭi-k'əra  há=yàg-htà**  
_who-INCL_  _3MS = come-COND_  
‘if anybody comes,…/ whoever comes,…’

(39) **gōnà nā-k'arà tēe-n-kl-k-ə**  
_yesterday_  _where-INCL_  _go.NV-NEG.1SG-exist-REAL-STI_  
‘I didn’t go anywhere yesterday.’

(40) **yīr-bānà-k'arà  bās-én-kl-k-ə**  
_what-matter-INCL_  _want-NEG.1SG-exist-REAL-STI_  
‘I don’t want anything whatsoever.’

(41) **iṭi-ra-k'arà  sēe-n-kl-k**  
_who-ACC-INCL_  _see.NV-NEG.1SG-exist-REAL_  
‘I didn’t see anybody/I saw nobody.’
13.5 ‘Embedded questions’
Sheko does not have true embedded questions. The language employs various other constructions to render what would be an embedded question in an European language. First of all, Sheko prefers quotes, i.e. a direct question plus a medial verb (gé ‘say’).

(42) há=gama te-k-ə ge-tə
    3MS=true COP-REAL-STI say-SS
    ‘he said: “It is true, ” and he...’ (saying/thinking that it was true, he...)

In a few instances, a question word occurs in a complement clause complementised by -ḥtà (see also section 11.5.6).

(43) ḥāay na-ŋ̠ ats-ə ge-ki-b  iti  há=ta-ḥtà
    water  1SG-DAT give-STI say-exist-REL who  3MS=COP-COND
    ha=t’ūūs-ḥtà
    2SG=know-COND
    ‘If you knew who it is that said “Give me water,”...’

(44) nā=τa  ff=tāg-ḥtà  t’ūūs-en-k’e-k-ə
    where=COP  3PL=go-COND know-NEG.1SG-remain-REAL-STI
    ‘I didn’t know where they went.’

(45) iti-ka  daan yəg-ḥtàsəg=ə
    who-WITH together come-COND  see=2SG,0
    ‘Did you see with whom he came?’

For yes-no questions, various strategies appear to be possible: example (46) shows a clause with an Irrealis verb form nominalised by baab ‘father’; example (47) two clauses in -ḥtà and example (48) two Jussives. The first came up more or less spontaneously in elicitation. The latter two examples are elicited using Amharic example sentences. The structure closely follows the Amharic stimulus; however, my informants judged it proper Sheko.
(46)  bērn  tēé-r = ʃʃl-k-ità  kōm-s
tomorrow  go.NV-NEG = 3PL-exist-COND  chief.DEF-M
māak-ʃ-n-baàb-ara  t'ūūs-ähr = ʃʃl-k'y-á-m-ə
tell-IRR-father-ACC  know-NEG = 3PL-remain-IRR-STI
‘If they don’t go tomorrow, they won’t know whether the chief will
tell.’

(47)  há-bààs-ità  bās-år = á-kl-ità  t’ūūs = a-kl
3MS = want-COND  want-NEG-3MS-exist-COND  know = 2SG-exist[ŋ]
‘Do you know whether he wants or not?’

(48)  hā = ?útú-ši-ə  út-år = a-kl-ə
2SG = love-exist-STI  love-NEG = 2SG-exist-STI
hā = fōd-hità  t’ūūs-ën-kl-k
3MS = become-COND  know-NEG.1SG-exist-REAL
‘I don’t know whether you like it or not.’
14 Negation

Sheko has a negative existential verb kááy ‘be not there’ and two verbal negation markers, which I have dubbed event negation marker (-ara) and state negation marker (-p). Negated verbs lack TAM and person distinctions, unless an auxiliary predicate is added (complex negative). In addition, the way in which Sheko expresses ‘never’ and ‘nothing other than’ is described here.

14.1 Negative verb of existence

The existential verb kí ‘exist, live’ has a negative counterpart kááy ‘be not there, be not present’. A stance marker can be suffixed to the negated form. There is no subject agreement and no aspect/mood marking in negated existential predicates (1b).

(1)  a.  áheê  kí = á-k-ô
    yes  exist = 3MS-REAL-STI
    ‘Yes, it is there.’

  b.  á?áá  kááy-ô
    no  be.not-STI
    ‘No, it is not there.’

14.2 Event negation

The event negation marker is -ara ~ -əra. It suffices to the verb stem. The verb form negated by -ara can form an utterance by itself and is called a simple negative here. A simple negative followed by an auxiliary predicate is called a complex negative.

14.2.1 Simple negatives

Simple negated verb forms in Sheko consist of the verb stem followed by -ara ~ -əra. The tone on the negative suffix is identical to the tone of the preceding verb stem. If the indirect stance marker -ô follows, the vowels of the negative suffix and stance marker are changed into -e. Example (2) illustrates verbs without and (3) verbs with a stance marker. As with the negative verb of existence, there is no subject clitic, nor any aspectual or modal marking on a simple negated verb form.
(2) sffs-árá ‘not listen’  
káas-árá ‘not play’

(3) sffs-êrêe ‘not listen’  
káas-êrêe ‘not play’

Here are two sentential examples:

(4) šāād-ñ-s    sàm = á-k-ô  
dîr-t’-árá
pond-DEF-M  remain.behind = 3MS-REAL-STI  
sweep-PASS-NEG
‘The pond went out of use. It has not been cleaned.’

(5) tîmhîrt    gâd = ñîl
education(Amh)  start = 3PL[q]
‘Have they started school?’  
kâtîja  gâd-êrêe
yet  start-NEG.STI
‘They haven’t started yet.’

Out of context, a simple negative is interpreted first as a realis,  
e.g. bās-árá ‘(he) did not work/ has not worked’, but a simple  
negative can occur in irrealis contexts as well (6b).

(6) a. yî-bay    ññ-kû  yî = gâts'ñ-à
3FS.POSS-mother  3FS-DAT  3FS = help-put.Q
‘Will her mother help her?’

b. gâts'ñ-árá  yîr = î  yî = gâts'ñ-à
help-NEG  what = 3FS  3FS = help-put[Q]
‘She won’t help. Why (what) would she help?’

Equational sentences with the copula are negated by adding  
the negation marker plus indirect stance marker (-êrêe) to the  
copula.

(7) a. n-naanu    to-k-ô
1SG.POSS-elder.brother  COP-REAL-STI
‘It is my elder brother.’
b. n-naanu té-rée
t1sg.poss-elder.brother cop-NEG,STI

‘It is not my elder brother.’

To question a simple negative declarative or a copula, only the final falling intonation (marked here by tone 1 on the last tone bearing unit) marks it as an interrogative, as in the (a) examples; or else an auxiliary predicate is added, as in the (b) examples (see complex negatives below). For some speakers, the negated copula [ téréë ] can be pronounced [ tīrī ].

(8) a. fūr-t'-ārà
trade-PASS-NEG,Q

‘Has it not been bought?’

b. fūr-t'-ār = á-kī
trade-PASS-NEG = 3ms-exist,Q

‘Has it not been bought?’

(9) a. áz ha-naanu té-rēë
3ms 2sg.poss-elder.brother cop-NEG,STI,Q

‘Is he not your brother?’

b. áz ha-naanu té-rē
3ms 2sg.poss-elder.brother cop-NEG,STI

kī (= ā)
e Exist( = 3ms),Q

‘Is he not your brother?’

14.2.2 Complex negatives

The simple negated form of the verb is often followed by a second auxiliary predicate, comprising a subject clitic, a verb denoting aspect and a clause or sentence type marker. The verbs occurring as the second predicate are restricted to Imperfective kī ‘exist, live’ and Perfective kē ‘remain’, as well as the Irrealis suffix -a ‘put’. Since the information in this second predicate consists of grammatical notions such as TAM and person, I call it an auxiliary predicate.

The auxiliary predicate may be more or less integrated to the negated verb, because the subject clitic is attracted by the
negation and encliticizes to the negated form (cf. section 15.2.3). Examples are given below. In (10), a Realis predicate follows the negated verb form. Depending on the context, it can be translated by any of the following: ‘I do/did not listen, am/was not listening, have not listened’. The list in (11) shows the contracted (more integrated) form. In these forms, the last vowel of the negative marker is dropped when it is followed by a subject marker starting with a vowel; in the first person the negative marker and subject marker merge to -en- or -n.

(10)   sís-árá  n=kl-k-a  ‘I do not listen’
sís-árá  ha=kl-k-a  ‘you do not listen’
sís-árá  há=kl-k-a  ‘he does not listen’
sís-árá  yi=kl-k-a  ‘she does not listen’
sís-árá  n=kl-k-a  ‘we do not listen’
sís-árá  fí=kl-k-a  ‘you do not listen’
sís-árá  fí=kl-k-a  ‘they do not listen’

(11)   sís-en-kl-k-a  ‘I do not listen’
sís-ár=a-kl-k-a  ‘you do not listen’
sís-ár=ā-kl-k-a  ‘he does not listen’
sís-ár=i-kl-k-a  ‘she does not listen’
sís-én-kl-k-a  ‘we do not listen’
sís-én=fí-kl-k-a  ‘you do not listen’
sís-ár=fí=kl-k-a  ‘they do not listen’

Here are some sentential examples from spontaneous discourse. Note that the complex negative can be a final verb (12), medial verb (13) or subordinate verb (14) in accordance with the clause marker on the auxiliary predicate.

(12)   k’óy  k’erá  sís-árá=f-kl-k-a
one-ELAT INCL listen-NEG = 3PS-exist-REAL-STI

‘She doesn’t understand anything (of the language).’

(13)   gōtá  yááf-árá=f-kl-n  há=kār-k’a  kób-tee-ta
night find-NEG = 3PS-exist-DS  3MS = forest-IN  take-go-NV-SS

‘...at midnight she did not notice; he took them into the forest...’
(14) bahš-š yīs bāš-t-ērē hā = k’e-ḥtā
slaughter-DEF-M DIST.M slaughter-PASS-NEG.STI 3MS = remain-COND

tūrū batā yāgīm-bābāb gaydu yīr-tā
land on.LOC come-IRR-father problem what-COP.Q
‘If those are not/would not be slaughtered any more, what are the problems which would hit the land?’

The subject clitic follows the negated verb in most cases. It is also possible that the subject clitic of the auxiliary predicate occurs preceding the negative (15).

(15) yēntš’ā hā = āāt-ārā kī-ḥtā m-ārā
avoidance 3MS = hold-NEG exist-COND eat-NEG

3MS = remain-IRR-STI
‘If he did not avoid sexual contact, he could not eat (the milk at that time).’

Since the second (auxiliary) predicate provides information about aspect and mood, it can be used to assert (16) or to weaken (17) the negated statement. (Recall that the verb-plus-negator is sufficient in itself.) The following sentence is from the story of the Samaritan woman who has an encounter with Jesus. He asked her to give him water, although Jews in Jesus’ time didn’t want to associate with Samaritans at all. The addition of kīkā ‘it is’ asserts that the part ‘water was not the problem’ holds true.

(16) kōmtā hā = fōd’t-āb-ērā hā = māāk-ū ēīḥtā
king 3MS = become-REL-ACC 3MS = tell-PURP MOTIVE

hā = bās-kā hāāy gāydu té-rē kī-kā
3MS = want-REAL-STI water problem COP-NEG.STI exist-REAL-STI
‘He wanted to tell that he is king. Water was not the problem.’

Likewise, the use of the Irrealis in example (17) casts some doubt on kāy ‘not there’ by not asserting it.

(17) kāy yī = kī-mā
be.not 3FS = exist-IRR-STI
‘She is probably not there/She might be absent.’
Finally, Prohibitives or negative Imperatives consist of a negative followed by an Imperative verb form of k'ē ‘remain’, as in example (18)-(19). See section 4.3.2 for more information on affirmative Imperatives.

(18) māāk-ārā k'ē-ə
      tell-NEG remain-STI
   ‘Don’t tell!’

(19) má =n fikūs-ñ k'ēēts'-ārā
      earlier.today =1sg prepare.CAUS-DS take.apart-NEG
      k'ē-yt
      remain-PL.ADIR
   ‘I just fixed it, don’t take it off! (pl)’ (Context: men were putting wooden handles on iron tools.)

14.3 State negation
The negation marker -n has the same tone as the preceding tone bearing unit. Semantically, it functions in contexts which refer to more time-stable concepts, e.g. in the description of properties and states. However, the clause type may account for (part of) the semantics as well, since all examples up to (25) feature relative clauses. In contrast to -ora, the marker -n needs a following auxiliary predicate, as illustrated below, and always occurs in a complex negative.

(20) a. áz t'ūūs-ārā
      3MS know-NEG
   ‘he doesn’t know’

     b. *áz t'ūūs-ñ
      3MS know-NEG2
   ‘he doesn’t know’

In example (21)-(22), intrinsic properties of individuals are referred to.
(21) ás-kù ááb ság-ṇ̌-kl-b bār-ṇ̌-s-ạ́b
   3MS-DAT eye see-NEG2-exist-REL be.blind-DEF-M-REL
tá-k-ɔ
   COP-REAL-STI
   ‘One whose eye doesn’t see is a blind person.’

(22) bōw án-ṇ̌-ky-ạ́b-kù há = bōw āškù
    belly put-NEG2-exist-REL-DAT 3MS = belly meat
   āst = á há = kōb-t = á iy
give.PASS = 3MS 3MS = take-SS = 3MS house
duuru-k’ɔ ʔyàrdù-k-ɔ
deserted.place-IN enter-REAL-STI
   ‘To him who has no stomach (a fool) the meat of the stomach
   (worthless entrails) was given; he took (accepted) it and entered a
   deserted house (without cooking facilities).’  (Proverb emphasizing
   stupidity)

The examples (23)-(25) illustrate that the properties or states
characterize the entity that they refer to. For example, the
leaders which are referred to in example (23) habitually do not
have people from the Bandu clan living on their lands. The
form ănṇ̌kib would not be used for a leader who had only
temporarily no Bandus, but at other times would have them. In
other words, the negation marker -ŋ̣ is used to present a state
of affairs as a (time-stable) state.

(23) bāndũú án-ṇ̌-kl-b kōmtũ-s háǎk’astã
    Bandu put-NEG2-exist-REL chief-PL now
   ŋ̣ = fādũ-t’-ạ́  s里斯 = štũ-k-ɔ
   3PL = count-PASS-DS hear = 2PL-REAL-STI
   ‘You just heard the chiefs who do not maintain Bandus be counted.’

(24) žirkũ t’ũũs-ṇ̌-kl-b sũkũ ŋ̣ = tũtũs-ạ̌-m-ə
    time know-NEG2-exist-REL rope 3PL = knot-put-IBR-STI
   ‘Those who did not know time (did not use a calendar) knotted a
   rope.’
(25) ṣòį baatį án-an-kli-b tēngį bātā
cow skin put-NEG-exist-REL tree.sp on.LOC

ṣį = sōk’ū-kli-b-ǐs
3PL = lie.down-exist-REL-DIST.M
‘those who didn’t have a cow hide, that they slept on tengį bark…’

-ṇ can also be used with non-relative verb forms, but impressionistically this is infrequent. When I elicited negative optatives, example (27) was given as an alternative to (26). Another context in which both negators are attested is given in sentences (28)-(29). Further research should establish the exact semantic or structural difference between the two verbal negators.

(26) n-gāgi bey-h-s-khá kārū bōt-ārā
1SG.POSS-revenge mother-DEF-M-DAT strength become-NEG

k'y = á-s-ə
remain = 3MS-OPT-STI
‘May my enemy have no strength’

(27) n-gāgi bey-h-s-khá kārū bōt-ə
1SG.POSS-revenge mother-DEF-M-DAT strength become-NEG2

k'y = á-s-ə
remain = 3MS-OPT-STI
‘May my enemy have no strength’

(28) baasa tō-n-kli-t =á tə'ūkn tə
Baasa COP-NEG2-exist-ss =3MS X'ukn COP

yēē-k-ə
come.NV-REAL-STI
‘It was not Baasa but X’ukn who came.’

(29) badign tō-r =i-kli-ə boorí tə
Badign COP-NEG =3S-exist-ds Boori COP

yēē-k-ə
come.NV-REAL-STI
‘It was not Badign but Boori who came.’
Finally, here is a rare example of the negation marker -n with more eventive verbs, from spontaneous discourse:

(30) áz kāy ãs-k’ā jîf-m-ki-ḥtā
    3MS god 3MS-IN add-NEG2-exist-COND.CONT

kāy ãz-k’ā ár-ń-ki-ḥtā yîrâ-be
    god 3MS-IN think-NEG2-exist-COND what-mother

fōót-ń-bāb kááy
    become-IRR-father be.not

‘...if he, if God does not add on it, if God does not approve of it, nothing whatsoever will happen.’

14.4 Negative polarity and ‘nothing other than’
To express negative polarity, Sheko uses indefinite pronominals together with negation on the verb. The indefinite pronominals are formed by adding the inclusive marker k’ara ‘also, even’ to a question word (section 13.4). Example (31) illustrates a positive statement, while (32)-(33) contain negated forms.

(31) yîr-k’arâ na-ŋ ats-ǭ
    what-INCL 1SG-DAT give-STI

‘Give me any of them.’

(32) ň = tee-b-k’h ädì-k’ā yîrâ-k’arâ
    1SG = go.NV-REL-DAT footstep-IN what-INCL

fōöt-ķr = á-ki-k-ǭ
    become-NEG = 3MS-exist-REAL-STI

‘Nothing happened after I left.’

(33) gōnâ nā-k’arâ tēe-ŋ-ki-k-ǭ
    yesterday where-INCL go.NV-NEG.1SG-exist-REAL-STI

‘I didn’t go anywhere yesterday.’

Example (34) uses an indefinite noun phrase instead of a question word. See section 7.3.3 on the uses of k’oy ‘one’ for indefiniteness.
(34) k’oy yaab yēē-r=á-k’y-á-m-ə
   one.ELAT man come.NV-NEG = 3MS-remain-put-IRR-STI
   ‘Nobody will come.’ (*A man will not come.)
   Also possible: yááb k’oy-k’arà…

The expression ‘never/ever’ is closely related to the notion of experiential perfect, i.e. whether a person experienced a particular event at least once during some time in the past leading up to the present (Comrie 1976:58). Many languages of Ethiopia convey this notion through the verb ‘to know’ (Crass and Meyer 2008:244). Sheko is no exception. Thus, the expression of ‘never/ever’ is with a verb form of t’uus ‘know’, as illustrated in (35) and (36).

(35) a. kuki-k’ā kua-t’uus = a-ki
   Kuki-IN go.NV-know = 2SG-exist[Q]
   ‘Have you ever been to Kuki?’ (Lit: Do you know going to Kuki?)

b. t’uus-én-kl-k-ə
   know-NEG, 1SG-exist-REAL-STI
   ‘Never.’ (Lit: I don’t know.)

(36) p-tuurù yaab-ù-s geëtù sêê-t’uus-érêê
   1SG.POSS-land man-m-PL waterpipe see.NV-know-NEG-STI
   ‘The people of my country have never seen a waterpipe.’

The notion of ‘nothing other than X’ can be expressed as in the following examples. In (37) and (38), X may be viewed as a kind of Ground marked by the dative in a locational construction with fatà ‘on’ or fštà ~ joštà ‘at the side’, or simply as a locational expression with body parts in which the possessor NP is dative-marked (see section 9.3.3). In example (39), the ‘Ground’ is also in the dative. Only in (40) there is no dative case. The latter part of mókäri may be related to kaari ‘towards’. Note furthermore that the last two examples use a form of t’uus ‘know’.
(37) ትን ተአራ-አህ ይህን ይ Abilities ትን ተአ_DECREF ይህን ይ Abilities

‘She eats nothing but bread.’ (Lit: upon injera there is no food she eats.)

(38) ኢ በሆን ከጠሩ ከመንስ ከጠሩ (noogû)

‘He does nothing but work.’ (Lit: he does not put other things at the side of work.)

(39) ከ=ቤና-ነ-ባወ-ሁ ከመንስ

‘He does nothing other than work.’ (Lit:. he doesn’t know other (things) to work.)

(40) ትን ተአ DLC-ሆ-ባወ ብርሣን ከ=ት’ሁስ-ስ ከረ-ሆ ይ Abilities

‘He does nothing but eat.’ (Lit: there is nothing he knows except eating food.)
15 Subject clitics and focus

This chapter treats the function of subject clitics. The form of the subject clitics is given here again for ease of reference.

(1)  
1sg  ṇ=  
2sg  ha=  
3ms  ḡa=  
3fs  yǐ=  
1pl  ŋ=  
2pl  ḍī=  
3pl  ḏī=

The presence/absence of subject clitics and their place in the clause are related to information structure. Regarding the function of subject clitics, one language consultant offered the following as a summarizing description: yǐz nóogù ṣesúkùb ‘this is something which shows words/things’. I have only started to investigate the relations between information structure, focus and the grammar of subject clitics, and therefore I can present merely a partial picture of the system here.

Section 1 aims at giving an overview of the occurrence of clitics, while section 2 and 3 discuss subject clitics in final main clauses and medial clauses respectively. Section 4 compares Sheko to languages with a similar strategy of using subject clitics to indicate focus and information structure. Section 5 discusses clefting as well as a construction used to contrast propositions and a contrastive topic marker.

15.1 Proclitics, enclitics and the absence of clitics

15.1.1 Overview

The subject clitic is basically a proclitic to the verb stem in final main verb clauses. This preverbal position appears to be the “unmarked” position, corresponding to a topic-comment information structure (Lambrecht 1994:16, 235). Likewise, the clitic in medial clauses occurs in clause-initial position in clauses with a topic-comment structure, and usually procliticizes to the first constituent of the clause. However, the subject clitic may also encliticize to the medial verb of the

---

4 This chapter benefitted greatly from discussions following two presentations, especially from comments by Orin Gensler, Tom Güldemann and Ines Fiedler.
preceding clause, a fact which is further discussed in section 15.3.1.

In addition, the subject clitic may encliticize to another part of the clause if that part is highlighted; in other words, the clitic generally follows a salient part of the sentence. For instance, in both main and medial clauses, the subject clitic encliticizes to wh-words and negatives, which are often assumed to be inherently focused. The subject clitic also follows non-subject constituents which are in focus and stage-setting adverbials. Furthermore, the subject clitic encliticizes to the verb stem in main clauses when the truth value of the predicate is asserted (with Factual verb stems such as in the Realis). In medial clauses, the subject cannot encliticize directly to the verb stem, for the reason that a medial verb is dependent on a final verb for modal values and assertion.

Thirdly, the subject clitic may be absent. In many medial verb clauses there is no overt reference to the subject participant at all, and subject continuation is expressed only through the same-subject switch-reference marker. In addition, the subject clitic is absent in subject focus constructions. In these clauses, a full noun phrase or pronoun overtly refers to the subject in focus.

15.1.2 ‘Double’ occurrence

It is not easy to establish whether clitization occurs to the left or to the right. In fact, both directions are possible, but the full nature of left- and rightward clitization is not understood yet. The following example illustrates both, i.e. the 1sg clitic น encliticizes while the 3fs clitic ย procliticizes.

(2) ยิ่งรูป น ยิ่ง-ขั้น ณิท-น-อ ยิ่ง-เก-ล
what = 1sg 2sg-dat witness-stladdr 3fs = say-ds

‘What could I say in favour of you?’ she said

In a discussion about orthography, some language consultants expressed a preference for writing the first clitic twice, as <ยิ่งรูป ณิท-น-อ>, but they didn’t comment on the second clitic, written only once as <ยิ gen>.
Concerning the first clitic in (2'), future research should investigate what the native speakers' intuition for writing the clitic doubly is based upon. Here, I follow the language consultants' choices in the texts that we have discussed. Concerning the second clitic \(yi\), the fact that there is a clause boundary before the 3\(fs\) clitic is not a sufficient explanation for its proclitization, as there are other examples in which a clitic encliticizes to the verb of the preceding clause (3).

There are also instances where the clitic cliticizes both ways across a clause boundary. In (4), the 3\(fs\) clitic \(yi\) occurs encliticized to the medial verb of the first clause and is followed by a short pause (indicated by the vertical bar), and then it procliticizes to the object argument in the second medial clause.

Cross-linguistically, there is probably a preference for enclitization, just as most affixes are suffixal (Dryer 2005). The 'double' occurrence may be caused by the conflicting tendencies to procliticize and encliticize. Compare the underlined clitic in (4) with the 1\(sg\) clitic in (2') which cliticizes to a wh-word as well as the following constituent. If it is correct that the subject clitic canonically is proclitic, it may (still) have an inclination to procliticize in the cases in which it is attracted by focused elements away from the verb and has encliticized to its host.
15.2 Subject clitics in main clauses

This section first establishes that main clauses in which the subject clitic procliticsizes to the verb stem have verbal predicate focus, correlating to a topic-comment structure. Secondly, various environments are listed in which the subject clitic occurs as an enclitic to the verb stem (for verb polarity focus and thetic sentences) or as an enclitic on some constituent preceding the verb (identificational focus of non-subject constituents (Lambrecht 1994) and discourse focus on stage-setting adverbs).

15.2.1 Preceding the main verb

Final verbs to which a subject clitic is procliticized are interpreted as having predicate (VP) focus, such as in (5b) and (6b). These sentences have a topic-comment stucture.

(5) a. \(\text{bádign} yír=f \text{bágyu-kl} \)
Badign what = 3s work-exist[q]
‘What is Badign doing?’

b. \(\text{baakà} yí=fyaan-kl-k-ə \)
\text{taro} 3\text{s} = \text{peel-exist-REAL-STI}
‘She is peeling taro.’

(6) a. \(\text{Gurma-o} \)
Gurma-STLADDR
‘What about Gurma?’

b. \(\text{zeed-k'a} \text{há=gadu-k-ə} \)
eight-in 3\text{ms} = \text{start-REAL-STI}
‘He started in the eight grade.’

Consider also the following stretch of natural discourse, which in simple sentences comments on the behaviour of adolescents in the past and present. In the first three lines of (7), the topic is a boy and in the comments three things are predicated of him, namely what he did as work. The subject clitic is procliticized to the final verb in each line. Likewise, the last two lines of (7) predicate on the topic ‘boys and girls’. In each case, the verbal predicate is the salient information, while the
subject clitic appears on the verb as proclitic. Again, it is clear that these clauses exhibit a topic-comment structure.

(7)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Object</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>há-bà̀b</td>
<td>dòtì</td>
<td>há=jefj-á-m-ò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3MS.POSS-father</td>
<td>cow</td>
<td>3MS=herd-put-IRR-STI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>há-bà̀b</td>
<td>guy</td>
<td>há=buûts-á-m-ò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3MS.POSS-father</td>
<td>grassland</td>
<td>3MS=cut-put-IRR-STI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>há-bà̀b</td>
<td>kàtjà</td>
<td>há=yàán-á-m-ò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3MS.POSS-father</td>
<td>yam</td>
<td>3MS=plant.yam-put-IRR-STI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>háák’astà</td>
<td>yìs</td>
<td>kááy-ò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>now</td>
<td>DIST.M</td>
<td>be.not-STI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dëd-ì-s-k’erà</td>
<td>támåáirya-ta</td>
<td>ḟì=ǹn-kl-k-ò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>child-DEF-M-INCL</td>
<td>school-LOC</td>
<td>3PL=talk-exist-REAL-STI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wó-kà</td>
<td>timhîrîty-k’à</td>
<td>ìṣì̀-ka</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>down.there-LCT</td>
<td>school-IN</td>
<td>leg.WITH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

‘He herded his father’s cattle. He cut his father’s grassland. He planted his father’s yam. (…) This is not so now. The girls and boys are talking at school. Down at the school they are playing with their feet.’

15.2.2 Following stem in Realis forms

The placement of subject clitics creates a meaning difference in Realis verb forms. In contrast to a form in which the subject clitic precedes the verb stem (8a), a form in which the subject clitic follows the verb stem is used to highlight the verb or its polarity, as in (8b). This latter form is employed frequently in yes-or-no questions and answers (9).

(8)  

| a. |  n=t’ùùs-k-ò |
| 1PL=know-REAL-STI | 'we know it' |
| b. | t’ùùs=n-k-ò |
| know=1PL-REAL-STI | 'we KNOW it', 'we do know it' |

(9)  

| a. | sāsû-ì-s-a | ye-kh | mààk=í |
| fable-DEF-M-ACC | 2SG-DAT | tell=3ES.Q |

‘Did she tell you the story?’
b. \textit{màːk = f-k}
   \textit{tell = 3PS-REAL}
   ‘She did.’

Verb forms in the Obvious mood, marked by the gloss KNOWN, display the same variation in clitic placement regarding enclitization to the main verb stem. In (10), the subject clitic appears preceding the verb stem, indicating that the verbal predicate is in focus; in (11), the subject clitic occurs following the verb stem, indicating focus on the truth value of the predicate. (See section 10.3.6 for the semantics of the Obvious, which posits something as generally known or known to the addressee).

(10) \textit{baak-h-s m = fyàːn-kì·kn-yà}
    \textit{yam-DEF-M 1SG = peel-exist-KNOWN-STD}
    ‘But I am peeling the yams!’ (Context: father asked teenage daughter to do something for him.)

(11) \textit{bàə = á·kn}
    \textit{work = 3MS-KNOWN}
    ‘It WORKS.’ (Context: machine works properly after it is fixed.)

Apart from polarity or truth value focus, subject clitics occur enclitized to the verb stem in thetic main clauses as well. In example (12), the sentences function to report an event, while in example (13), the sentences function to present a referent.

(12) a. \textit{ffrú k’yar=á·k-ə}
    \textit{rain  beat = 3MS-REAL-STI}
    ‘It rains!’

b. \textit{gèben bāy dàdù nyàəs = f-k}
    \textit{Geben  female  child  give.birth = 3PS-REAL}
    ‘Geben has given birth to a daughter!’

(13) a. \textit{gàdd ki = á·k-ə}
    \textit{pond  exist = 3MS-REAL-STI}
    ‘There is a pond.’ (Context: introduction of \textit{saad} in the discourse. \textit{saad} is a pond with water which reportedly contains minerals stimulating milk production of cattle.)
15.2.3 Following non-subject wh-words and constituents

A subject clitic appears encliticized to non-subject constituents in focus. The subject clitic identifies the referent for a given proposition. It is interesting that in this function the subject clitic, which is topical itself, attaches to the most salient argument in the clause.

Wh-words are assumed to be inherently focused, and the subject clitic always follows it directly, except when ti COP is employed (see section 15.5.1). In example (14), the 3pl clitic follows the wh-word yîr(â) ‘what’ and in (15), the 1sg clitic follows nâ ‘where’.

(14) gônâ yîr = îfî ye-kh màkù
  yesterday what = 3pl 2sg-DAT tell[Q]  
  ‘WHAT did they tell you yesterday?’

(15) nâ = n îfî-ûr ān-â-o
  where = 1sg 3pl-ACC put-put-STLADDR  
  ‘WHERE can I put them?’

Example (16) shows that the subject clitic also directly follows the corresponding constituent in the answering sentence. Furthermore, the subject clitic follows non-subject NPs with intended focus (17), and adverbs which refer to the setting for events (18).

(16) yîr = a ha = na-î ha-ats-o yî = ge-î
  what = 2sg 2sg = 1sg-DAT give-STLADDR 3fs = say-ds  
  zünkû = n ñ = ye-kh âts-ä-m-û há = ge-î
  sheep = 1sg 1sg = 2sg-DAT give-put-IRR-STI 3ms = say-ds  
  ‘she said: “WHAT will you give me?” (and) he said: “I’ll give you A SHEEP.”

(17) woogi-o bâârâ = a ha = na-î
  Woogi-STLADDR maiden = 2sg 2sg = 1sg-DAT  
  bèâ-ht-o
  want-COND-STLADDR  
  ‘Hey Woogi, (what if) you search a GIRL for me?’
Like wh-words, negation is assumed to be inherently focused. The subject clitic regularly encliticizes to the negated verb, as in (19).

(19) nyākū būtā bōdā-tā-ee gyābt’ā
young.man outside stroll-COND-STI front.yard

sāa-r = i-k’y-á-m
arrive.NV-NEG = 3PS-remain-put-IRR

‘If a young man walked outside, she wouldn’t enter the front yard.’

15.2.4 Main clauses without subject clitic
The only main clauses which do not contain subject clitics are those which focus the subject. When the subject is focused, there is necessarily a subject NP which refers to the subject.

(20) m-bāyñ nata gasku-k-ō
1SG.POSS-wife 1SG insult-REAL-STI

‘MY WIFE insulted me.’

(21) yīs kōsū-rā i'tī māāk-o
DIST.M tradition-ACC who tell-STL,ADRR

‘WHO will tell this traditional wisdom?’

In most cases, the focused subject appears in a cleft construction (see section 15.5.1). In example (22) and (23), the subjects are clefted and there is no subject clitic on the main verb.

(22) bārkāy șōn tē tüşā-rū fōo-t-ā-m-ō
monkey heart COP medicine become-put-IRR-STI

‘A MONKEY’S HEART will/could be medicine.’
Enclitization of the subject clitic to a subject constituent is always ungrammatical, in contrast to enclitization of the subject clitic to a focused non-subject constituent. The following functional account may explain why the subject clitic cannot encliticize to a subject constituent: whether the subject clitic procliticizes or encliticizes, it always refers to the topic of the clause, namely the subject about which something is predicated. The clitic serves thus at once to refer to the topical subject and to indicate by its position which part of the clause is in focus. If the clitic would encliticize to a focused subject, the interpretation of the subject as topical (rendered by its referring function) would clash with the interpretation of the subject as focal (rendered by its position in the clause).

15.2.5 Restrictions regarding clitic placement

From the description so far, it is clear that subject clitics occur in various places in the sentence. To look at the data from another angle, this section lists the restrictions on clitic placement in the earlier sections.

First, there are restrictions on clitic placement with regard to modal distinctions. While it may not be possible to fully separate the effects of information structure on the one hand and modal distinctions on the other hand, it may be helpful to note the following: in the Imperative there is no clitic at all; in the Jussive, Irrealis and Implicative the clitic cannot follow the verb stem; and in the Optative the clitic must follow the verb stem. In the Realis and Obvious there are no restrictions.

(24) a. ḥālāt = á-s-ā
    become = 3MS-OPT-STI
    ‘may it be’
b. \( \text{há} = \text{fōōt-ā-m-ə} \)  
\[ 3\text{MS} = \text{become-put-IRR-STI} \]
‘it will become’

c. \( \text{há} = \text{fōōt-ə} \)  
\[ 3\text{MS} = \text{become-STI} \]
‘let it be’

Of course, the different sentence types each have characteristic (discourse) functions which have implications for the possibilities with regard to information structure. For instance, imperatives are directives rather than predications and the subject (second person) is understood. Furthermore, in contrast to e.g. the Irrealis, the Realis and Obvious typically assert predications and therefore the truth value can be questioned or emphasized for these two modal types. The Optative, which is mainly used for curses and blessings, might be taken as a predictive modality which emphasizes the verb.

Secondly, the subject clitic cannot encliticize to the subject constituent, in contrast to non-subject constituents in focus. In medial clauses, the subject clitic can procliticize to a subject constituent; which is evidence that proclitization serves a function (indicating verbal predicate focus) that differs from enclitization (indicating argument focus).

Thirdly, the subject clitic may not encliticize to some modified and/or case-marked noun phrases. This issue awaits further research.

\[ 3\text{MS, POSS-OX} = 3\text{MS} \quad 1\text{SG-DAT} \quad \text{take-come, NV-REAL-STI} \]
intended: ‘He brought his ox for me.’

15.2.6 Summary

In conclusion, clitic placement is remarkably flexible in Sheko. Cysouw (2003) proposes a focus hierarchy of clitic attraction, in which he links clitization to focus structure of the clause. While some languages have special clitic placement for one of the extremes of the hierarchy only, only a very small number of languages move further up or down the hierarchy. The table
below is adapted to reflect the situation as attested in Sheko main clauses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>enclitization away from verb</th>
<th>strong non-verb focus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wh-word, (negation)</td>
<td>inherent focus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Focused non-subject NP</td>
<td>constituent focus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb of time/place</td>
<td>stage setting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proclitic to verb stem</td>
<td>VP focus (&quot;neutral&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enclitization to stem - Opt</td>
<td>strong focus on verb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enclitization to stem - Real (negation)</td>
<td>focus on verb polarity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1. Clitic attraction in main clauses correlated with focus (adapted from Cysouw 2003).

In summary, the clitic placement interacts with information structure (topicality, focus type) and modality. Sheko subject clitics appear away from the verb encliticized to wh-pronouns, negation, non-subject NPs and adverbs. In the case of wh-words and non-subject NPs, the sentences have argument (identificational) focus. For adverbs, identificational focus may be insufficient as features of (larger) discourse appear to play a role as well. In case of negation, next to being inherently focused, focus on verb polarity can also be assumed. In “unmarked” sentences, corresponding roughly to predicate focus in a topic-comment sentence structure, the clitic appears procliticized to the final verb. Irrealis type clauses are more or less treated as “unmarked” final verb clauses, but clitization is different from “unmarked” final verbs in two cases: a clitic appears encliticized to the verb stem in Optatives, and in Realis forms signaling verb polarity focus. Finally, a thematic informational structure, which presents events or entities, is expressed by an enclitic on the verb stem as well (not indicated in the table).

15.3 Subject clitics in medial clauses

Main clauses and medial clauses are similar in that proclitization of the subject clitic is a sign of a topic-comment structure. However, while in main clauses the clitic
procliticizes to the main verb stem, in medial clauses the clitic appears in clause-initial position. Its separation from the verb may be the reason that in this position, it does not always procliticize to the following element. A further trait of medial clauses is that under topical subject continuation the subject clitic may be dropped. Absence of the subject clitic is furthermore attested for subject focus/thetic clauses.

15.3.1 Subject clitics in clause-initial position
For a string of clauses with medial verbs, verbal predicate focus is expressed with the subject clitic being the first element of the clause.

For same-subject medial verbs, there are two possibilities for the clitization of subject clitics. In some instances, the clitic procliticizes to the following element in its clause (26)-(27). In these instances, there is a clearly audible pause between the medial verb and the clitic. Pauses are marked with a vertical line here. (If there is no other constituent, the clitic will attach to the verb, as e.g. in the third clause of (26).)

(26) ás-kh gÓri bàta an-ta | há=uk‘-n-s-gra
     3MS=DAT head on.LOC put-ss  3MS=milk-DEF-M-ACC

    bondu um-ta | há=saw-ta | há=kuuq-n-š-gan
     copious eat-ss  3MS=arrrive.NV-SS  3MS=plug-DEF-M-ACC

    baas-ha
     want-DS

‘...he put (the stopper) on his head and he ate his fill of the milk and then he searched for the stopper’

(27) ...há=ye‘-k-bàstà | ífí=byáasú baayn
     3MS=come.NV-exist-WHILE  3PL=crocodile wife.F-DEF

    yàrti-nonko see-ta | ífí=í-f-kh bàak-àh |
     friend-KPL see.NV-SS  3PL=3FS-DAT tell-DS

    yí=byáasú baayn k‘ay-ta | yí=zérkñ k‘oy...
     3FS=crocodile wife.F-DEF rise-SS  3FS=day one

‘...while he came (from the house of the monkey), the friends of the crocodile’s wife saw him and told it to her, and the wife of the crocodile rose and one day she...’
In other instances, the subject clitic of a certain clause encliticizes to the medial verb form of the preceding clause, as the underlined clitics in examples (28)-(30) illustrate.

(28) yááb šub- hàtà | yéè= t= á fòòt- àb èkì |
    man die-COND come.NV-ss = 3Ms become-REL money
zúnkù báá= t= á | yér= bù= fú= t= á | ...
    sheep slaughter-ss = 3Ms blood spill-CAUS-ss = 3Ms

‘If someone died, he would come and slaughter some livestock, a sheep, and spill the blood and...’

(29) dāānà k’ìs= t= ájì | yìs gōntì fíjì- go- gərl-kù
    beer drink-ss = 3PL DIST.M like 3PL.POSS-PLUR-head-DAT
    gúy- k’á tèè= t= ájì | fíjì- ʔùmtà
    grassland–in go.NV-ss = 3PL 3PL.POSS-food
    fíjì= kōóg- o–m
    3PL = farm-put-IRR

‘...they drank beer and like this they went to their own fields and they farmed their food.’

(30) ẓa₃₃= á-k= á | há= ge- t= á | as-kù
    be.good = 3Ms-REAL-STI 3Ms = say-ss = 3Ms 3Ms-DAT
    kúm-k’á an= á gáámtà sàw- tɔ |
    neck-in put = 3Ms far.side.LOC arrive.NV-ss
    ʊỳtà fìn há= ge– nù |
    down.LOC descend 3Ms = say-DS

‘ “Fine,” he said and he put (the snake) round his neck and reached the shore and said: “Descend!”...’

It is not clear if there is a difference between the two sets of examples (i.e. between pro- and enclitization of the subject clitic in medial clauses). If there is, the type of clause linkage may differ. On the other hand, the variation could also be caused by the conflicting tendencies of the clitic to cliticize leftward as well as rightwards (see section 15.1.2).

Enclitization of a subject clitic to the verb form of the preceding clause is impressionistically very infrequent when that verb form is a different-subject medial verb. Most
different-subject medial verbs are immediately followed by a pause (31). The different-subject switch-reference marker may correspond to a somewhat heavier boundary than the same-subject marker (cf. section 11.1.2).

(31) ... yī = ge-ʔ | há = ás-kh | kúts'-n-š-ařa | āts-ʔ |
    3PS = say-ds    3MS = 3MS-DAT  hand-DEF-M-ACC  give-ds
    yī = bārkāy | áz-k'a | āttu-tə
    3PS = monkey    3MS-IN  hold-ss
    ‘...she said; he gave his hand; the monkey took it and...’

At any rate, the subject clitic is the first element in the majority of medial clauses (about three quarters of the medial clauses in my small sample). The association of this clause structure to predicate focus is therefore even more plausible, since a topic-comment (corresponding to a subject-predicate) structure is likely to be common in stories.

15.3.2 Subject clitics in medial position

In medial clauses, examples with subject clitics in non-initial position are rare. From the few examples I have, it is clear from the context that the constituent preceding the clitic is in focus. However, it appears that the subject clitic does not attach to these focused constituents, but to the following verb. The direction of clitization needs to be verified in future research.

(32) há - k'amù-kh | k'aabu-tə | k'iš-tə
    3MS-servant-DAT  pour-ss  drink-ss
    na-ʔ | há = k'aab-ʔ
    1SG-DAT  3MS = pour-ds
    ‘...pours for his servants, drinks, pours for ME;...’

(33) má  n = ?ats-n  ʔπl = ?um-k-ə
    earlier  today    1SG = give-ds  3PL = eat-REAL-STI
    ts'ēs = ʔπl-k-ə
    replete = 3PL-REAL-STI
    ‘I gave them EARLIER; they have eaten. They really are satisfied.’
    (Context: stepmother lies when the father of the children asks her to give them food.)
15.3.3 Medial clauses without subject clitics

Not all medial clauses have a subject clitic. In a small sample of seven sāyās ‘stories, fables’, about a quarter of the 350 medial (non-copula, non-direct speech) clauses does not have a subject clitic. In the case of subject focus, an NP or other overt reference to the subject is usually present. Likewise, new participants are sometimes introduced in clauses with a full referring NP, but no subject clitic. In contrast, there are also clauses which contain neither a subject clitic nor another reference to the subject; this concerns mainly connected series of actions in which the topic is understood.

This section first discusses medial clauses in which the subject is focussed, then topical subjects and zero expression of referents.

Subject focus

Often a new participant is introduced in a subject position. In that case, normally a full NP but no clitic refers to the new participant (34)-(36). Non-animate entities may also be introduced in this way, as example (37) illustrates. Because of the verb ki ‘exist, live’, the clause in (37) can also be analysed as a thetic medial clause, i.e. it has a presentational function. However, there is no syntactic difference with subject focus medial clauses.

(34) sòóz tà-t=á tée-bàastà
    snake COP-SS = 3MS go.NV-WHILE
    ‘There was a SNAKE and while he went...’ (Lit: It was a snake... Context: first sentence of a story.)

(35) f3 sōōnà yaafr-ð áz iy yaafr-ð
    3S booth find-D.S 3MS house find-D.S
    ‘SHE found a booth; HE found a house;...’

(36) áás-t=ñ èe-t=ñ hāy gaamta
    how-COP = 1SG do.NV-SS = 1SG water far.side.LOC
    sāk-ā-o há = ge-ñ yááb k’oy yèg-ñ
    arrive-put-STR.LDIR 3MS = say-D.S man one come-D.S
    ‘ “HOW do I do and reach the other shore?” he said; A MAN came;...’
(37) Ɂl=úrm-th-bàbb  káay-ŋ  yl=tét-bàástà
3PL = eat-IRR-father  be.not-DS  3FS = go.NV-WHILE
myáŋgû  ly  kî-ŋ
spirit  house  exist-DS
‘there was nothing they could eat; while she went (looking for food), there was THE HOUSE OF A SPIRIT,…’

As an aside, a new participant may be referred to by a non-subject constituent as well when it is mentioned for the first time, even if the new participant is going to play an important role in the story, such as yântbey ‘fox’ in (38). New actors with low importance in the story usually are referred to by an NP as well as a clitic, such as the neighbor in (39), who is probably part of the frame of reference (everybody has neighbors).

(38)  hâ=yântbey  ðàtâ  sàk-ŋ
3MS = fox.mother  near.LOC arrive-DS
‘he reached a fox;…’

(39)  … ge-t=á  gôrèbêt  îf-a  zëèr-ŋ
say-SS = 3MS  neighbor(Amh)  3FS-ACC advise-DS
‘saying “…” a/the neighbor advised her;…’ [presented as topical]

Zero expression of arguments
Examples (40) and (41) illustrate medial clauses without a subject clitic and without another overt reference to the subject. Many of these clauses have same-subject marking. They are used among others for series of actions or steps of a procedure by a certain participant, as shown in the examples.
(40) há = zūny-ha  
3MS = sheep.f.DEF-ACC  
baaj-gyaʔu-ta  
slaughter-chew-SS

fj-kə  
bááltʃ-ra  
kyänū  
bâyə  
slipʔu-ta  
3FS-DAT  
skin-ACC  
dog  
on.LOC  
sew-SS

fj-kə  
kum-k'ā  
gyādū  
an-ta  
3FS-DAT  
neck-IN  
rope  
put-SS

há = kəb-teɛ-tə = á  
3MS = take-go.NV-SS = 3MS

‘... he slaughtered and ate the sheep, and sewed her skin on the dog, and put a rope around her neck, and he brought her and...’

(41) yis-ta  
yi-baad-n-s-əra

DIST,M-LOC  
3FS,POSS-younger.sibling-DEF-M-ACC

wor-kəs-u-tə  
ústə  
bəru-tə  
fəʔi-ra  
draw-go.out.CAUS-SS  
ground  
throw.away-SS  
stone-ACC

haaku-ta  
yāb-m-s  
ʔyan-n-s-k'ə  
goom-ta  
pick-SS  
man-DEF-M  
pot-DEF-M-IN  
pile-SS

yī-baad-n-s  
kəb-tə  
ūk'-ń-s-ə  
3FS,POSS-younger.sibling-DEF-M  
take-SS  
miilk-DEF-M-ACC

wūsk-kəb-tə  
yī = k'yaʔu-zə-yəg-ə  
untie-take-SS  
3FS = leave-come-SS

‘Then she drew her brother out, left him on the ground, gathered stones, stacked them in the man’s pot, took her brother, unknotted and took the milk, and she left;...’

Example (42), from a fable about a monkey and a crocodile, is exceptional in that there is even no subject clitic after the different subject marker. From the context it is clear that the referent must be the crocodile.

(42) yī = bārkəy  
k'ay-ta  
ās-kə  
fāfə-kə  
āamə-kə  
3FS = monkey  
rise-SS  
3MS-DAT  
papaya-COOR  
yam.sp-COOR

k'afu  
āts-n  
un-tə  
bārkəy-ka  
gūru  
hanging,fruit?  
give-DS  
eat-SS  
monkey-WITH  
only

daan  
feeʃ-tə  
há = yēʔ-kl-bəastə  
together  
spend.day-SS  
3MS-come.NV-exist-WHILE

‘Monkey rose and gave him papaya and aama yams and tree-fruits; (he, the crocodile) ate and spent the day only with Monkey and while he came (home),...’
Obviously, the subjects in (40)-(42) refer to highly topical referents. As the examples show, expression of a topical referent is not obligatory and may be zero. Otherwise, this environment is identical to the string of medial verbs in (26)-(30) above, which also refer to a coherent sequence of actions.

It is common in the language to leave arguments unexpressed. In (43)-(44), the direct and indirect objects are referred to anaphorically by a zero pronoun. In (45), the first verb (kats') refers to a ritual concerning cows. The speaker presupposes that his interlocutor knows the ritual, which involves cutting a hair from the tail of the cow for the chief. Without this knowledge the example would be difficult to understand.

(43) myăng-ñì-s tə-s-a-a nā=ñ tēé-t=ñ
     spirit-DEF-M COP-VIEWP-STD where =1PL go.NV-SS = 1PL
     1PL=hold-bring-SS = 1PL 1PL=SEE,NV-CAUS-ADDR

     ‘It is a spirit. Where do we go and take (it) and bring and show (it)?’

(44) k’īg?-tātsū-kī-b k’arə há-bayn-ka kī-b
     milk-give-exist-REL INCL 3MS,POSS-wife-WITH exist-REL
     kī-htà há=k’īg?-tāts-a-m ge-tə má-árá
     exist-COND 3MS=milk-give-PUT-IRR say-SS eat-NEG
     há=k’ë-m-ə
     3MS=remain-IRR-STM

     ‘Even the one who milks and gives, if he was with his wife (i.e. has had intercourse), he milks and gives (the milk to her), but does not drink (the milk himself).’
15.3.4 Background clauses

A cursory investigation of clitics in background clauses reveals that ‘while...’-background clauses (nearly) always contain a subject clitic.

(46) f3l = nôn-ki-bâastâ yî-bâab yêê-saw-tə
3PL = talk-exist-while 3FS.POSS-father come.NV-arrive.NV-SS

‘while they were talking, her father arrived and he...’

Some of these background clauses allow for two interpretations, together with the preceding clause. For example, in (47) the clitic belongs either to the preceding clause or it belongs to the ‘while’-clause:

(47) hâ = byãsũ k’ay-tə ... ge-b-tə
3MS = crocodile rise-SS say-REL-LOC

‘the crocodile rose and when he said “...”,...’

The clitic in (47) likely belongs to the ‘while’ clause, because a subject NP in a clause without subject clitic is attested independently (see section 15.2.4). Furthermore, sometimes a subject and the rest of the clause are divided by an intervening clause, as in (48).

(48) f3l = yâb-th-s iy-k’=â sôk’-ki-ň bûtâ
3PL = man-DEF-M house-IN = 3MS sleep-exist-DS outside

saw-tə
arrive.NV-SS

‘they, the man sleeping in the house, arrived outside and...’
15.4 Flexible subject clitics in other languages

The phenomenon of subject markers following focused elements is found in other Omotic languages as well. It is reported for Diizi, the southern Majoid language (Beachy 2008). However, some differences can be observed, particularly that Diizi subject markers which follow the verb stem are different from subject markers which precede the verb stem, see (49)-(50). In Guraferdan Sheko enclitization of subject clitics to the verb stem is ungrammatical. It is as yet not known how verb polarity focus is expressed in Diizi and Guraferda.

(49)  naï-zoku  mo  otu  dad  siag-o
     1SG.Poss-bull today calf child give.birth-3me

   ‘My bull gave birth to a calf.’ (Adapted from Beachy 2005 appendix A.)

(50)  undi  yir-g  ki  gob-a-g  tə-n  á-zoku  otu
     past  what-in  exist  country-ØPEX-IN  BE-DS  3me-bull calf

   siag-da-ni
give.birth-IPF-CQ

   ‘In the past, in which country was it where a bull gives birth to a
calf?’ (Idem.)

Benchnon subject pronouns clearly have a relationship with topic and focus. However, unlike in Sheko, the pronouns differ slightly in form regarding tone and presence/absence of a final alveolar nasal. For instance, ‘long strong’ forms (tân ‘I, as for me’) code topical or contrastive topical subjects. The ‘short weak’ forms (tā), associated most with topic continuity, express verb or verb polarity focus in compound verb forms when they follow the lexical verb; and perhaps they express non-subject constituent focus when they preceed the verb. Subject pronominal suffixes (-tän) on simple main verbs indicate verb or verb polarity focus (cf. section 15.2.2). A number of other forms exist; details of the system can be found in Rapold (2006: 341-363).

Zargulla, an East-Omeo language, shows remarkable similarities with Sheko. In Zargulla, the copula marker -tte has
an extended grammatical function as focus marker (Azub 2008). In focused verbal clauses, such as below, -tte is immediately followed by a set of suffixes which co-varies for person, number and gender of the subject (51). -tte plus the subject agreement suffix can attach to any non-subject focused element, such as an adverb (52). The agreement suffix (without -tte) cliticizes obligatorily to wh-words. Hayward (1990b:320ff) reports a similar situation for the closely related Zayse and proposes that the phenomenon originates in erstwhile cleft constructions, because the verb form is similar to the verb form in a relative clause.

(51) kast-fffjin-na ?áik-útt-o-tt-if-inne
    steal-TEMP-INST catch-PASS-THV-FOC-3PS-PAST
    ‘while stealing, she was CAUGHT.’

(52) ?eeré ?eeré-tt-if bal-utt-e
    little little-FOC-3PS make.mistake-PASS-REL.IPF
    ‘It differs (only) A LITTLE’

In some Omotic languages, information structure interacts with subject agreement marking only marginally. 40 In Koorete, another East-Ometo language, it is not a subject marker but a focus/sentence type marker which follows the salient part of the sentence. However, there is some interaction with person marking as well, since in some cases the subject agreement morpheme is not present when the verb is out of focus. For example, in example (53b), both the focus marker and the subject agreement marker are dropped. In example (54b), the object is marked for focus and the 2pl agreement marker itu is not present (Binyam 2008:124-6; 172).

(53) a. tan-l hant-uu-s-so
    I-NOM work-PAST-1SG-A-FOC-DECL
    ‘I WORKED’

40 In Zay, a Gurage language, some interaction is also noted: in some cases of nominal predication, subject marking follows the focus marker or may be added to it optionally (Meyer 2005:338,340). Andreas Wetter kindly pointed this out to me.
For Aari, a South Omotic language, “inflecting” adverbs and wh-words are reported (Bender 1991 citing Tully; see also Hayward 1990c:454). We can conclude that languages of various branches of Omotic, which do not all border each other, display at least traces of the same phenomenon. For some languages, a high-quality documentation is still lacking; hence it is not yet clear to which extent and with what variation the subject clitic is used to shape the information structure of sentences in Omotic languages.

Subject markers following focused or salient information are of course not only attested in Omotic, but also in Cushitic. In the well-known case of Somali, person marking is fused with the focus marker (Saeed 2000). In Konso, subject clitics are central to structuring information at sentence level as well, although in some verb paradigms additional person marking is found on the verb. Consider the following examples from Ongaye (2009), where the second person clitic appears procliticized to the verb (55a), encliticized to a focused NP (b), and procliticized to the first element of the sentence (b). The form differs because of morphophonological rules.

(55) a. ḋoyra ṭim = mur-t-i
tree 2 = cut-2-PF
‘You CUT a tree.’

b. ḋoyr = im mur-t-i
tree = 2 cut-2-PF
‘You cut A TREE.’
c.  "?iN=coyra  mur-t-i
   2 = tree  cut-2PF
   ‘You CUT A TREE’

In wh-questions, the clitic obligatorily attaches to the wh-word (56). There is no clitic and no person agreement on the verb when the subject is emphasized (57).

(56)  maana= n    pid-{a
     what = 1  buy-IPF
     ‘WHAT shall I buy?’

(57)  kee  coyra  mur-e
     you  tree  cut-IPF
     ‘It is YOU who cut a tree’

In the genetically unrelated Khoisan language Sandawe (Eaton 2002; Steeman in preparation), subject clitics co-express modality. These port-manteau clitics have an information structuring function, and in addition the realis subject clitics also occur obligatorily on clause conjunctions. Moreover, realis subject clitics can occur more than once in a clause. An interesting parallel with Sheko, Zargulla and Konso is that in Sandawe the clitic is not allowed to attach to the subject. Outside Africa, some Iranian languages have ‘flexible’ subject clitics indicating information structure and focus. Cysouw (2005) discusses Northern Talysh (Iranian), citing Schulze (2000), and the Jewish dialect of Hamadân, citing Stilo (2003). Related Jewish dialects such as spoken in Isfahan and Gaz (Stilo 2007) can also be mentioned. 50

15.5 Other strategies indicating focus and contrast
This section discusses three other devices in Sheko which function in the domain of focus and contrast. First clefting is treated; secondly, clause linkage with geta, which contrasts propositions; and finally a contrastive topic marker.

50 In Iranian languages, there are in fact two sets of clitics and clitization to the subject is not excluded (Stilo 2008).
15.5.1 Clefting

Next to flexible placement of subject clitics as a strategy to indicate focus and sentence structure, Sheko makes use of a cleft strategy. Clefting partially complements subject placement, in that clefting applies straightforwardly to subjects (as well as non-subjects), whereas the absence of subject clitics in subject focalization is an inaudible clue. On the other hand, clefting and subject placement reinforce each other, since the subject clitic, if present, attaches to the copula.

The next four examples show the occurrence of the subject clitic following the copula to which functions as a focus marker. The schwa of the copula is deleted. Evidently, it is not the copula which is focal, but the constituent to which the copula is attached.

(58) há-dàdù-s t=á ás-k’a an-t=á
 3MS.POSS-child-PL COP = 3MS 3MS-INV put-SS = 3MS
há = nata-ra maad-ní
3MS = 1SG-ACC deceive-DS

‘It’s HIS CHILDREN that he put in, deceiving me’ (Context: stepmother discovers why the father has asked her to add cooked grain in the granary.)

(59) utšá utšá áz-tà ky-aàb kàrkà-k’a
badger.CONT badger 3MS-LOC exist-REL forest-IN
hoš-írā ha= kààf-xmtā k’èêt’à guúrå
beehive-ACC 2SG = build-COND swallow-INF only

t=á k’èêt’-tə há= tʃ’ór-ʃ-ã-m
COP = 3MS swallow-SS 3MS = finish-CAUS-put-IRR

‘the badger, if you build beehives in a forest where a badger lives, will ONLY EAT and he will finish (the honey).’ (Lit: ...it is just eating that he eats and finishes.)

(60) úyti-ka t=ʃʃ-yèè-k-ə batʃ’a-k
love-WITH COP = 3PL-come.NV-REAL-STI anger-WITH

tó-rée
COP-NEG.STI

‘It was WITH LOVE that they came, it was not with anger.’ (Context: referring to the separation of the Sheko from the Diizi.)
Wh-words may be clefted as well (61)-(62).

(61) áás-t=n ʔēē-t=ŋ hāāy gaamtà  
    how-COP=1SG do.NV-ss =1SG water far.side.loc  
    sāk-ā- o hā=g-e ʔn  
    arrive-put-STLADDR 3MS =say-Ds  

‘he said: “HOW do I do and reach the other shore?”

(62) nāās-t=ā sāmū hā=ge-b-tā só  
    where-COP =3MS leave.behind[ŋ] 3MS =say-REL-Loc up.there  
    ūntjū-ka hā=sāmū-k-ə …  
    wood-in 3MS =leave.behind-REAL-STI  

‘when he said: “WHERE did it remain?”, (she said:) “It remained up there in a tree.”

When the subject is clefted, often the subject clitic is absent (63)-(66). Note that the subject clitic is absent in subject focus constructions, whereas it encliticizes to non-subject constituents in focus. However, in (67) a clitic is attached to the copula in a subject cleft.

(63) bārkāy ʔoōn tə tʃāārū fōōt-ā-mə  
    monkey heart COP medicine become-put-IRR-STI  

‘A MONKEY’S HEART will be medicine.’

(64) ʔn-naanu té-ré ṃ-baad-ŋ-s  
    1SG.POSS-elder.brother COP-NEG.STI 1SG.POSS-younger.sibling-DEF-M  
    tə ūf-a ʔyār-s-ā-m-ə  
    COP 3FS-ACC enter-CAUS-PUT-IRR-STI  

‘It is not my elder brother. It is my YOUNGER BROTHER who will marry her.’

(65) yīs kōōsū-ʁā itə māāk-o  
    DIST.M tradition-ACC who=COP tell-STLADDR  

‘WHO will tell this traditional wisdom?’
It appears that a clefted 3ms-pronoun ás-ta (from ás-t=á 3ms-cop = 3ms ?) functions as a grammaticalised focus marker. In (68), a 1sg clitic is encliticized to the copula. In (69), the subject clitic is not encliticized to the marker.

Since the tone marking in my examples is not consistent, another interpretation is possible, namely a proximal demonstrative suffix (-ás), possibly followed by the locative marker tà. Whatever the exact morphological make-up, the form asta occurs as an emphasizing device suffixed to e.g. verbs (70) and adverbs (68).

‘This porridge cannot be eaten at all.’
15.5.2 Geto-constructions

The word geta, from the verb gé ‘say’, occurs as clause linker in constructions which contrast propositions (71)-(74). It is uninflected. The marker -tə may be the copula or the same-subject marker.

(71) nata ʕntʃu-kə  kəs-t-us  tə = n
1SG  wood-in go.out-PASS? COP = 1SG
ʔyazu-ki-kə  ge-tə  hāāy  batə  bɔz-t-us
be.able-exist-REAL-STI say-COP water on.LOC stroll-PASS?
ʔyáź-árá  n-kl-k-ə
be.able-NEG 1SG-exist-REAL-STI

‘I am the one who can climb trees, I can’t walk on water.’

(72) há-bay-ka  ki-b  ki-ntə
3MS.POSS-wife-WITH exist-REL exist-COND
há = k’īsʔats-ā-m  ge-tə  má-rá  há = k’ē-m-ə
3MS = milk-give-put-IRR say-COP eat-NEG 3MS = remain-IRR-STI
‘If he is with wife, he will milk and give (it to her), but not drink (himself).’

(73) górá-ka  ífi = nōn-ā-m  ge-tə  šōkú-ka
Amharic-WITH 3PL = talk-put-IRR say-COP Sheko-WITH
nōn-ṁ-bāb  yaab  kāāy
talk-IRR-father man be.not
‘they talk in Amharic; there is nobody to speak Sheko with.’

(74) na-ə  gūlbətə  gət’ār-kə
1SG-DAT strength(Amh) countryside(Amh)-IN
há-tʃ’oru-ki-kə  ge-tə  katam-k’ās-tə
talk-finish-exist-REAL-STI say-COP town-IN-PROX.M-LOC
na-ə  gūlbətə  tʃ’ór-árá
1SG-DAT strength(Amh) finish-NEG

‘My strength is running out in the countryside, but here in the city my strength doesn’t run out.’
In (75), a reaction is given to the question whether there was any difference between the food eaten by a chief and food eaten by his subjects.

(75) \textit{\textbf{k'oy-ásta ge-ta | liyuneti | káťú}}
\begin{align*}
\text{name.3S-loc | say-3S-acc | difference(Amharic) yam} \\
\text{exist = 3S-REAL-STI} \\
\text{‘It’s the same - difference - there was yam.’}
\end{align*}

The verb ‘to say’ is also used in adversative linking expressions.

(76) \textit{\textbf{há-fóót-ə ge-te hààs-kən únà gātsù}}
\begin{align*}
\text{become-3S-acc say-3S-acc begin long.ago} \\
\text{yěsū is dead-3S | rise-put-IRR-STI} \\
\text{be.not 3S-REAL-STI} \\
\text{‘Nevertheless, the word that long before this had been said} \text{ ‘Jesus will die and rise,’ was not yet in their mind.’}
\end{align*}

It is possible to use the \textit{ge-ta} construction for contrasting constituents, although I have only elicited examples. The one in (78) is with a dative.\footnote{\textit{\textbf{íy bēskū-kə ge-ta yí = ?yáná-ra zù?m-kə}}}

(78) \textit{\textbf{íy bēskū-kə ge-ta yí = ?yáná-ra zù?m-kə}}
\begin{align*}
\text{3S Besku-DAT | say-3S-acc | lend-REAL-STI} \\
\text{‘It is to Besku that she lent a pot (not to others).’}
\end{align*}

\footnote{Cf. Crass & Meyer (2008: 243) who describe a slightly different construction with ‘to say’ common to many Ethiopian languages.}
In (79), ge ‘to say’ is the second verb in a compound. There is probably no contrastive focus here, although the activity denoted by the verb is the focal point of the clause.

(79)  suːkú  gúːrú  ṭʃỳ = tʊụtʃù-ge-t = fʃị  tʊụtʃù-ge-t = fʃị  rope - only 3.PL = knot-say-ss = 3.PL  knot-say-ss = 3.PL

ʃástʰ-ìʃ  gāːr-k-àbàasta  tʊʃtʰ-àb
maize-DEF-M  bear.fruit-exist?-WHILE  knot.PASS-REL

suk-ŋ-s  yis-kʰ
rope-DEF-M  DIST.M-DAT  knot

‘They just knotted and knotted a rope and they counted the knots of the knotted rope while the maize ripened.’

15.5.3  Contrastive topic marker

āyntʃi is tentatively analysed as contrastive topic marker. This analysis agrees with the examples in their context and is also in accordance with the backtranslations of my language informants into Amharic (e.g. iné-mmá ‘as for me’, cf. Girma and Meyer (2007:28); or iné rase ‘I myself’). One language consultant translated az āyntʃi as ’bássu mIÓNyát’, i.e. ‘on account of him’. The last syllable of āyntʃi may relate to the dative case -tʃi of which some Omotic language have reflexes. Sheko has -kʰ as dative case; another trace of -tʃi may be present in the similitative (section 9.2.7).

(80)  gám-ástå  n = miître-a-m-ə  nat  āyntʃi
truly-3MS.COP?  1SG = witness-put-IRR-STI  1SG  CONTR.TOP

ha-kutʃi  gyèw-ki-be  tə-k-ee
2SG.POSS-chicken  chew-exist-REL.F  COP-REAL-STI

‘I will speak the very truth. I am the one who is eating your chicken.’
(81) የሆ-ባሌድ-ስ- прид ከ头皮 ከ ከurtle
1PL.POSS-younger.sibling-PL-ASS-DAT-COOR

 ámbini-won-ᡥ-ka
détā
dāmōz
1PL.POSS-elder.sister-ASS-DAT-COOR all salary(Amh)

 ihtiyacı ከ ከturtle
3PL = pay-REAL-STI 1PL-DAT CONTR.TOP

бег-serir = ከ ከturtle
pay-NEG = 3PL-exist-REAL-STI

‘They paid salary to all our younger brothers and elder sisters. To us they haven’t paid.’

(82) ይጥን ከ ከturtle ከ ከturtle ከ ከturtle ከ ከturtle
INTJ 1PL = CONTR.TOP year arrive.NV-WHILE divinate-SS

‘well, we, while the year progressed, divinated and...’

(83) ከ ከturtle ከ ከturtle ከ ከturtle ከ ከturtle
god CONTR.TOP 3MS.POSS-work who

бег-ştir
work-put-STLADDR

‘As for God, who can do his work?’
Bibliography


Bender, Marvin Lionel (1971). Sheko 100 basic words list.


Breeze, Mary (1990). A sketch of the phonology and the grammar of Gimira (Benchon). In Hayward (1990a), pp. 1-76.


Participles, Gerunds. Martin Haspelmath and Ekkehard Koenig (eds), Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter, pp 1-55.
Presented at the Friday Afternoon Lectures, Leiden University, 15 May 2009.


Wedekind, Klaus (1985b). Why Bench’ (Ethiopia) has five level tones today. In Studia linguistica diachronica et synchronica, Ursula Fieper and Gerhard Stickel (eds.), Berlin: de Gruyter, pp. 881-901.


Appendix A. Texts

When transcribing and translating texts, some changes have been made for various reasons, e.g. a slip of the tongue or mistake from the speaker has been corrected, or language consultants proposed a different wording. The edited texts are presented here, with the | to mark a pause and [ ] to mark a place which is edited.

In the footnotes, an asterisk denotes a change made because of grammaticality judgments. The asterisk is only used when I felt certain the construction was wrong. In less clear cases, no asterisk is used. The use of \_\_ in the footnotes signals which material was added in editing, while ( ) signals which material was deleted in editing. Where possible, comments from the language consultants have been included.

Text 1. The snake, the man and the fox.


(1)  səôz tə- t = á  há = tê-t-bàastà |
     snake  cop-ss = 3 ms  3ms = go.nv-while
     hāáy têe-t = á  kì-n |
     water  swell-ss = 3 ms  exist-ds

‘There was a snake and while he went, the river was flooded

(2)  áâs-t = n  n = ?ê-t = n  hāáy gaamtà
     how-cop = 1sg  1sg = do.nv-ss = 1sg  water  far.side.loc
     sâk-á-o  há = ge-h |
     arrive-put-stlad  3ms = say-ds

‘he said: “How do I do and reach the other shore?”

(3)  yəâb  k’oy  yə-g-h |
     man  one  come-ds

‘a man came
(4) \( \text{gé=} \eta \text{  ye-kà kum-kà} | \text{ k'örk-ñ-t=} \eta | \)
\( \begin{align*}
\eta &= \text{gáamtà} & \text{sak-ə} \quad \text{[ha=} \text{nata-ra} \\
&= 1\text{SG} & \text{far.side LOC} & \text{arrive STI} & 2\text{SG} = 1\text{SG ACC}
\end{align*} \)
\( \text{fin-s-ə} \)\(^1\)  \( \text{há=} \text{ge-ñ} \)
\( \text{descending - CAUS STI} \quad 3\text{MS} = \text{say-DS} \)

‘he (the snake) said: “Say, let me curl around your neck and reach the other shore (but) you should let me descend.”

(5) \( \text{3aa3=} \text{á-k-ə} \text{  há=} \text{ge-t=} \text{á} | \text{ ás-kà} \)
\( \begin{align*}
\text{be.good} &= 3\text{MS-REAL STI} & 3\text{MS} = \text{say-SS} = 3\text{MS} & 3\text{MS-DAT} \\
\text{kum-kà} & \text{ an} = \text{á} & \text{gáamtà} & \text{saw-ta} | \\
& \text{neck-IN} & \text{put} = 3\text{MS} & \text{far.side LOC} & \text{arrive NV-SS}
\end{align*} \)
\( \text{úštà} \text{  fin} \text{  há=} \text{ge-ñ} | \)
\( \text{down LOC} \quad \text{descend} 3\text{MS} = \text{say-DS} \)

‘he (the man) said: “Fine,” and put him on his neck and reached the shore and said: “Descend!”

(6) \( \text{hàà-s-tà} \text{  fin-ñ=} \text{k'y-á-m-ə} \text{  só} \)
\( \begin{align*}
\text{PROX M-LOC} & \text{ descending-NEG.} 1\text{SG-remain-put-IRR STI up there} \\
\text{yì-n-t=} \eta & \eta = \text{tée-fin-á-m-ə} & \text{há=} \text{ge-ñ} | \\
& \text{DIST F LOC} = 1\text{SG} & 1\text{SG} = \text{go NV-remain-put-IRR STI} & 3\text{MS} = \text{say-DS}
\end{align*} \)

‘he said: “I won’t go down here. Just over there I’ll go and descend.”

(7) \( \text{só} \text{  yì-n-t=} \text{á} \text{  sàsk-ñ} | \)
\( \begin{align*}
\text{up there} & \text{ DIST F LOC} = 3\text{MS} & \text{arrive CAUS-DS} \\
& \text{he brought him a little further}
\end{align*} \)

(8) \( \text{fin-ə} \text{  há=} \text{ge-ñ} | \)
\( \text{descending STI} \quad 3\text{MS} = \text{say-DS} \)

‘he said: “Descend!”

---

\(^1\) ([há = \text{ge-ñ} |) \text{ há=} \text{nata-\text{ra} \text{ \ fin-ə}]) : 3\text{MS} = \text{say-DS} 3\text{MS} = 1\text{SG ACC descending-CAUS STI.} \)  
Comment: the same person keeps talking, so we can’t use the say-verb here.
(9) \([\text{fín-ën}=\text{k'ë-á-m-ë}]^{2}\) só òti
\(\text{descend-NEG.1SG} = \text{remain-put-IRR-STI} \quad \text{up.there cow}\)
áš-tà kì-b-tà ñ = sëw-t = ñ
\(3\text{MS-LOC} \quad \text{exist-REL-LOC} \quad 1\text{SG} = \text{arrive.NV-SS} = 1\text{SG}\)
\(\text{fín-á-m-ë} \quad \text{há} = \text{ge-ñ} | \quad \text{descend-put-IRR-STI} \quad 3\text{MS} = \text{say-DS}\)

'He said: "I won't descend. Up there where that cow is I will arrive and descend."

(10) ò < y ÷ t-ñ datà ñ = sàk-ñ |
cow < F > -DEF near-LOC 3PL = arrive-DS

'they arrived near the cow

(11) òti-o na-ñ mít'ñ-o | há = ge-bàástà |
cow-STLADDR 1SG-DAT witness-STI 3MS = say-WHILE
yáb-m-s yë ge-t = á há = ?ò < y > t-ñ-kh
man-DEF-M like.this say-SS-3MS 3MS = cow < F > -DEF-DAT
gé-bàástà | ò < y > t-ñ k'ay-tà | yeta akàrb
say-WHILE cow < F > -DEF rise-SS 2SG alike
ás [tə]³ nata-ra mëdà batà
\(3\text{MS} \quad \text{COP} \quad 1\text{SG-ACC} \quad \text{plain(Amh)} \quad \text{on.LOC}\)
k'ìlts'ù-t = á | há = ?òn-k-ə | yfr = ñ
tie-SS = 3MS 3MS = go-REAL-STI what = 1SG
\(\text{n} = \text{ye-kh} \quad \text{mit'ñ-o} \quad \text{yì} = \text{ge-ñ} | \quad \text{1SG} = 2\text{SG-DAT} \quad \text{witness-STLADDR} \quad 3\text{FS} = \text{say-DS}\)

'when he said: "Oh cow, argue for me," while the man said that to the cow, the cow rose and said: "It is someone like you who tied me on the field and left. What shall I say in favour of you?"

(12) kàyëëstå há = tee-t = á tee-t = á
again 3MS = go.NV-SS = 3MS go.NV-SS = 3MS
tee-t = á | [tə]⁴ dàwà kì-t à
go.NV-SS = 3MS deer exist-DS

'again he went and went and went and - there was a deer

\(^{2}\) Comment: it starts with \(\text{fínënk'yëma}\). I.e. added for symmetry.
\(^{3}\) \([\text{ta-}<\text{k-ë} = \text{t} = \text{l}]\) : COP-PS = 3MS 3MS = . Or. \([\text{ta-}<\text{k-ë} = \text{h} = \text{t}]\) : COP = 3MS 3MS = .
\(^{4}\) \([\text{h} = \text{t}]\) : 3MS. Speaker hesitated. Not clear whether there is a 3MS clitic present on the tape.

Note that the deer gets feminine agreement in the following clauses.
(13) dãw-in | datã sõ-ta | dãwã-o |
deer-F.DEF near.LOC arrive.NV-SS deer-STL.ADDR

[na-ŋ] sôôzə əs-ə]
1SG-DAT snake PROX.M?-ACC witness 3MS = down.LOC
mit'ñi há = ãñtã
1SG = say-DS

sak-ø há = ge-ñ |
arrive-STI 3MS = say-DS

‘he arrived near the deer and said: “Oh deer, bear witness for me against the snake. Let him reach the ground.”

(14) nat dãwã ge bútã nat zilîm-ø |
1SG deer say outside 1SG chase-SS

géék'∩-ra iy-ñä an-kî-b [yeta
goat-ACC house-IN put-exist-REL 2SG

tî-r = a-ð]
COP-NEG-2SG-exist[ŋ] what = 1SG 1SG = 2SG-DAT

mit'ñi-o yî = ge-ñ |
witness-STL.ADDR 3FS-say-DS

‘she said: “Are you not the one who calling me deer chased me outside, and put a goat in the house? What could I witness for you?”

(15) kàyēest yî = òy = á tee-t = á tee-t = á
again 3FS = deny = 3MS go.NV-SS = 3MS go.NV-SS = 3MS

tee-t = á | há = yâñî-be datã sâk-ñ |
go.NV-SS = 3MS 3MS = fox-mother near.LOC arrive-DS

‘again, she refusing, he went and went and went and arrived near a fox

(16) yàñî-bey-o na-ŋ mit'ñi-ee há = ge-ñ |
fox-mother-STL.ADDR 1SG-DAT witness-STI 3MS = say-DS

‘he said: “Oh fox, witness for me.”

5 [sôôzə əs-ə na-ŋ] : snake PROX.M?-ACC 1SG-DAT
6 [yeta\ a-ð] : 2SG COP-REAL. Statement changed into a question during editing.
(17) yàtn-bey | gám-ástà | n = mîn'-à-m-ô |
fox-mother truly-3MS,cop 1SG = witness-put-IRR-STI

[ nat  aynci] 7  ha-kutîl  gyèw-ki-be
1SG CONT.TOP 2SG.Poss-chicken chew-exist-REL.mother
ta-k-ô | ye-kh ñ = mîn'-à-m-ô  yî = ge-ô |
cop-REAL-STI 2SG-DAT 1SG = witness-put-IRR-STI 3FS = say-DS

‘the fox said: “I will speak the very truth. It is me who is eating your chicken. I will witness for you.”

(18) na-ô  mîn'-ô  há = gè-b-tà  |  gö̱s  yeta
1SG-DAT witness-STI 3MS = say-REL-LOC snake 2SG

fin-ô  [ha = 7ê-k-is-tà] 8  sak-ô
descend-SS 2SG = there-LCT-DIST.M-LOC arrive-STI

yî-ge-ô |
3FS = say-DS

‘while he said: “Witness for me,”, she said: “Snake, you go down and arrive over there,”

(19) gö̱sìñ-ô s | è-k-i-s-t  sàk-ô
snake-DEF-M there-LCT-DIST-M-LOC arrive-DS

‘the snake arrived over there

(20) yàb-m-s  yeta  akh-ààs-tà  áàs-ô
man-DEF-M 2SG here-PROX.M-LOC stand-STI

yî = ge-ô
3FS = say-DS

‘she said: “Man, you stand over here.”

(21) há = ?aàs-ô | 3MS = stand-DS
‘he stood (over here)

7 [nata (n = aynci)]: 1SG (1SG = ) CONTR.TOP.
8 [ ha = è-k-is-tà]: 3MS = there-LCT-DIST.M-LOC.
(22) [yówk’a]⁹  yáb-m-s-ara  ye-kh  sóón  kááy  téê |  
INTJ  man-DEF-M-ACC  2SG-DAT  heart  be.not  COP.Q  
ye-kh  kútsù-k’a  gätji  hás-à  há-batà  
2SG-DAT  hand-IN  stick  PROX.M-ACC  3MS.POSS-ON.LOC  
bár-ár=a  ha=k’y-á  yí=ge-t=í  zeer-à |  
throw-NEG = 2SG  2SG-remain-put.Q  3FS = say-SS = 3FS  advise-DS  
‘telling the man: “Well, don’t you have a heart? Won’t you throw this stick in your hand on him?” she advised him  

(23) há=šóó-g-n-s-ara  yéb-m-s  duufu-t=á  
3MS = snake-DEF-M-ACC  man-DEF-M  hit-SS = 3MS  
wu-ñ-h |  
kill-DS  
‘the man hit the snake and killed it  

(24) yí=sàw-t=í  yír=a  ha=na-ì  
3FS = arrive.NV-SS = 3FS  what = 2SG  2SG = 1SG-DAT  
áts-o  ge-t=í  ge-ñ-h |  
give-STLADDR  say-SS = 3FS  say-DS  
‘she came and said: “What will you give me?”  

(25) zünkù=ñ  ñ=ye-kh  âts-à-m-ø  há=ge-ñ  
sheep = 1SG  1SG = 2SG-DAT  give-put-IRR-STI  3MS = say-DS  
‘he said: “I’ll give you a sheep.”  

(26) ñaaç=á-k-ø  |  yí=ge-ñ  |  
be.good = 3MS = REAL-STI  3FS = say-DS  
‘she said: “It is good.”  

(27) íy-tà  [ha=yée-t=a]¹⁰  kob-ø  há=ge-ñ  |  
house-LOC  2SG = come.NV-SS = 2SG  take-STI  3MS = say-DS  
‘he said: “Come to the house and take it.”  

⁹ [yówk’a] = INTJ = 3FS  
¹⁰ [ha=yée-t=a] = 2SG = come.NV-SS = 2SG. Not clear why the 2sg proclitic was added in editing.
475

(28) \( yí = \text{tee-bààstà} \mid \ wó-k \ \text{órá-tà} \)
\(3FS = \text{go.NV-WHILE} \ \ \ \text{down.there-IN} \ \ \ \text{garden-LOC} \)
\(tée-kì-n \mid [\eta = \text{ye-kò} \ \ \ kòb-téé-tà \ \ \ η = ?ats-a]^{11} \)
\(\text{go.NV-exist-DS} \ \ 1SG = 2SG-DAT \ \ \text{take-go-SS} \ \ 1SG = \text{give-STI} \)
\(há = \text{ge-ń} \mid \)
\(3MS = \text{say-DS} \)

‘While she went, he said: “Go and stay down in the garden; let me bring it for you and give it.”

(29) \( l³ \ \ yówká \mid \ órá-tà \ \ \ yí = \text{tee-t=f} \)
\(3FS \ \ \ \ \ \text{INTJ} \ \ \ \ \ \text{garden-LOC} \ \ \ \ \ \text{3FS = go.NV-SS = 3FS} \)
\(kootu-kì-bààstà \mid \ \ \ \ \ \text{há = züyń-a} \)
\(\text{wait-exist-WHILE} \ \ \ \ \ 3MS = \text{sheep.P.DEF-ACC} \)
\(baàƒ-gèw-tà \mid \ \ fì-khà \ \ \ \ \ \text{báátfì-ra} \ \ \ \ \ \text{kyänú batà} \)
\(\text{slaughter-chew-SS} \ \ \ \ \ 3FS-DAT \ \ \ \ \ \text{skin-ACC} \ \ \ \ \ \text{dog on.LOC} \)
\(sílpü-tà \mid \ \ fì-khà \ \ \ \ \ \text{kum-kà} \ \ \ \ \ \text{gyädü an-tà} \)
\(\text{sew-SS} \ \ \ \ \ 3FS-DAT \ \ \ \ \ \text{neck-IN} \ \ \ \ \ \text{rope} \ \ \ \ \ \text{put-SS} \)
\(há = \text{kòb-tee-t=f} = \á \ \ \ \ \ \text{bòy-ñin-å} \ \ \ \ \ \text{ge-ń} \mid \)
\(\text{3MS = take-go.NV-SS = 3MS} \ \ \ \ \ \text{drive-go-STI} \ \ \ \ \ \text{say-DS} \)

‘Well, while she went to the garden and waited, he slaughtered and ate the sheep and sewed her skin on the dog and put a rope around her neck and took her and went and said: “Go drive it.”

(30) \( yí = \text{zünkù} \ \ \ \ \ \text{to-k-å} \ \ \ \ \ \text{ge-t=f} \)
\(3FS = \text{sheep} \ \ \ \ \ \text{COP-REAL-STI} \ \ \ \ \ \text{say-SS} = 3FS \)
\(bòy-kòb-t=f \mid \ \ \ \ \ \text{kòokñ-tà} \ \ \ \ \ \text{sàw-b-tà} \)
\(\text{drive-take-SS} = 3FS \ \ \ \ \ \text{road-LOC} \ \ \ \ \ \text{arrive.NV-REL-LOC} \)
\(há = \text{wùwùwùw} \ \ \ \ \ \text{ge-tà} \ \ \ \ \ \text{fì-åra} \ \ \ \ \ \text{wòots-č́} \ \ \ \ \ \text{ge-ń} \mid \)
\(3MS = \text{IDEO} \ \ \ \ \ \text{say-SS} \ \ \ 3FS-ACC \ \ \ \ \ \text{bite-1SG} \ \ \ \ \ \text{say-DS} \)

‘she drove it away, saying: “It is a sheep,” and when she reached the road, he barked and wanted to bite her

\[^{11} \text{[ye-kò kob-t *yí = ?ats-a]} : 2SG-DAT \ \text{take-SS} \ \text{3FS = give-STI} \ \text{Mistake of storyteller.}\]
Text 2. Sheko history
Tōsā ‘history’. Some passages from an interview with Komtu Shewa Tureta, recorded 23 February 2008. Present: Komtu Shewa Tureta, several men (some elderly, two youth) and some children, Ayna Bejih, and the researcher. Place: under a big tree on the compound of Komtu Shewa.

(1) ń-kōōsʉ’e | nāta | koynab dādʉ̀ tə-kə | 1PL.POSS-divination-ści 1PL Koynab child OCP-REAL-STI
‘As for our tradition, we are the children of Koynab.

(2) ń-kōōs yök’a | ēgitə gə-t’-ùb 1PL.POSS-divination INTJ Egita say-PASS-REL
 kiy = á-kə | exist = 3MS-REAL-STI
‘Well, our tradition - There is a place called Egita.

(3) ę-ká| ēgitə gə-t’-àb-ịs-tə m-bààb there-LCT Egita say-PASS-REL-DIST.M-LOC 1PL.POSS-father
ń?àkʉ këës-yèë-k’e-k | 1PL.POSS-grandfather go.out-come.NV-remain-REAL
‘From there around the place called Egita our fathers and our grandfathers came.
(4) yök’a ŋ = etʃi | bergic saw-bastà kōös-tə | in
1PL = contr.top year arrive.nv-while divinate-ss
éés-kh ās-tə kōös-tə | umt’ə
honey-dat prox.m-loc divinate-ss food
gāār-m-bāāb ŋ = kōös-tə| umt’ə múr-n-bāāb
ripen-irr-father 1PL = divinate-ss food ripen(tuber)-irr-father
ɔ = kōös-tə | yē tə = ŋ | ki-k |
1PL = divinate-ss like.this cop = 1PL exist-real
‘well, we, while the year(s) progressed, divinated and we divinated for honey here and we divinated grains and tubers to ripen and like this we lived.

(5) kayēstā n = mākk-āb-ee | zoyti | ŋa
again 1sg = tell-rel-sti Zoyti Jeba
burgi-ka koynab-ka k’oy ta-kə |
Burzh-coor Koynab-coor one cop-real-sti
nānū-ka bādū-ka |
elder.brother-coor younger.sibling-coor
‘Again as for what I am telling, Zoyti, (i.e.) Jeba Burzh12 and Koynab were one: elder and younger brother.

(6) yēē ky-ā-a | 3a ŋa burgi wō-k’ə
like.this exist-implc-std Jeba Burzh down.there-loc
səm = a | koynab yē-k égitə | (... ...) remain = 3ms? Koynab come.nv-real Egita
‘It being like this, Jeba Burzh stayed down there and Koynab came, from Egita.

12 Zoyti is the name of Jebra Burzh in a spiritual cult.
(7) **ját’i kōš-t-ū-bāb | baakà āg-t-ū-bāb**
maize farm-PASS-IRR-father taro plant-PASS-IRR-father

**kátį yān-t-ū-bāb | yis-ara sāg-ňtą-ee**
yam plant.yam-PASS-IRR-father DIST.M-ACC see-COND-STI

**yááb-o dādū-o k’́y-t=ští baž-ó**
man-STL-ADDR child-STL-ADDR rise-SS = 2PL work-STI

**bažà sàati álľϕ=á-k-ó k’́y-t=ští**
work hour(Amh) pass(Amh) = 3MS-REAL-STI rise-PL-ADDR-STI

**guy kátį’-ft-ó | ját’i koošt-št-ó**
grassland hoe-PL-ADDR-STI maize farm-PL-ADDR-STI

**duuk’-ft-ó | n=ge-ń**
plant.corn-PL-ADDR-STI 1PL = say-DS

‘Maize is to be tilled, taro to be planted, yam to be planted; regarding this, we say: “Hey people, hey children, rise up and work. The time of work is over, wake up. Hoe the grassland. Farm the maize, sow it.”

(8) **ifí = yök’a | sābāsāb-t = ifí āàś-tà**
3PL = INTJ collect(Amh)-SS = 3PL PROX.M-LOC

**dāānà án-t-ńtà k’ış-t = ifí | yis göntį**
beer put-PASS-COND drink-SS = 3PL DIST.M SIMIL

**ifí-ga-gār-kà guy-k’à téé-t = ifí**
3PL.POSS-PLUR-head-DAT grassland-IN go,NV-SS = 3PL

**ifí-tùm’tà ifí=kōš-ō-m**
3PL.POSS-food 3PL = farm-put-IRR

‘Well, they gathered and if beer was ordered, they drank here (i.e. on the compound of the traditional leader) and like this they went to their own grasslands and they farmed their food.’

(9) **yis-ka ta=ń [ń-woom]13**
DIST.M-WITH COP = 1PL 1PL.POSS-blessing

**yaafu-k’é-k-ó**
find-remain-REAL-STI

‘It has been with this that we found our blessing.’

---

13 Text on tape unintelligible (idkta?).
(10) kōsēh yīs hā=kōs-t-āb-is-ee | tūrētā-kh
farm DIST.M 3MS = farm-PASS-REL-DIST.M-STI Tureta-DAT

hā=kōs-t-ā-m-ē |
3MS = farm-PASS-PUT-IRR-STI

‘As for these fields which were farmed, for Tureta would be farmed.

(11) bādi-kh hā=kōs-t-ā-m-ē |
Badi-DAT 3MS = farm-PASS-PUT-IRR-STI

‘For Badi would be farmed.

(12) aybara-kh hā=kōs-t-ā-m-ē |
Aybara’-DAT 3MS = farm-PASS-PUT-IRR-STI

‘For Aybara would be farmed

(13) [ās-kh ts’ōni sáānt’ā]14 bålábāti
3MS-DAT top before traditional.leader(Amh)

gē-t-āb-is yaab-ū-s-kh hā=kōs-t-ā-m-ē | (... ...) man-m-PL-DAT 3MS = farm-PASS-PUT-IRR-STI

‘Before the top, they would farm for the people who were called chiefs.’

(14) ēfrū kaay-ḥtā | kāyēēstā i[n] = dūp-m-t = ʃʃ |
rain be.not-COND again 3PL = gather-MIDD-SS = 3PL

ēfrū kaay=ā-k-ē | ts’yāaśů tā-nā-ra
rain be.not = 3MS-REAL-STI sun 1PL-ACC

wūs-ā-ḥ-ē ʃʃ = ge-ḥtā |
kill-PUT-IRR-STI 3PL = say-COND

‘If there was no rain, again they would gather and if they said “There is no rain, the sun will kill us”

(15) m-bēk’h ky-ā-k-ē |
1PL.POSS-spear exist = 3MS-REAL-STI

‘We have a spear.

14 The text on the tape is short and somewhat cryptic: [as-kn amst] : 3MS-DAT summit(Amh), ‘Before its top’ can either refer to a time, like ‘just before the peak of the year’ or to the grains for sowing, like ‘before the people took the first from their own seeds’.
(16) bēk̂ñ  gyēbtā  kōb-kēsû-tō  
spear  front.yard  take-come.out.CAUS-SS

1PL.POSS-father-STL ADDR  1PL.POSS-grandfather-STL ADDR
‘Taking the spear out into the front yard, (saying:) “Our father, our grandfather...”’

(17) yīs-a  əškū-tō  |  ēéz  kī-ḥtā  |  tākā
DIST.M-ACC  call-SS  honey  exist-COND  mead

[māṭ’ū-tō  dyāās-tō]¹⁶  |  yīs-t=ā
ferment-SS  soak.in.water-SS  DIST.M-COP = 1PL

yōwk’ā  k’ōr-ū  |  ēn-āst
INTJ  beg-DS  later.today-3MS.COP?

bērn-āst  hā= k’yār-ā-m-ə  |
tomorrow-3MS.COP?  3MS = beat-put-IRR-STI

‘We called these (forefather spirits) and if there was honey’,
fermenting and soaking it in water, made beer and well, we begged;
later that day, the following day, it would rain.

(18) nata  n=gori-k’ara  n=əshk-ḥtā  ēnā
1SG  1SG.POSS-head-INCL  1SG = call-COND  later.today

á=yēē-k’yān-ā-m-ə  |
3MS = come.NV-beat-put-IRR-STI

‘Even as I called myself, it would rain the same day.’

Proverbs
Below, four hamsus ‘proverbs, examples’ are given; the fourth
is in the Guraferda (Samarta) dialect.

---
¹⁵ The speaker explains that he calls his myangu, ‘forefather spirits’.
¹⁶ (dyāās-tō  baraš’u-tō) : soak.in.water-SS beat.a.liquid'(Amb)-SS. Commentary: too
   much Amharic and the speaker should describe the process correctly.
¹⁷ According to one informant, making honey beer was not facultative but essential for
   the ritual.
1. **door**  ṣə̀k-ìn  há-byàk'èn  
elephant  garden-LOC  arrive-DS 3MS = speak

**bora-kà**  ȧ̀s-tù-k-è  
tree-sp-IN  plant-PASS-REAL-STI

‘An elephant reached the garden; the spear stood in a *bora* tree.’

(Context: used to comment on cowardice. The *bora* tree has soft wood, and a man would plant his spear in strong wood.)

2. **ükà**  gù-t'-èn  ȧāp-ì-m  ás-tà  sàw-tà  
uncle  hang-PASS-DS  nephew-DEF-M  3MS-LOC  arrive, NV-SS

**áš-kh**  fòrì  há=k'òòtjút'-k-è  
3MS-DAT  throat  3MS = scratch-REAL-STI

‘The (maternal) uncle was hanged; the man’s sister’s son arrived and scratched his throat.’

(Context: spontaneous grief at someone else’s misfortune.)

3. **gáydù**  bààb  zùn'kù-ra  há=ziìnà  ȧàtù-k-è  
problem father  goat-ACC  3MS = leopard  hold-REAL-STI

‘The leopard caught the goat of a poor man.’

4. **káti'**  kob-as  kàha  baat'-èn  
yam  take-REL.M?  quietly  turn.away-DS

**há=siyàngà**  kob-as  gàytù-t'ùn-s  
3MS = dried.vines  take-REL.M?  hold-PASS-DECL

**há=ge-t'ù-s**  
3MS = say-PASS-DECL

‘The one who took (stole) the yams walked away quietly; the one who took the dried vines was caught, it is said.’

(Context: Someone can use this proverb to declare his innocence when he is falsely accused or reproached because the circumstances speak against him.)
Appendix B. Alphabet

In 2008, the Bench-Maji Zonal government decided to develop six of the languages spoken within the Zone for the purpose of mothertongue education. Sheko is one of these languages, together with Benchnon, Diizi and three Nilo-Saharan languages.

Before the development of the Sheko alphabet, there were no official written publications in Sheko. Some people wrote informal letters and notes using the Amharic script. Published audio material is restricted to some Christian cassette tapes. The first cassette tape with Sheko songs was released in 2007, entitled Byargu yeekə ‘The year has come’, singer Amanuel Kani Shindu, of the Qorxha Mekane Yesus Betel congregation. This tape was quickly followed by some others from different congregations, of which I have only details on Nàng s’uuno Yesusara naas’ə ‘My soul, praise Jesus’ by Sintayo Zerkns from the Shashaqa congregation.

The Sheko alphabet, called S’oku noogu aab, was drafted in 2009 after a decision was made for Latin script. This script decision meeting took place on 13-14 February 2009 in Sheko town and was attended by more than 250 Sheko from all administrative districts. Six people were then selected by the Sheko wārādā administration to discuss the details of the alphabet and orthography in workshops for the three Omotic languages, facilitated by SIL Ethiopia. The trial version of the Sheko alphabet is presented here, with the corresponding IPA symbols below:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{a} & \quad \text{b} & \quad \text{c} & \quad \text{d} & \quad \text{e} & \quad \text{f} & \quad \text{g} & \quad \text{h} & \quad \text{i} \quad \text{k} & \quad \text{m} & \quad \text{n} & \quad \text{o} & \quad \text{p} & \quad \text{q} & \quad \text{r} & \quad \text{s} & \quad \text{sh} & \quad \text{t} & \quad \text{ts} & \quad \text{u} & \quad \text{w} & \quad \text{x} & \quad \text{xs} & \quad \text{y} & \quad \text{z} & \quad \text{zh} & \quad \text{’} \\
\text{a} & \quad \text{b} & \quad \text{t} & \quad \text{j} & \quad \text{ts} & \quad \text{d} & \quad \text{e} & \quad \text{a} & \quad \text{f} & \quad \text{g} & \quad \text{h} & \quad \text{i} & \quad \text{k} & \quad \text{m} & \quad \text{n} & \quad \text{o} & \quad \text{p} & \quad \text{’} & \quad \text{k} & \quad \text{r} & \quad \text{s} & \quad \text{j} & \quad \text{s} & \quad \text{t} & \quad \text{s} & \quad \text{u} & \quad \text{w} & \quad \text{t} & \quad \text{t} & \quad \text{j} & \quad \text{ts} & \quad \text{t} & \quad \text{s} & \quad \text{y} & \quad \text{z} & \quad \text{3} & \quad \text{?’} & \quad \text{?’} & \quad \text{?’} & \quad \text{?’} & \quad \text{?’} & \quad \text{?’} & \quad \text{?’} & \quad \text{?’} & \quad \text{?’} & \quad \text{?’} & \quad \text{?’} & \quad \text{?’}
\end{align*}
\]

The first booklets in the Sheko orthography were produced by Sheko participants of the workshops and published in September 2009 by the SIL Bench-Maji Zone Language Development and Mothertongue-based Multilingual Education Project, Mizan Teferi. Here is a list:

\textit{Kaari S’oku nooguqa kobotagnbaab maxsaﬁ}

(Sheko transition primer, trial edition)
484

*S'oku noogu maxsafi - dadu kotnsabkn*
(Sheko book for children, contains short stories and rhymes)

*S'oku noogu maxsafi - dadu iiqnsabkn*
(Sheko book for teenagers, contains contemporary stories)

*S'oku saayka hā bazhaka maxsafi*
(Sheko stories and practices book, contains some traditional stories and some descriptive texts)

The language workers Xarata Alamu and Agəgnaw Worku, who are appointed by the Sheko wärädä administration, play a large part in starting up the language work in Sheko. Aim is to provide training as well as the necessary materials in Sheko for education up to grade four.

The language workers have written two poems for this book, to celebrate the development of the language with verbal art.

1. **QOY S'OON Ņ FOOTẼ**

kookn shadnka daanta kib S'oku yaabonka
dacha fīrā sasku qarnsab bengiqa
bengs nāng tākè azqa ņ qaynbaā
nāng s′oon qoy anta faadu ņ kaysnbaā
unabab qyaastā qarns footutā
ń dadu tamarstā ņ noogu arutā
wotā saanta ņ baznbaā ņ dadu kn maakutā
unakā haqastaka bazzabarā sesutā
ń noogu ņ angusa qoy footutā

ĭtiā ŋ tuuurkn gībta fōttnbāb
S′oku gaydura ŋ gaydu genbab
S′oku tosāra ŋ etka maaknbaā
qoy s′oon ŋ footā nātās do tākā

faadu ŋ kesnbaā yeshnta daan gīmtna
ń S′oku noogukn ara atsūtā
ń dadu tamarstā aska xsaftā
qoysnsab xsaftnbaā yeshnta tamarstā
ń aska xuustā S′oku ņ noogu tākā

xsafab Agəgnaw Worku
1. **LET US BE ONE HEART**

Sheko people in far places and nearby
in the new era which got you there suitably
the year is ours in it we will rise
make our hearts one wipe out hunger
leave the past and become new
teach our children consider our language
in the future what we will do is telling our children
showing what has been done in the past and now
expand our language becoming one

who is the one who will be a defence for the land?
who calls the Sheko problems his problems
who lends his own voice to Sheko history
Let us become one heart, it's just us

let's struggle together to remove hunger
let's give thought to the Sheko language and
teach our children and write it
teach because they will write other things
let's get to know it Sheko is our language

writer Agagnew Worku (translation ACH with AW)
UTI

uti umxä takä
uti ugn takä
uti uqu takä
uti ushta há saskama
util... taamu qexxn takä
taafuta tikara kib qema
qexxn takä
qex' u samara qema
util... aabka seeto há toosnëara
aynarä qema aas'utä
arara qema arara yekn
util... s'uun takä s'ubara qema
s'uma tiskukib takä
faadura fayxustä
faaraka dorsukub takä
utab askn ushn z'arara qema
utab ugnta bartëb qena kinta oyarä qema
uti uutn zyaama há saskama
wo uti ishi gekä
unuta taamura s'oonkn boqä
usu byaqn urgn iiru
wo uti ishi gekä wo uti ishi gekä
ugn gonchi shishqukiib
wo uti ishi gekä
umxä footab s'uunkn
ura dumstä
umsutä há umxära
hä garikn usu gorqntä
koru samutä
kooru qexxutä
komtu dadura konqa saskuta
qanqabaabara konqa qaysutä
qoy gaamta saskuta
wo uti ishi gekä
uta utuxä
utira uma
utira umsa

xsafab Xarata Alamu
2. **LOVE**

love is food
love is salt
love is milk
love helps up who is on the ground
love ... is the catching of fire
    will not cool down and extinguish
    is flaming
    will not stop burning
love... watching a relative
    does not envy him, she stands
    does not think, does not assume for you
love... is life, she does not die
    is what quenches thirst
    defeats hunger
    is what sets running on the highway
who loves does not drop the flowers
does not refuse even the one who fell into the rubbish dump
love makes from the poor a next of kin
oh love they say
    ignite the fire in the heart
    spear of the bones, hailstorm
oh love they say
    which is tasty like salt
oh love they say
    which is food for life
    wanting to delight
    feeding its fare
    eating her own bones
    remaining behind empty
    to swallow up bareness
    carrying the king’s child on the hip
    lifting who is on the bottom to her hip
    bringing it to the other side
oh love they say
    love and be loved
    eat love
    feed love

writer Xarata Alamu (translation ACH with AB)
Appendix C. Wordlist

The wordlist uses the Sheko alphabet as listed in Appendix B.

Part 1: S’oku - Ingliz
Part 2: English - Sheko

Abbreviations:
adj.    adjective
adv.    adverb
caus    causative derivation
dem.    demonstrative
f.      feminine gender
H, L    verb class
loc.    with locative case
midd    middle derivation
n.      noun
num.    numeral
nvs     non-velar stem
pass    passive derivation
pron.   pronoun
q.      question word
quant.  quantifier
v.      verb
1,2,3,4 tone
>       to be found under

S’oku - Ingliz

aab 4 n. 1. eye; 2. fruit  aab bita
face  ñ-aabka ñ-seeko I saw
with my own eyes
aab 4 q. how?
aas H v. stand, stop
aat L v. hold, catch
abdi 33 n. footprint, footprint Xkn
adiq 11 adv. upward
adi 33 n. footprint, footprint Xkn
aft L v. be drunk  aflu baab
drunkard
an H v. put, do
anga 33 quant. much, very
angus L v. make big pass: angus
ar H v. think  ara 41 n brains, thought  ara an hope
asha 33 n. debt
as’ L v. plant

as’ku 33 n. meat
as’u 33 n. leg, foot
atn L v. become used to  atnsi n.
exercise
ats L v. give
ax’u 21 n. tooth
ay L v. dance
ayn L v. think much about,
worries, be sad, long for  ayna
33 n. desire, wish, grief
az 4 pron. he  asa 42 him

baab(a) 31 n. father  babm 41
father (term of address)
baabu 33 n. male
baachi 44 n. skin
baadu 41 n. younger sibling
baaka 21 n. taro (Colocasia
esculenta)
baaku 41 n. firestones
baar H v. take a mouthful
baara 33 n.f. girl teenager,
unmarried woman
baara 31 num. hundred
baarin 31 n.f. star
baas L v. search, want, like
basus v caus. need  nang há
basuskika  It is necessary for me
baash H v. slaughter
baaya 33 n. lion
bacha 33 n. paternal uncle
bacha 21 n. bed
bakara 441 n. griddle
bakasha 331 n. stool
bakn 44 n. molar tooth
bambu 44 n. grave, pit
bangar H v. return, answer
bar H v. become blind
bar L v. 1.boil, cook (of liquid);
2. throw away, abandon; 3. do completely, finish  ñ
xesbaruka  I finished baking
barka 33 n. thigh
barkay 331 n.f. grivet monkey
barm L v. become adult (girl)
barrhush H v caus. wash, bathe
   pass: barrhux
basn 44 n. doorstep
baxa 33 n. soft cheese
baxh H v. voice your anger
bay 41 n.f. mother, female 31
   mother (term of address)
bayn wife
baza H v. work, make, do bazha
   21 n. work
ba’ L v. carry on the back kum
   ba’ embrace
beg L v. pay
bengi 33 n. year
besk, bes’k L v. divide
bets L v. leave standing while
cutting weed around; put
   neatly together
bez L v. grow, sprout out, be
   produced
bindu 33 n. clan of potters and
   hunters
bii 33 n. feather
bik H v. stop (of rain)
bitsu 31 n. fern
bokn 44 n. day
bonq L v. burn
boob H v. speak in your sleep
boog H v. harvest yam caus:
   bosq
boor H v. move to another
   region
booru 33 n. harvested farmland
boota 33 n. dust
boox L v. paint, rub, smear
boox’ H v. dig up, scrape
booz L v. stroll, walk, visit
bora 21 n. goiter
bota 41 n. calebash half
bota 33 n. mortar botn L v.
   grind in mortar
bow 33 n. stomach, belly bow
   annkib fool bow kaaf mislead
box’a 21 n. shelf or sitting place
   from mud
boy L v. drive (cattle, vehicle)
boys L v. wed boysu 44 n.
   dowry
buchi 33 n. wound
buc’a 21 n. nest
buda 31 n. pumpkin
buh H v. bark
bur H v. 1. fly, flow by; 2. ask
   payment of debt
bur L v. flood
bura 44 n. waistcloth
but L v. throw
buta 41 loc. outside
buuts H v. cut (horizontal
   movement), clear ground
byaa 21 n. calf
byasau 33 n. crocodile
byad H v. be slippery
byah H v. open
byaqq 33 n. spear
byarn 33 adv. tomorrow
daab L v. create
daadu 33 n. lightning
daadu 13 n. reciprocal labor
daag L v. invite pass: datk
daaka 21 n. yeast
daaq H v. taste acid (fruit)
daam L v. plant sticks for yam
daan H v. be together
daana 31 n. beer made from
   grain
daaxhu 31 n. worm
dacha 12 adv. right, correct, straight

dadu 33 n. child dedns boy
   daygn girl du du knots baby,
   little child du du liqns
   teenager
dafr 12 idea. slowly, careful
damxhara 211 n. ginger
dark L v. be cut in long pieces
daya 21 n. bow
da’ H v. batter
debb L v. 1. bury; 2. beat, strife
deyna 21 n. burial site in forest
dawa 41 n. python
dawa 33 n.f. deer
dich L v. sneeze
didu 33 n. scar
diq L v. be anointed, painted
   caus: disk diq 21 n.
   ointment, cream, paint
diqqa 31 n. mute, dumb
diir 4 n. erosion, landslides
dikn 21 n. heel
dinch 13 n. black spotted maize
dingga 13 adv. round
dinguru 331 n. viper
dir L v. sweep, brush
dod L v. be fresh (butter), be young (wood)
dogama 131 n. dove
donqa 33 n. (red durra) sorghum
dook L v. roast uncooked food on fire
donq H v. dip
door L v. run
doosha 33 n. baboon
doos L v. trudge, make slow headway
dori 33 n. rainbow
duba 41 n. maggot
dubdus H v caus. collect pass: dubdus, midd: dubm
dud H v. be deaf dudu baab deaf
duf H v. hit
dufara 331 n. elephantiasis
duKn 44 n. jawbone
duqasha 211 n. garlic
duqux L v. pass. be spoiled by vermin
dum L v. hit with fist
dunki 21 n. basket used for honey
dupn 31 n. small leaf at bottom of ensete
duq L v. sow corn
dyaas L v. immerse, soak in water
dyabxasu 33 n. dung (of cow)
ed 4 n. mouth, rim (of cup)
eeb L v. be blessed (by father)
eed 3 n. door
eekn 33 n. cabbage (Brassica caranata)
eena 44 n. wealth, riches eena baab rich person
eeri 33 n. hare, rabbit
eez 4 n. honey
eezza 21 n. cat
egi L v. do nvs: ee
eki 33 n. cattle, money, resources eki baab rich person
ema 21 n. so-and-so
ena 41 adv. later today
erfu 44 n. wild ensete
es H v. take honey from a hive
exs H v. be sweet
faad L v. count f(y)aadi 44 n. number
faad 2 n. body
faafa 41 n. honeycomb
faafa 33 n. papaya
faan v. saw
faana 31 n. fork (in branch, in road)
fadus L v caus. make hungry pass: fadux faadu 41 hunger
fak L v. split, be dissected caus: fakus
far H v. clear ground
fara 33 n. horse
fay L v. be saved, healed
fayx L v. be weak, tired
feesh H v. spend the day
fer L v. blow
fik H v. be convenient fikus H v caus. put in order, prepare, fix
fin H v. descend, dismount
fits L v. walk, take big step
foog H v. disclose, unlock, open
foot L v. become, happen
for 21 n. hole (in the ground)
fori 33 n. throat
fosq L v. skin, cut a slice
forxhush L v caus. undress pass: forxhux
funchu 44 n. chaff, hulls
funchu 33 n. honey grates
fur H v. slip through, under
furfi 44 n. storm, hurricane
fus L v. finish a period of time
fuur L v. trade, buy, sell pass: furx 1.be traded; 2.obey
fuurkob buy fuurbar sell
fyaan L v. peel
fyaaanu 44 n. frog
fyåaxx L v. shave

gaachu 33 n. teff (*Eragrostis tef*)
gaam H v. roast
gaamta 41 loc. other side, bank (of river)
agaan L v. make consenting or encouraging noises
gaar L v. bear fruit (of grains)
agaazy 33 n. sideboards, whiskers
agaazy' L v. prune
gåb H v. collect, be gathered
gåba L v. gossip gaba 41 n. gossip
gaba 33 n. market
gachi 33 n. stick
gåd L v. start (something)
gagi 41 n. revenge gagi baab enemy
gama 12 adv. truly, really
gamabaab truth
gang L v. fly
ganxwu 44 n. noise
ganxwu 31 n. dewlap
gap L v. roast under hot stones
gar L v. sing drunkenly
gara 33 n. 1. joke; 2. albino skin
garga 33 n. termite garga iy termite hill
garus L v caus. greet pass: garux
garunsa greet each other
garz L v. be not cooked well, stay unripe
gasik H v. insult
gashu 41 n. pig, swine
gaten L v. nàng há gatsnka he helped me
gaz L v. be greedy
gaydu 44 n. problem
gaz L v. snap, break midd: gazn snap (spontaneously)
gazhira 131 n. long knife
gë H v. say
gemb 31 q. how much
gyábta 31 n. front yard

gëen L v. pour with a cup gëeni 33 n. gourd with long neck
gëeq L v. pour with a cup gëeq 41 n. goose
gëeq’u 33 n. lower back
gëetu 31 n. waterpipe
gëex L v. laugh gëex’u 31 n. laughter, dërx’a gëex’ smile
gër 44 n. hill, upward slope
gërbi 33 n. armpit
gari 41 n. head nàng gari my head, ŋ-gari myself, geriga up, above Xko garita above, more than, greater than X
gëlbm L v. wrestle, struggle
gëbu 41 n. cloud
gich H v. lean
gift L v. boast, brag
gëis L v. pull, abduct for marriage
gëis L v. rub (ointment), batter (on millstone)
giizhu 41 n. cheek
gëginga 131 n. milipede
gëng L v. nod off, doze
gërifu 33 n. 1. spider; 2. trap
gërm L v. ruminate
gëixa L v. girdle, dress (trousers, skirt)
gëb H v. jump
gob 2 n. welkin gob saaxsáko It has dawned, become light
gofara 211 n. toad
gogu 33 n. tortoise
goñá 31 adv. yesterday
goobà 33 n. bed of mud
gooc H v. bite (of snake)
goof L v. brood (of chicken)
goom H v. pile, heap, stack
goona 33 n. someone born in the same month, equal
goona 33 n. beehive half
goona 21 n. mat
goora 41 n. Amhara, north Ethiopian, outsider, stranger
goorž’o 44 n. gullet, throat
goosu 33 n. gourd
goota 31 adv. midnight
gooxsn L v. be white
goópara 331 n. bark of tree
gorz'u 13 n. lizard
gotaj v. be far, distant
goydu 31 n. guereza monkey
gozaq H v. praise
gub 4 n. chest
gunt L v. kneel down
gump L v. be turned upside down
gurxi 33 n. navel
gushn 44 n. porcupine
gut L v. hang, string up
guru 44 quant. only
guy 4 n. farmland which has to be tilled
guyu L v. bow down, worship
gyaamu 33 adv. evening
gyaasu 33 n. shield
gyadu 33 n. rope
gyanu 33 n. coffee (plant, drink)
  gyanu aab coffee beans
gya' L v. eat, chew

haak H v. pick, gather
haaqasta 411 adv. now
haara 44 n. knife
haaz 1 dem. m. this
haani 11 dem. f. this
haashu 31 n. tail
haatu 41 n. razor
haay L v. spend the night
haay 3 n. water
haay 2 n. 1. ear; 2. leaf of ensete or yam
hamshu 41 n. sand
hark L v. respect a taboo  harku 44 n. taboo
harkx H v. rip, tear, break
hars'kn L v. be wide
hayqa 21 adv. up
hays L v. 1. shut one's mouth, be quiet 2. manage, govern
humxha 41 n. midrib of ensete

iid H v. fetch water
iiq H v. be old
iir see iid
iiru 44 n. rain  iiru qyaraka it rains
ilts L v. boil (drinks)
ii'z 4 n. new tubers that form after yam is harvested
in H v. go (alt. of tag)
inchu 41 n. wood, tree
ins L v. be pregnant
ints L v. be heavy, difficult
irish H v. ululate
irxhush L v caus. rub (dry material) pass: irxhux
is L v. close
isn 33 n. beehive
ishi 41 pron. they
iti 44 pron. you pl.
iti 33 q. who?
iw L v. live, reside
ixh H v. bewitch, do evil  ixha
  baab witch
iy 3 n. house
izh 4 pron. she
izhama 211 n. hippo

kaal L v. 1. build; 2 add, cover
kaam H v. be lit
kaama 44 n. flame, spark
kaari 21 adv. toward
kaaru 33 n. cemetery, grave
kaaru 41 n. canine tooth
kaasu L v. play  kaasu 31 n. game
kaas H v. warm oneself by the fire
kaats H v. be ripe  caus: kats
  cook
kaax H v. hoe, dig
kaay H v. be absent, lack caus:
  kay lose
kaazh H v. be happy, glad
  kaazha 41 n. joy
kabe 32 n. dream
kabi 44 n. axe
kabi 21 n. shoulder
kacha 12 adv. already, yet
kachi 44 n. yam (Dioscorea)
kada n. top part
kadi 31 n. cactus (Euphorbia candelabrum)
kadu 33 num. three
kafa 21 n. bird
kaga 44 n? left
kamdi 31 n. cow which has
given birth often
kant H v. beg milk
kanta 31 n. carrying basket
kaq H v. suspend, hang up
kara 21 n. leaf
karb L v. be strong, powerful
karbu 44 n. strength
karm 33 n. fence
karka 31 n. forest
karsi 44 n. doll representing
deceased person
kasa 21 n. mamba snake
kask H v. be cheerful, laugh out
kass 44 n. whiskers
kashkush H v caus. harvest
kashu 44 n. garbage, dirt
kat v. gallop
kawa 21 n. fat
kay 31 n. god, idol kaym f.
reddish sun disc
keece' H v. spin, twist
kees L v. climb, go out, up
keeex v. snore
kengaxha 441 n. pipe
keri 31 n. finger
keru 33 n. pelvis
kesa 41 n. thatch, reeds
ket H v. plaster (with mud)
keta 41 quant. all
ki L v. be, exist, live X nang
kieko I have X.
kob L v. take
kojah H v. make roofbeams,
kojaha 41 n. roofbeam
koh H v. ripple, murmur (of
water)
kontu 33 n. king, chief,
traditional leader
konda 44 n. jug
kongu 33 n. wing, fin
koobu 33 n. cock
koochi 41 n.f. mother-in-law
kooka 44 n. lowest point of
valley
kookn 33 n. road, path, place
koon v. prophesy, foretell
koos L v. divinate, practice
traditional customs koosu 21 n.
divination, culture, traditional
practice, wisdom
koos' L v. farm, plough, till
kos'n 33 n. farm, field
koot H v. wait, look after hâ-
gari koot beware, you are
warned
kooce' H v. 1. vomit; 2. throw a
spear
kooya 41 n. bridge
kor H v. be dry
koru 31 adv. empty
kos'qan 31 n. wedge
kota 42 quant. few, little
koxa 31 n. comb
koy L v. 1. answer a call; 2. joke
with somebody
koyg L v. bring nvs koy
kubm 33 num. four
kuchi 41 n.f. chicken, hen
kuc'u 44 n. arm, hand kuc'u
kumu elbow
kum 2 n. neck
kums' L v. be pulverized,
crumbled (by hand)
kundus L v caus. push pass:
kundux
kur L v. heft, lift up
kurkms L v. bore, do not interest
kush L v. be ill, sick
kuura 31 n. donkey
kuyn H v. drizzle
kuzhu 33 n. cockscomb
kyaz 3 n. lord, chief
kyab L v. burn farmland (guy)
kyaka 31 n. border
kyam L v. meet
kyanger H v. curse
kyamu 33 n. dog
kyat H v. sting (of bee)
kyats L v. fell (a tree)
ma 4 adv. earlier today
maak L v. tell
maara 31 n. beads
maaru 21 n. mercy maaru qor
repent
maaya 21 n. raincape of grass
maa H v. deceive  maadi 33 n. deceit
mak H v. measure in cups
maka 33 n. best man, mediator in marriage
man H v. braid, plait hair
manta 44 n. braid
mar H v. stink, smell bad
masq H v. 1. be brave; 2. be patient  masqkhns courageous, patient
mas'a 33 n. spirit
mati 41 n. clay cup (for woman)
max L v. ferment
meen 2 n. buffalo
meer H v. be thick, fat
mixi 31 n. chili pepper
mix L v. witness
mixin L v. despise
moog L v. break off, destroy
moy 21 adv. quick
mukmuri 131 n. top ensete leaf, still curled up
mur H v. bear fruit, ripen (of tubers)
mura 41 n. mead
muru 44 n. lower part of yam tuber, corn (ensete bulb)
mus'a 41 n. moss
mus'qan L v. swim
muti 33 n. cubit, forearm
muq L v. shred
muqtn L v. melt
myaaqgu 44 n. egg
myangu 33 n. forefather spirit
myas H v. hew, carve
myawu 41 n. jackal
na 3 q. where?
naanu 44 n. elder brother
naar H v. blow (of wind), make dry
naaru 33 n. wind, weather
naas L v. praise, thank, honor
naas'l 44 n.
nar H v. dance together (of two persons)
na'a 33 n. husband
nata 22 pron. I nang 21 to/for me
nata 42 pron. we
nang 41 to/for us
neep L v. be ripe and good (of tubers, pumpkin)
nefa 42 adv. always
nesha 13 adv. firmly
nexit H v. taste food on your hand
nim H v. dew
nini 44 n. elder sister
nin H v. kiss
nip L v. be pulverized
noki 33 n. tonsil
nong L v. talk  noogu 41 n. word, language, matter
nooxha 21 n. leech
norit 33 n. butter
nunq H v. suck
nuxu 33 n. 1. wild animal 2. thing, device
nucu'u 31 n. hyena
nyaas L v. bear a child
nyaku 33 n. young man, bachelor
nyakn L v. become adult (of man)
ochi 44 n. mushroom
oc L v. cough
om H v. boast
om L v. be replete, more than satisfied
oof H v. dress
oon 4 n. plain, flat ground
oor L v. set a snare  oora 21 n. snare
ooru 33 n. fish
oohx H v. 1. ask; 2. visit  ooxha 44 n. question
or L v. make a sound (of animals)
orr H v. urinate  orru 44 n. urine
ora 44 n. wet dung
orata 33 loc. (in the) garden
orxhus L v caus. peel (e.g. hairs of taro) pass: orxhux
orq L v. peel banana
orqa 41 n. cardamom
orsa 44 n. dry dung
os'a 44 n. dry dung
osk L v. call
oti 31 n.f. cow n.m. cattle
oy L v. refuse oysns L v. look down on
peep H v. pray peepu 21 n. prayer
peexa 31 n. grass used to thatch a roof
peexu 21 n. ring on grass roof
piizi 44 n. hole as small as a pinprick
puhx 44 quant. many, much
purq L v. be uprooted, fallen down
qaab H v. pour out
qaam H v. bring up (someone else’s) child
qaax L v. stone
qaax’u 41 n. red army ant
qaaza 41 n. trap
qaaxsi 33 n. cockroach
qabus L v. caus. order, command
qabust L v. obey
qambu 13 n. settlement, village
qamu 41 n. servant, slave
qanda 41 n. backyard
qapm 44 n. big gourd holder
qapxs H v. cut (e.g. with scissors)
qarns 44 adj. new, raw (meat)
qarnx green (nearly ripe maize)
qarnx’u 44 n. wrist or ankle joint
qash H v. pluck, break fruit from stem
qaxi 33 n. ring
qay H v. rise
qad v. swear geda 33 n. oath
qeeda 41 n. ring for wearing things on the head
qeeru 33 n. door (old style)
qeesx L v. 1. be sharp, hot; catch (of fire) 2. be roasted (of cooked food)
qeesx H v. get iron tool off its wooden handle
qeesx L v. swallow, eat (honey), take medicine
qeesx’ H v. be cold
qeqiri 441 n. dung (of goat)
qemti 31 n. co-wife
qenq v. ring a bell
qepm 41 n. peg, nail
qesh H v. handle, ear
qeshk H v. stab with finger, hit with knuckles
qes’ v. be wonderful, frightening
qis’ L v. milk
qix L v. tie cattle
qix L v. grind dry material on millstone
qiq H v. intertwine
qirq H v. bend, curve, twist
qis’ H v. drink
qof L v. estimate, guess
qorq H v. see qirq
qoox H v. scratch
qopm 33 n. eyelash
qor L v. beg
qos 21 n. basket
qoy 2 num. one, a certain
qoyxns 33 adj. other, different, unique, special
qozx H v. be strong, hard
qud L v. cover qudi 31 n. lid, cover
quum 33 n. knee
quad 44 n. buttocks, bottom
quxs L v. cut
qyaaf H v. kick
qyaas H v. leave, let go, abandon (an activity)
qyar H v. beat
saaku 41 n. downward slope, ravine
saanta 41 loc. in front
saaku 33 n. sky
saaxta 441 adv. in the morning
saaxs H v. dawn
saaya 31 n. story (for fun)
saba 33 n. mane
sagn 21 num. nine
sak L v. arrive, reach nvs: sa,
caus: sask bring (out), invent, show the way
sam L v. remain
san 2 n. forehead
san L v. be turned, go around
sar H v. be hot
seema 41 n. tusk
seh, syah H v. erase, wipe out
sekiri 331 n. wattle, sixth finger or toe
sag H v. see nvs: see, caus: ses show pass: sex be visible
siiku 33 n. chin
siip L v. sew sipm. 33 n. awl
siis H v. hear
sinxu 41 n. nose
sir H v. be dented, cracked
siskn 41 n. scorpion, crab
stia 44 n. sword
sitsu 44 n. hair
so 4 adv. up there
soq L v. lie down, sleep
sub L v. be red
suku 44 n. rope (esp. of humxha)
sumaa 41 n. name
sumini 131 n. 25 ct coin
sunda 31 n. 1. bridge of rope 2. cloth for carrying children on the back
sutn H v. be sharp, pointy
syaaf L v. be wet, be rotten
syaak H v. give birth (of animal)
syaaruu 33 n. red soil
shaad H v. be long, tall
shaaku 41 n. firesticks
shaqaq 33 n. soup
shaam L v. glitter
shaan H v. break
shaanu 44 n. hoof
shaar L v. 1. rob, snatch; 2. sing shaara 31 n. song
shach H v. herd
shafa 44 n. fingernail
shak H v. weave
shapk v. be thin
shapm 33 n. bee larvae
sharux L v pass. be asleep (of body part)
shash H v. wet, make sharp
sheen L v. be bad
sheema 33 n. clothing
shenshi 44 n. 50 ct coin
shey H v. forget
sheji 33 n. stone, rock
shanku 33 ideo. quickly
shaxi 41 n. maize
shaxu 31 n. earthworm
shi 4 n. dung (of dog)
shibar H v. stroke over the head
shii L v. add
shiru 33 n. abundance, prosperity
shima 31 adv. day after tomorrow
shiq L v. be short
shiqu 31 n. thorn
shira 44 adv. two days after tomorrow
shishk L v. be delicious, tasty
shishkun 41 n. claw, fingernail
shishu 44 n. side
shitn 41 n. pool, lake
shinku 33 ideo. quickly
shootta 44 n. little filter for coffee
shooy L v. spill (of liquids)
shor L v. be afraid
shora 44 n. locust
shorkn 33 n. grasshopper
shurxn L v. shrink
s’aad 3 n. water (well) containing minerals
s’aan H v. peek
s’aan L v. saw
s’aap H v. tear off
s’aar L v. cry (of chicken)
s’an H v. become bald s’aana 41 n. baldness
s’afo 41 n. grass or leaf used to fan oneself
s’okn L v. wrap (clothes)
s’oku 44 n. Sheko
s’ongu 33 n. lyre
s’onqu 44 n. lie
s’oog H v. shove, move aside
s’oon 4 n. heart
s’oonaa 31 n. booth
s’oonu 33 n. squirrel
s’oota 33 n. coals
s’ooz’ 4 n. snake
s’orxn 13 n. lung
s’os’kn L v. be light, easy
s’ow 3 n. cold
s’oyr 4 n. stick, tool for pushing
or holding something
s’ub H v. 1. die; 2. be tender (of
meat)
s’ubu 33 n. death
s’uf H v. smell nicely
s’uk 44 n. eyebrow
s’uqa 31 n. stiff porridge
s’um H v. make thirsty
s’us’ku 44 n. weed
suqu 41 n. handle
s’uun 3 nf. life
s’u’ H v. rest  s’u’a 41 n. rest,
chapter
taaf H v. cool down
taamu 33 n. fire
taashu 33 n. skirt of grass
taazn 33 n. trumpet, horn
taft L v. touch
taka 33 n. mead, beer
tamu 44 num. ten
tara 21 n. 1. wasp; 2. spur
tarti 41 n. butterfly
techa 31 n. hip
tee see tag
teeema 31 n. honey (liquid)
teer L v. swell
teresha 441 n. coffee pot
tog H v. go nvs: tee
tig L v. shake, trill caus: tigus
titim L v. mock
tiira 31 n. shadow
tit 41 n. look, watch, stare, gaze
titi 33 n. 1. back; 2. corn
cortex of ensete
titis L v. dismiss
tik L v. be extinguished, be
quenched (of thirst), be turned
off (of light) caus: tisk
tir L v. throw tumblingly
togaa 44 n. mud
toog L v. thunder
toopa 31 n. stem (of ensete)
tooara 44 adv. downhill
tooa’ L v. add to water
toot H v. erect, put on its base
tooz 4 n. relative
tor H v. plant, stick into the
ground
tora 31 adv. open
tori 41 n. three-legged fork
tosa 33 n. story, myth, history
tubsu 33 num. seven
tucha 21 n. upper part of a yam
tuber
tufk L v. collide, bump into
tukan 31 n. hole
tumba 33 n. tobacco
tugur H v. spring forth, gush
tura 31 n. skin to decorate an
artefact
tura 21 n. rainy season
tuun L v. lead people
tuun 4 n. spring
tuuri 33 n. tree stump
tuuru 41 n. land, ground, earth,
soil  tuurukn garika (in) the
world
tusu 44 n. pole in the middle of
the house
tuuc’ L v. knot, tie  tuuc’u 31 n.
knot
tyaaq L v. cut a yam root
tyaraa 41 n. gouged half for
drinking (for men)
tyarbu 33 n. drum
uba 44 n. see guy
ubs L v. creep (of baby)
udg L v. become night, darken
udu 44 n. ensete
ugn 41 n. salt
uka 33 n. maternal uncle
uka 21 n. cap, hat
uqar H v. crown (of cock)
uqu 33 n. milk
um H v. eat  umxa 21 n. food
un L v. ignite
una 41 adv. in the past, long ago
underkn 441 adv. day before
yesterday
urgn 41 n. hail
us’n 33 n. horns
usnh 44 n. flower
ut H v. love, want uti 33 n. love, will
utsi 44 n. fly
uc'u 44 num. five
usu 41 n. bone
utn 31 n. rat
uzi 21 n. firstborn

woka 44 adv. down there wota 41 down there, later
womfa 33 n. canoe
wonxhi 44 n. grass
woog H v. sit down
woog H v. 1. be smooth, soft; 2. be weak, tired; caus: wosq tire
woom L v. bless
woor H v. draw from sheat
wooxs H v. bite, sting (of bees)
woozh L v. refuse to ripen
wopmbe 212 n. chameleon
wor L v. miss the mark
wos L v. send wosa 33 n. message, letter
woskin 41 q. when?
woshkn L v. move, be in motion
wumx L v. rinse your mouth
wunx L v. steal
wurbm H v. be turbid
wurxsu 44 n. tadpole
wusak L v. enter, insert
wusha 42 adv. much
wus H v. kill
wus'k L v. untie
wut H v. fall
wuuru 33 n. flesh (of fruit)

xaagn 33 num. two
xara 41 n. injera
xechu 13 n. pebble
xef H v. be plump, fat
xemsi 44 n. stone used to steady a pot on the fire
xep H v. carry (on shoulder, on head)
xerk L v. push forward, shove
xes L v. bake bread, injera
xip L v. fill up, close,
xoop L v. be baptised
xosqn L v. leak

xosy H v. make a sound of beating with one’s fingers
xur L v. roll up san xurm frown
xuum L v. sheave xuma 21 n. sheaf
xuum 4 n. mountain
xus L v. know xuusi 33 n. knowledge
xyabm L v. be thick
xyam 4 n. breast

xhaaq L v. have headache
xhaaru 41 n. (stone in) waterfall
xhaaru 33 n. medicine
xhaaru 21 n. twin
xharik 33 n. dew
xharsh L v. carve
xhir H v. be fresh, unripe, wet
xhimsh 44 adj. green, unripe
xhix L v. stretch (muscles)
xhof H v. drip
xhor H v. finish, come to an end caus: xhorsq finish, bring to a close
xhoy H v. go mad
xubi 44 n. small knife

xsaa L v. be filtered (of liquid)
xsah H v. dry, ripen
xomsa 41 n. eagle
xospm 33 n. root
xsarkn H v. spew, spit far
xsaw L v. darken, be black
xseri 21 n. rue
xseng 21 n. udder
xisjqn 41 n. charcoal
xis 4 n. clay
xisirk 44 n. diarrhea xisirku
goom lie, tell untruth
xsog L v. bear fruit (of banana, ensete)
xsoua 31 n. infructescence (ensete)
xsook L v. pray
xsok s H v. slap with handpalm, clap, applaud
xsonei 33 n. top, edge
xsosx 4 n. full
xsobm H v. be narrow
xsur H v. throw a spear
xsuuxs H v. whistle
xsuxs L v. itch
xsuykn 21 n. firefly
xsyaaxs H v. tie, imprison
xsyaaxsu 31 n. sun, shine/shine
xsyak L v. be good, preferred
xsyakn 33 n. ashes
xsyarn 33 n. beard
xsyasn L v. be satisfied, replete

x'ad H v. 1. pierce, pin 2. stretch one's legs
x'ad L v. cut off new sprouts of yam
x'adn L v. fight, war x'adn 41 n. fight, war
x'amfi 44 n. bait
x'ubu 44 n. smoke
x'ubu 21 n. sin
x'ud v. spit x'ud 4 n. saliva
x'uumu 33 n. fog
x'uum'u 31 n. louse

yaab 4 n. person, man
yaaf H v. find, meet yaa/ke
sorry, I don't know (polite answer to a question)
yaan H v. plant yam
yaazu 33 n. twig
yadk H v. stir
yaku 33 num. six
yamz L v. hurt
yann H v. be angry, annoyed
yarnb 44 n. blood yar/n su/ku
vein
yari 41 n. sesame
yatn 13 n. fox
yatsa 21 n. flat basket coated in cattle dung, winnowing basket
yazn L v. reproach
yee see yag
yeel L v. weep, cry, mourn yeeb
2 n. tear, mourning
yag L v. come nvs: yee
yehi 44 n. sieve
yengi 44 n. firewood, deadwood
erotsi 333 n. God
yets L v. win, be victorious

yeta 22 pron. you
yinu 41 n. intestines
yir L v. be less, little
yish L v. pull out, dig up, uproot
yixs H v. sprinkle
yip H v. wink
yira 41 q. what yireshnta why
yirs 41 n. thing, artefact
yis 3 dem. m. that
yini 31 dem. f. that
yitn L v. walk happily, gait

zaaba 44 n. line
zaara 33 n. group, clan
zama 41 n. machete
zeed 2 num. eight
zeer L v. advise
zegu 33 n. ox
zerkn 44 n. day
ziina 31 n. leopard
ziipm L v. chase away
ziit L v. hang, pin on the wall, crucify ziitu 21 n. cross
zugn L v. be infertile
zuma 31 n. veins or ribs of a plant
zunku 31 n. sheep
zut H v. trample, step
zyaama 31 n. in-law

zhazh H v. be good zheensh 41 adj. good, well
zhaga 12 adv. straight
zhapm L v. shine zhapm 44 n. lamp
zhazha 44 n. goodness, peace
zhечхesh L v. caus. flower (of maize)
zhinga 41 n. tendon, hind leg
zhirbi 44 n. cotton
zhumata 441 adv. early morning

z'aakn 21 adv. noon, midday
z'aag H v. peel, husk (maize)
z'ar H v. spill (of grains)
z'ufr 21 n. bat
'yaach H v. hide
'yaana 44 n. pot
'yaatns adj. big, great
'yab 3 n. fodder for cattle
'yam 3 n. paternal aunt
'yanga 33 n. ram
'yanxsa 21 n.f. bee
'yar H v. eulogize
'yarb 3 n. tongue
'yard L v. enter, understand
  caus: *yars marry *yarsus n. marriage
'yarkn 21 n. sweat
'yaxsn 44 n. moon, month
'yaz H v. be able
'yazn 44 n. right

English - Sheko

abandon  bar L, qyaas
able, be  'yaz
above  > gori, hayqa
absent, be  kaay
abundance  shiiru
add  shiif, toos'
adult  yaab, barm

nyakn advise
after  zeer
afraid, be  > adi
albino skin  shor
all  gara
already  keta
always  kacha
Ambara  nef
angry, be  goora
animal  baxh, yanq
ankle  nunux, eki
ankoint  qarr'u
answer  diiq
ant  bangar, koy
applaud  qaax'u
arm  xsooq
armpit  kuc'u, muti
arrive  gerbi
ashes  sak
ask  xsyakn
aunt  oooxh, bur H

'yam, > bay
awl  > siip
axe  kabí 44
be  ki
baboon  dooasha
baby  > dadu
back  titi, gees'u
backyard  qanda
bad, be  sheen
bait  x'amfi
bake  xes
baptized, be  xoop
bark v.  buh
bark of tree  gopara
basket  kanta, dunki,

qosa, yatsa
bat  z'ufi
bathe  barxhush
batter  da', glixh
beads  maara
bear child  nyaas
bear fruit  gaar, mur, xsog
beard  xsysaru
beat  deeb, duf, qyar
become  foot
bed  baca, gooba
bee  'yanxsa
beehive  Ian, goona 33
bee larvae  shapm
beer  daana, taka
beg  qor, kant
bend  qirq
best man  maka
bewitch  ixh
'yaatns  kafa
kafa  nyaas, syaak

wooxs, gooch.

gaazh
black, be  xsw
bless  eeb, woom
blind, become  bar L
blood  yarbí
blow  fer
blunt  gonxä
boast  om H, gift
body  faad 2
boil  bar, lits
cut, qapxs, daq, fsoq, kaas', muz'rn, tyaaq, x`ad l.
custom, koos

dance, ay, nar
darken, udg, xsaw
dawn, gob 2
day, bokn, zerkn,
shima, shira, underkn
deaf, dud
death, > s'ub
debt, asha (bur H)
decoy, dawa
delicious, be shishk
dented, be sir
descent, fin
despise, miznx
dew, xhariku, nibm
dewlap, ganxsu
diarrhea, farx'a, xirsiku
die, > s'ub
different, be qoymsns
difficult, be ints
dig, boox', kaax.
yish, donq
dip, tiits
dismiss, besk
divide, divinate
do, eg. an, bazh
dog, kyanu
donkey, kuura
door, eed, queeru
doors, bsn
dovertop, dogama
downward, toora
dowry, boysu
drawn, woordream, kabe
dress, oof, gixs, an
drink, qis'
drip, xhof, kuysn
drive, boy
drizzle, kuysn
drunk, be aft, gar
dry, be kor, naar, xsah
drum, tyarbu
dung, ora, os'a, qeqiri
dusk, gob 2
dust, boota
each other, ank'a
eagle, xsama
ear, haay 2, qesha
earth, tuuru
earthworm, shaxu
easy, besos'kn
eat, um, gya', qeex
egg, myaaqun
eight, zeed
elbow, > kuc'u
elephant, door
elephantiasis, dufara
embrace, > ba', garus
empty, koru
encourage, gaa
enemy, > gagi
enseete, udu, erfu, muru
enter, 'yard, wusk
erase, seh
erosion, diin
estimat, qof
eulogize, 'yar
evening, gyaama
exercise, > atn
exist, ki
eye, aab
eyebrow, s'ukn
eyelash, qopm
extinguish, > tik
face, san, > aab
fall, wut, purq
false banana, see ensete
far, be
farm
farmland, see field
fat (be), kawa, meer, xef
father, baab
feather, biy
fell
female
fence, karm
ferment, max
fern, bitsu
fetch water, lid
few
field
koss'en
fight
filter
filtered, be
find
finger
fingernail
finish
fire
firefly
firesticks
firestones
firewood
firmly
firstborn
fish
five
fix
flame
flat
flesh
flood
flower
flower v.
fly
fly v.
fodder
fog
forehead
fork
food
fool
foot
footprint, forest
forget
four
fox
frightening, be
frog
front, in
front yard
frown
fruit
full, be
kota
booru, guy,
x'adn
shoota
xsaar
yaaf
keri
shafa
xhor, bar L, fus
taamu
xsuykn
shaaku
baaku
yengi
nesha
uzi
ooru
uc'u
> fik
> kaam
oon
as'ku, wuuru
bur L
ushn
zhechush
utsi
gang. bur H
'yab
x'uumu
san
faana, tori
> um
> bow
as'u
adi
karka
shey
kubm
yatn
qes'
fyaanu
saanta
gyabta
> xur
aab
xswoxs, xip
game
gallop
garbage
garden
garlic
gather
get off
give
girdle
girl
glitter
go
go out, up
goat
god
goiter
good, be
gossip
gourd
govern
grass
grasshopper
grave
greedy, be
green
greet
griddle
grind
group
grow
guess
gullet
ha'il
hair
hand
handle
hang
happen
happy, be
hare
harvest
hat
have
he
head
headache
heal
hear
> kaas
kat
kashu
orata
duqasha
gab, haak
fin, qeexs H
ats
gixs
> dadu, baara
shaam
tog, in
kees
geequ
yerotsi, kay
bora
zhzaazh, xsyak
gab L
goosu, geeni
hays
wonxhi, peexa
shorkn
deyna, kaaru
gax'
xhrun
garus
bakara
botn, qiix
zaara
bez, > angus
qof
goorz'n
urgn
sitsu
kuc'u
suuqu
gut. kaq. ziit
foot
kaazh
eeiri
kashkush, boog
uka 21
> ki
az
gari
> xhaaq
> fay
sils
| liver | > bow | mother-in-law | koochi |
| lizard | gonz'u | mountain | xuum |
| locust | shora | mourn | yeef |
| long, be | gotn. shaad | mouth | ed |
| look | tit | mouthful, take a | baar |
| look down on | > oy | move | woshkn, boor |
| lord | kyaaz | much | wusha, puxha |
| lose | > kaay | mud | toga |
| Louise | x'uu'x'u | mushroom | ochi |
| love | ut | mute | diiqa |
| lungs | s'orxn | nail | qepm |
| lyre | s'ongu | name | suma |
| machete | zama | narrow, be | xsubm |
| mad, become | xhoy | navel | gurxi |
| maize | shaxi, dincha | necessary, be | > baas |
| make | bazh, daab | neck | kum |
| man | yaab, > baab | need | > baas |
| mane | saba | nest | buc'a |
| many | puxha | new | qarns |
| market | gaba | night | goota, haay, udg |
| marriage | > 'yard | nine | sagn |
| marry | goona 21 | nod | gina |
| mat | mura | noise | ganxsu 44 |
| mead | mak | noon | z'aakn |
| measure | as'ku | nose | sinxu |
| meat | xhaaru 33, qeeex | now | haaqasta |
| medicine | kyam, yaaq | number | > faad L |
| meet | muz'm | oath | > qed |
| melt | maaru | obey | > fuur, > |
| mercy | > wos | qabus | |
| message | z'aakn | ointment | > diiq |
| midnight | goota | old, be | iq |
| midnight | ginginga | on | bata |
| milk | qis'. uqu | one | qoy |
| mislead | > bow | only | guuru |
| miss | wor | open | byah, fo0o, tora |
| mock | tim | order | qabus |
| molar | bakn | other | qoyysna, gaamta |
| money | eki | outside | buta |
| monkey | barkay, goydu | ox | zegu |
| mouth | 'yaxsn | paint | boox, diiq |
| moon | 'yaxsn | more than | faafa 33 |
| more than | > geri | papaya | s'oos' |
| moning | zhumata | parch | una |
| mortar | bota | past | kookn |
| moss | mus'a | path | mash |
| mother | bay | patient, be | |
pay
pebble
peek
peel
org, z’aaq
peg
pelvis
person
pick
pierce
pig
pile
pipe
place
plain
plant
daam
plaster
play
plough
pluck
plump, be
pole
pool
porcupine
porridge
pot
pour
praise
pray
pregnant, be
prepare
prison
problem
produce
prophesy
prune
pulverized, be
pumpkin
push
put
pull
pull out
queen
quench
question
quick
quiet, be
beg
becu
s’aan H
fyayn, orxhush,
qepm
keru
yaab
x’ad H
gashtu
kengaxha
kookn
oon
as’, yaan, tor,
ket
kaas
koos’
qash
xef
tuusu
shin
gushn
s’uqa
‘yaana
qaab, geen
gozh, naas’, ‘yar
peep, xsook
ins
> fik
> xsyaaxs
gaydu
bez, bash, > sak
koon
gaaaz
niq, kums’
buda
kundus
an, toot
giis’
bud, yiish
gebe
> tik
> ooxh
moy, shanku
hays
rabbit
eeri
rain
rainbow
raincape
rainy season
raise
ram
rats
ravine
razor
reach
red, be
refuse
relative
remain
remember
repair
reproach
rest
return
revenge
rich, riches
right
rim
ring
ring a bell
rinse mouth
ripe, be
neep, xsah
neep
ripped
rise
road
roast
qeexs L, gap, s’oos’
rob
roll
roll up
roofbeam
root
rope
roten, be
round
rub
irxhush, shibar
rue
ruminate
run
dinga
giixh, boox,
sad, be  ayn
saliva  x’ud
salt  ugn
sand  hamshu
satisfied, be  xsysn, om L
saved, be  fay
saw  faan, s’aan L.
say  ge
scorpion  siskn
car  didu
scrape  boox’
scratch  qooxh, boox’
search  baas
see  sng
sell  fuur
send  wos
servant  qamu
sesame  yari
seven  tubsu
sew  slip
tiptoe  tira
ship  qeexs L, sutn
shake  sshash
sharpen  fyaaxs
shave  izh
she  > xuum
sheaf  zunku
sheep  gyasus
short, be  xsysaaxs, zhapm
shoulder  shiq
shove  kabi 21
show  s’oog
shred  > sog
shrink  muz’
shrinkage  shurxn
sibling  baadu, naanu,
nini
side  shishu, gaamta
sideboards  gaazhu
siege  yehi, shoota
sin  x’ubu 21
sing  shaar, gar
sister  niini, baadu
sit down  woog
six  yaku
skin  baachki
skin v.  fosq
slap  xsooq
slaughter  baash
sleep  soq, sharux
slippery, be  byad
slip  fur
slow  dafa, dooz
skin  baachi, tura 31
skirt  taashu
sky  saaqu
smell  s’uf, mar
smile  > geex’
smoke  x’ubu 44
smooth, be  wooq
snake  s’ooz’, dawa,
dinguru, kasa
snap  gaz
snare  oor
sneeze  dich
snore  keexh
so-and-so  ema
soil  tuuru
song  > shaar
sorghum  donqa
soup  shaqu
sound  or L, ganxsu
speak  > kaam
special  nong. boob
spend day  byaqn
spend night  qoysns
spider  feesh
spill  haay
spin  girlu
spirit  shooy, z’ar
split  keec’
spit  mas’a, myangu
spilled, be  xhud, xsarkn
spring  fak
sping forth  duqux
sprinkle  tuun
tuqar
yixs
tara
s’oonu
qeshk, x’ad H
stack  goom
star  aas’
stack  baarin
start  gad
steal  wunq
stem
toop⁷a
tzpufs
gachi, s’ooy
kyat, wooxs
yadk
she’i, xemsi
qaa’x
bakasha
gabba
aas’, biik
furfi
saaya, tosa
zhaga
goora
> karb
xhix, x’ad Ḥ
karb, qozh
gilbm
nîqn
xsyaaxsu, > kay
qeex
qed
’yarkan
dir
shishk, exs
teer
mus’qn
gashwu
sîta
> hark
wurxsu
haashu
shaad
baaka
kob, es. qeex
forhush
nong, maak
nexs, daaq.
yeeb
harxh, s’aap
baara, nyaku, >
agaachu
maak
tamu
s’ub
zhinga
termite
thank
that
thatch
there
they
thick, be
thigh
thin, be
thing
think
thirst
thorn
thought
three
throw
throw away
thunder
tie
tuuc’
till
tired, be
top
trap
truly, truth
toad
tobacco
today
together, be
tomorrow
tongue
tonsil
tooth
kaaru
top
tortoise
touch
toward
trade
trample
trap
tree
trill
trouble
trumpet
turbid, be
turn
bangar
garga
naas’
yini, yis
kesa, peexa
eka, so, woka
ishi
meer, xyabm
barka
shapk
yirsi, nuuxu
ar, ayn
s’um
shiqu
ara
kadu
fori, goorz’n
bar l, xsur
but, tîr, kooc’
tooq
xsyaaxs, qilixs,
tuuc’
till
koo’s
woq
xsoonî
girfu
gama
gofara
tumba
ma, ena
daan
byarn
’yarb
noki
ax’u, bakn,
tuum, kada,
gogu
taft
kaari
fuur
zut
qaaza
inchu, tuuri
tig
gaydu
taazn
wurbm
san, gupm,
tusk
Twig
twin
twist
two
udder
ululate
uncle
understand
undress
unique
unlock
unmarried
unripe
woozh
untie
up
uprooted, be
upward
urinate
valley
vein
vermin
very
village
viper
visit
vomit
waistcloth
wait
walk
want
war
warm oneself
wash
wasp
watch
water
waterfall
waterpipe
wattle
we
weak, be
wealth
weather
weave
seema
yazuzu
xhaaru 21
keec'
xaagn
xsezga
irish
bacha, uka 33
'yard
forxhush
qoymsn
fooq
baara, nyaku
xhiru, garz'
wus'k
hayqa, so
purq
absi
or \image
kooka
zuma, \textit{yarbm}
duqux
anga
qambu
dinguru
booz. ooxh
kooc'
bura
koot
booz. fits, yitn
baas, ut
x'adn
kaas', s'okn
barxhush
tara
shach, tiit
haay 3, s'aad
xhaaru 41
geetu
sekiri
nata 42
fayx, wooq
eena

wedge
weed
weep
wet
what?
when?
where?
whiskers
whistle
white, be
who?
why?
wide, be
wife
wild
win
wind
wing
wink
wisdom
witch
witness
woman
wonderful, be
wood
word
work
world
worm
worry
worship
wound
wrap
wrestle
wrist

yam
year
yeast
yesterday
yet
you
young, be

kosqn
s'us'ku
yeef
shash
yira
woskin
na
kasn, gaazhu
xsuuxs
gooxsn
it 33
>y ira
has'kn
> bay, qemti
> nuuxu
yets
> naar
kongu
yip
> xuus, > koos
> ixh
mixn
bay
qes'
inchu, yengi
> nong
bash, bazha,
> tuuru
daazhu, duba
ayn
guym
buchi
s'okn
gibm
qar'nu
kachi, tucha
bengi
daaka
gona
kacha
yeta, iti 44
> dadu, dod
**Samenvatting**

(Summary in Dutch. For a summary in English, see section 1.2.4.)

Dit proefschrift beschrijft de grammatica van het Sheko. Het Sheko is een Omotische taal in het zuidwesten van Ethiopië en telt ongeveer 37.500 sprekers. Hoofdstuk een vertelt kort over de geschiedenis en cultuur van de sprekers, en bespreekt de sociale context van het Sheko. Er is tot nog toe zeer weinig geschreven over deze taal. Het proefschrift vergroot de kennis van het Sheko aanzienlijk en kan goed worden gebruikt in vergelijkende onderzoeken.

Hoofdstuk twee behandelt de klanken van de taal en de combinaties waarin ze voorkomen. Bijzonder in de Ethiopische context is de serie retroflexe klanken (waarbij het puntje van de tong omhoog en naar achteren krult). Net als andere Omotische talen heeft het Sheko regel die bepaalt dat alle s-achtige klanken in een woordstem op dezelfde plaats in de mond worden gemaakt (sibilantheamor). Een woord als *sjezen* komt dus niet voor. Verder zijn er lange en korte klinkers en een klinkerachtige nasaal.

Hoofdstuk drie somt alle processen op waardoor klanken veranderen of wegvallen, evenals verdubbelingprocessen, d.w.z. reduplicatie van lettergrepen of klanken.

Hoofdstuk vier bespreekt en illustreert toon. Het Sheko is een toontaal. Een verandering in toonhoogte op een lettergreep leidt dus tot een verandering in betekenis. Dit betekenisverschil kan zowel grammaticaal zijn als lexicaal, d.w.z. op woordniveau. Het Sheko is een van de weinige Afrikaanse talen die vier distinctieve toonhoogtes kent. De vier tonen zijn niet gelijk verdeeld over het lexicon en het beperkte aantal lexicaal toonpatronen voor naamwoorden en werkwoorden wijst erop dat de taal vroeger minder dan vier tonen had. Verder heeft het Sheko een dalende intonatie op het eind van sommige vraagzinnen.

Hoofdstuk vijf behandelt de opbouw van zelfstandige naamwoorden. Dit hoofdstuk gaat onder andere in op de verhoudingen tussen bepaaldheid, geslacht en getal. Het

Hoofdstuk zes beschrijft persoonlijke voornaamwoorden en reflexiviteit: wederkerende voornaamwoorden (zich) zijn in het Sheko identiek aan persoonlijke voornaamwoorden. In het Sheko kan hij prikt hem dus of 'hij prikt zich' of 'hij prikt iemand anders' betekenen, waarbij de context duidelijk moet maken welke van de twee bedoeld is.

Hoofdstuk zeven gaat over verschillende andere woordklassen. Aanwijzende voornaamwoorden (dit, dat) zijn gemarkeerd voor geslacht. Corresponderende bijwoorden van plaats en richting (daar, daarheen) maken onderscheid op grond van hoogteverschil. Bijvoeglijke naamwoorden, die van werkwoorden worden afgeleid door de markeers van bepaaldheid en geslacht, kunnen op grond van hun eigenschappen als een aparte categorie worden beschouwd. Telwoorden, kwantificerende woorden (alle) en bijwoorden van tijd en hoedanigheid worden ook behandeld.

Hoofdstuk acht voegt de categorieën idefoon en tussenwerpels toe. Anders dan bijvoorbeeld bijvoeglijke naamwoorden, beschrijven ideofonen een gebeurtenis niet zozeer maar roepen de gebeurtenis als het ware op (rinkeldekinke). De meeste ideofonen hebben een karakteristiek, opvallend reduplicatiedat. Tussenwerpels zijn er in drie soorten: expressieve tussenwerpels weerspiegelen de emoties van de spreker (nee toch!), conative tussenwerpels duiden een verzoek aan de luisteraar aan (hé,...) en phatische tussenwerpels dienen om het communicatieproces te starten of soepel te laten verlopen (ja... m-m...).

Hoofdstuk negen gaat in op de naamwoordelijke zin. Wanneer een zelfstandig naamwoord wordt voorafgegaan door een ander
(voor)naamwoord, verandert het toonpatroon van het zelfstandig naamwoord. Als er binnen de naamwoordgroep iets volgt op het zelfstandig naamwoord, is er geen tonale verandering. Verder kan een naamwoordgroep gemarkeerd worden voor naamval: de nominatief heeft geen naamvalsuitgang; de accusatief is in een deel van de gevallen gemarkeerd; verder kent het Sheko een datief (voor, aan), locatief (te, in, bij), inessief (binnenin), instrumentalis (met), similatief (zoals) en motief (geeft grond of bewegreden aan).

Er zijn drie genitieve constructies (mijn vriend, vriend van mij, hij is een vriend voor me). In constructies met het werkwoord ‘zijn’ wordt de nadruk gelegd op de bevestiging van de bezitsrelatie. In constructies waarin twee woorden naast elkaar staan (juxtapositie), ligt de nadruk op het geheel (de bezitter), en in constructies met de datief op het woord dat het geheel aanduidt ligt de nadruk op het deel (dat wat wordt bezeten).

Hoofdstuk tien behandelt de vorming van werkwoorden die zelfstandig een zin kunnen vormen, de finale werkwoorden. De werkwoordsvorm eindigt met een stance markeerder, die aanduidt hoe de spreker zich verhoudt tot zijn uitspraak. Een indirecte stance markeerder drukt een zekere afstand uit (voor bijv. beleefdheid of rapportage van andermans uitspraken) en een directe stance markeerder drukt het ontbreken van afstand uit. Verder heeft het werkwoord een modaal achtervoegsel, een aspectueel achtervoegsel, een stam en een subjectclicicum, d.w.z. een element dat verwijst naar het onderwerp en dat vrij is om zich behalve aan het werkwoord ook aan andere woorden te hechten.

Modale wijzen zijn onder meer de Realis, die een gebeurtenis presenteert als bevestigd (gebeurd of aan het gebeuren); Irrealis, die wordt gebruikt als de gebeurtenis niet kan worden bevestigd (bijv. bij vermoeden, mogelijkheid, toekomende tijd, gewoonte); Obvious, die een gebeurtenis presenteert als algemeen bekend; Imperatief-jussief, voor bevelen en verzoeken; en de Optatief; voor zegeningen en vervloekingen. Een klein groepje werkwoorden heeft twee stamvormen, waarvan de stam eindigend met een g-klank wordt gebruikt in contexten waarin grotere zekerheid bestaat over het realiseren van de gebeurtenis.
Hoofdstuk elf beschrijft werkwoordvormen die niet alleen kunnen staan. Mediale werkwoorden vormen vaak een lange keten van deelzinnen met alleen op het eind een zinsdeel met een finaal werkwoord. Mediale vormen bestaan uit een onderwerpscliticum, stam en een zogenaamde switch-reference marker, d.w.z. een achtervoegsel dat aangeeft of het onderwerp in het volgende zinsdeel hetzelfde zal blijven of zal veranderen. Seriële werkwoorden hebben geen switch-reference markering en maar één onderwerpscliticum per seriële constructie. Sommige seriële werkwoorden drukken aspect uit, bijvoorbeeld ‘voortdurende’ of ‘voltooide’ handeling.

Verder komen ook in onderschikte bijzinnen onzelfstandige werkwoordvormen voor. Bijzinnen van plaats, tijd en reden zijn gebaseerd op een relatieve werkwoordsvorm, terwijl voorwaardelijke bijzinnen hun eigen markering kennen. Werkwoordscolumnen (heb je gehoord dat hij komt?) zijn relatiefvormen, behalve als er een vraagwoord in voorkomt; dan zijn ze gemankeerd als een voorwaardelijke zin.

Relatiefzinnen (de man die daar loopt) zijn interessant, met name omdat ze vaak een anafoor bevatten, d.w.z. een persoonlijk voornaamwoord dat verwijst naar het antecedent (dus krijg je in het Sheko zoiets als: ‘de man die ik een boek aan hem gaf’). Dit gebeurt zelfs als de relatiezin voór het antecedent komt, terwijl anaforen meestal terugverwijzen naar iets dat al genoemd is, in plaats van vooruitverwijzen naar iets dat nog genoemd moet worden.

Hoofdstuk twaalf beschrijft de afleidingen waarmee nieuwe werkwoordstammen worden gevormd: de causatief (lachen > doen lachen), de passief (eten > gegeten worden) en de middle, die onder andere wordt gebruikt voor wederkerige situaties en in het Sheko vaak met de causatief voorkomt (slaan > elkaar (doen) slaan).

Hoofdstuk dertien behandelt vraagzinnen. Het Sheko heeft drie manieren om vraagzinnen te maken. In alle vraagzinnen ontbreekt een modaal achtervoegsel op het werkwoord. In sommige gevallen is dit het enige verschil tussen een stellende en een vragende zin. Ten tweede wordt in sommige vraagzinnen, in het bijzonder ontkennende vraagzinnen, gebruik gemaakt van een dalende intonatie op de laatste
lettergnoep. In de derde plaats heeft de stance markeerder, als deze aanwezig is, een andere vorm dan in stellende zinnen.

Hoofdstuk veertien gaat in op de uitdrukking van ontkennig. Naast een negatief koppelwerkwoord ‘niet zijn’ heeft het Sheko twee werkwoordachtvoegsels die ontkennig aanduiden, waarbij de meestvoorkomende wordt gebruikt voor ontkennig van een gebeurtenis, terwijl de andere lijkt te worden gebruikt voor het ontkennen van een langdurige toestand.

Hoofdstuk vijftien laat zien dat de plaats van het onderwerpsembleum erg flexibel is en correspondeert met de informatiestructuur van de zin. Met andere woorden: het onderwerpsembleum verwijst niet alleen naar het onderwerp maar geeft ook door zijn positie aan welk deel van de zin het belangrijkste is. Dit laatste doen we in het Nederlands met de klemtoon. Wanneer het onderwerpsembleum voorkomt in het werkwoord staat, heeft de zin een topic-comment structuur, waarbij het hele predikaat (werkwoord, lijdend voorwerp en eventuele andere bepalingen) als informatief wordt beschouwd. Wanneer het onderwerpsembleum direct achter de werkwoordstam wordt geplaats, ligt de nadruk op de polariteit van het gezegde (vergelijk Nl. *en, heeft hij haar gezien?*). Wanneer het onderwerpsembleum na een naamwoordgroep komt, wordt de naamwoordgroep als meest informatief beschouwd (*ik ben gisteren in Katwijk naar de kerk gegaan*). De naamwoordgroep kan echter niet verwijzen naar het onderwerp. Bij nadruk op het onderwerp is het onderwerpsembleum afwezig.

Ten slotte volgen een lijst met referenties en drie bijlagen: een gedeelde met verschillende soorten teksten, een stuk dat kort ingaat op de ontwikkeling van de spelling van het Sheko, met als illustratie twee gedichten, en een woordenlijst Sheko-Engels en Engels-Sheko.
Curriculum Vitae

Anne-Christie Hellenthal is born on 11 November 1980 in Nijmegen, the Netherlands. She attended the Prof. S. Greijdanus comprehensive school, Zwolle, and studied African Languages and Linguistics at Leiden University from 1999 to 2004. For her masters’ thesis, she did research on the Konso language (Cushitic). She worked for a short interval on Mao (Nilo-Saharan) for the language development programme of the Benishangul-Gumuz regional government. In 2005, she started describing and analyzing the Sheko language for her Ph.D. as part of the research project “Two modal categories in Omotic languages”, under supervision of prof.dr. M. Mous and dr. Azeb Amha, within the endangered languages programme of the Dutch Organisation for Scientific Research (NWO). In total, she made five field trips to Ethiopia to do original research.